Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Language Skills Practice

- Lesson Worksheets
- Chapter Reviews

HOLT, RINEHART AND WINSTON
Contents

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics
Language Skills Practice

USING THIS WORKBOOK................................................ix

Chapter 1
THE SENTENCE:
SUBJECT AND PREDICATE, KINDS OF SENTENCES
Sentences and Sentence Fragments A.............1
Sentences and Sentence Fragments B.............2
Sentences and Sentence Fragments C.............3
Subjects and Predicates.................................4
Simple and Complete Subjects......................5
Simple and Complete Predicates...................6
Verb Phrases....................................................7
Complete and Simple Subjects and Predicates A...8
Complete and Simple Subjects and Predicates B...9
Compound Subjects........................................10
Compound Verbs..............................................11
Compound Subjects and Verbs.......................12
Subjects and Verbs A......................................13
Subjects and Verbs B......................................14
Classifying Sentences by Purpose A...............15
Classifying Sentences by Purpose B...............16
REVIEW A: Sentences and Sentence Fragments.....17
REVIEW B: Subjects and Predicates...............18
REVIEW C: Compound Subjects and
  Compound Verbs...........................................19
REVIEW D: Classifying Sentences by Purpose.....20

Chapter 2
PARTS OF SPEECH OVERVIEW:
NOUN, PRONOUN, ADJECTIVE
Nouns..............................................................21
Compound Nouns..............................................22
Common and Proper Nouns...........................23
Concrete, Abstract, and Collective Nouns........24
Kinds of Nouns...............................................25
Pronouns and Antecedents............................26
Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns......27
Demonstrative and Relative Pronouns...............28
Indefinite Pronouns and Interrogative
  Pronouns....................................................29
Kinds of Pronouns..........................................30
Adjectives and Articles..................................31
Demonstrative Adjectives............................32
Proper Adjectives...........................................33
Noun, Pronoun, or Adjective?.......................34

Chapter 3
PARTS OF SPEECH OVERVIEW:
VERB, ADVERB, PREPOSITION, CONJUNCTION,
INTERJECTION
The Verb.......................................................35
Helping Verbs and Main Verbs....................36
Action Verbs................................................37
Linking Verbs................................................38
Transitive and Intransitive Verbs................39
Identifying Kinds of Verbs/Verb Phrases A........40
Identifying Kinds of Verbs/Verb Phrases B.........41
The Adverb....................................................42
Adverbs and the Words They Modify...............43
Adverb or Adjective?.....................................44
The Preposition.............................................45
Prepositional Phrases...................................46
Preposition or Adverb?.................................47
The Conjunction A.........................................48
The Conjunction B.........................................49
The Interjection.............................................50
Determining Parts of Speech.......................51
REVIEW A: Parts of Speech...........................52
REVIEW B: Parts of Speech...........................53
REVIEW C: Parts of Speech...........................54

Chapter 4
COMPLEMENTS:
DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECTS, SUBJECT
COMPLEMENTS
Complements................................................55
Direct Objects.............................................56
Indirect Objects...........................................57
Direct Objects and Indirect Objects A............58
Direct Objects and Indirect Objects B............59
Subject Complements....................................60
Predicate Nominatives................................61
Predicate Adjectives....................................62
Predicate Nominatives and Predicate
  Adjectives A..............................................63
Predicate Nominatives and Predicate
  Adjectives B..............................................64
REVIEW A: Complements...............................65
REVIEW B: Complements...............................66
REVIEW C: Complements...............................67

REVIEW A: Nouns.............................................35
REVIEW B: Pronouns........................................36
REVIEW C: Nouns and Adjectives....................37
## Chapter 5
THE PHRASE:
PREPOSITIONAL, VERBAL, AND APPOSITIVE PHRASES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrases</th>
<th>71</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Prepositional Phrase</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Adjective Phrase</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Adverb Phrase</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective and Adverb Phrases A</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective and Adverb Phrases B</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Participle</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Participle Phrase</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles and Participial Phrases A</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles and Participial Phrases B</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Gerund</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Gerund Phrase</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerunds and Gerund Phrases A</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerunds and Gerund Phrases B</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participle or Gerund?</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Infinitive</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Infinitive Phrase</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases A</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases B</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbals and Verbal Phrases</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appositives</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appositives Phrases</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appositives and Appositive Phrases A</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appositives and Appositive Phrases B</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW A: Verbals Phrases</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW B: Phrases</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW C: Phrases</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Chapter 6
THE CLAUSE:
INDEPENDENT AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Identifying Clauses</th>
<th>98</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Independent Clause</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Subordinate Clause</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent and Subordinate Clauses</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Adjective Clause A</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Adjective Clause B</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Pronouns/Relative Adverbs</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Adverb Clause A</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Adverb Clause B</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subordinating Conjunctions</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Noun Clause</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective, Adverb, and Noun Clauses A</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective, Adverb, and Noun Clauses B</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW A: The Clause</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW B: The Clause</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW C: The Clause</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Chapter 7
SENTENCE STRUCTURE:
THE FOUR BASIC SENTENCE STRUCTURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Sentences</th>
<th>114</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compound Sentences</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Sentence or Compound Sentence?</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex Sentences</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound Sentence or Complex Sentence?</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound-Complex Sentences</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex or Compound-Complex?</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW A: Classifying Sentences According to Structure</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW B: Classifying Sentences According to Structure</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW C: Classifying Sentences According to Structure</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Chapter 8
AGREEMENT:
SUBJECT AND VERB, PRONOUN AND ANTECEDENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject-Verb Agreement A</th>
<th>124</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement B</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement C</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement D</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement E</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement F</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement G</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement H</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement I</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement J</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement K</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement A</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement B</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement C</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement D</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement E</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement F</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement G</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW A: Subject-Verb Agreement</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW B: Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW C: Agreement</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW D: Agreement</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contents

Chapter 9
USING VERBS CORRECTLY:
PRINCIPAL PARTS, REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS,
TENSE, VOICE
The Principal Parts of Verbs ........................................ 146
Regular Verbs ......................................................... 147
Irregular Verbs A..................................................... 148
Irregular Verbs B..................................................... 149
Irregular Verbs C..................................................... 150
Irregular Verbs D..................................................... 151
Irregular Verbs E..................................................... 152
Tense........................................................................ 153
Consistency of Tense.................................................. 154
Active and Passive Voice.......................................... 155
Sit and Set ............................................................. 156
Lie and Lay ................................................................ 157
Rise and Raise .......................................................... 158
Six Troublesome Verbs.............................................. 159
REVIEW A: Principal Parts of Verbs ......................... 160
REVIEW B: Verb Tense and Voice ............................. 161
REVIEW C: Six Troublesome Verbs........................... 162
REVIEW D: Correct Use of Verbs .............................. 163

Chapter 10
USING PRONOUNS CORRECTLY:
CASE FORMS OF PRONOUNS; SPECIAL PRONOUN
PROBLEMS
Case Forms............................................................. 164
The Nominative Case ............................................... 165
The Objective Case ................................................... 166
Nominative and Objective Case A ............................. 167
Nominative and Objective Case B ............................. 168
The Possessive Case.................................................. 169
Who and Whom....................................................... 170
Appositives and Reflexive Pronouns ......................... 171
Special Pronoun Problems......................................... 172
REVIEW A: Case ...................................................... 173
REVIEW B: Case and Special Pronoun Problems ......... 174
REVIEW C: Case and Special Pronoun Problems ......... 175

Chapter 11
USING MODIFIERS CORRECTLY:
COMPARISON AND PLACEMENT
What Is a Modifier?................................................... 176
Adjective or Adverb?............................................... 177
Good and Well......................................................... 178
Regular Comparison............................................... 179
Irregular Comparison.............................................. 180
Regular and Irregular Comparison A ....................... 181
Regular and Irregular Comparison B ....................... 182
Use of Comparative and Superlative Forms A .......... 183
Use of Comparative and Superlative Forms B .......... 184
Double Comparisons and Double Negatives .......... 185
Misplaced Prepositional Phrases.............................. 186
Misplaced and Dangling Participle Phrases............... 187
Misplaced Clauses.................................................... 188
Misplaced Phrases and Clauses............................... 189
REVIEW A: Modifiers............................................... 190
REVIEW B: Comparisons and
Double Negatives................................................... 191
REVIEW C: Misplaced Modifiers ............................. 192
REVIEW D: Modifiers............................................... 193

Chapter 12
A GLOSSARY OF USAGE:
COMMON USAGE PROBLEMS
Usage Glossary A..................................................... 194
Usage Glossary B..................................................... 195
Usage Glossary C..................................................... 196
Usage Glossary D..................................................... 197
Usage Glossary E..................................................... 198
REVIEW A: Usage Glossary ...................................... 199
REVIEW B: Usage Glossary ...................................... 200
REVIEW C: Usage Glossary ...................................... 201

Chapter 13
CAPITAL LETTERS:
RULES FOR CAPITALIZATION
First Words and I and O............................................ 202
Proper Nouns A........................................................ 203
Proper Nouns B........................................................ 204
Proper Nouns C........................................................ 205
Proper Nouns D........................................................ 206
Proper Nouns E........................................................ 207
Proper Nouns F........................................................ 208
Proper Adjectives and Names of School
Subjects ..................................................................... 209
Proper Nouns and Adjectives A............................... 210
Proper Nouns and Adjectives B............................... 211
Titles Used with People.......................................... 212
Titles of Works......................................................... 213
Titles A................................................................. 214
Titles B................................................................. 215
Contents

Chapter 14
PUNCTUATION:
END MARKS, COMMAS, SEMICOLONS, AND COLONS
End Marks ................................................................. 219
Abbreviations .............................................................. 220
End Marks and Abbreviations ...................................... 221
Commas with Items in a Series ..................................... 222
Commas with Compound Sentences ............................. 223
Commas with Interrupters A ......................................... 224
Commas with Interrupters B ......................................... 225
Commas with Introductory Elements ............................ 226
Using Commas ........................................................... 227
Conventional Uses of Commas ..................................... 228
Comma Review A ....................................................... 229
Comma Review B ........................................................ 230
Semicolons A ............................................................. 231
Semicolons B ............................................................. 232
Colons ........................................................................ 233
REVIEW A: End Marks and Abbreviations .................... 234
REVIEW B: Commas .................................................... 235
REVIEW C: Semicolons and Colons ............................. 236
REVIEW D: End Marks, Abbreviations, Semicolons, and Colons ......................................................... 237

Chapter 15
PUNCTUATION:
UNDERLINING (ITALICS), QUOTATION MARKS, APOSTROPHES, HYPHENS, PARENTHESSES, BRACKETS, DASHES
Underlining (Italics) A ................................................. 238
Underlining (Italics) B ................................................... 239
Underlining (Italics) C ................................................... 240
Quotation Marks A ....................................................... 241
Quotation Marks B ....................................................... 242
Quotation Marks C ....................................................... 243
Quotation Marks D ....................................................... 244
Quotation Marks E ....................................................... 245
Apostrophes A ............................................................ 246
Apostrophes B ............................................................ 247
Apostrophes C ............................................................ 248
Apostrophes D ............................................................ 249
Apostrophes E ............................................................ 250
Apostrophes F ............................................................ 251
Hyphens ..................................................................... 252
Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes .............................. 253
REVIEW A: Italics and Quotations Marks ....................... 254
REVIEW B: Apostrophes ............................................... 255
REVIEW C: Hyphens, Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes .......................................................... 256
REVIEW D: All Marks of Punctuation ............................ 257

Chapter 16
SPELLING:
IMPROVING YOUR SPELLING
Good Spelling Habits ................................................. 258
-ie and -ei ................................................................. 259
-cede, -ceed, and -sede .............................................. 260
Prefixes ...................................................................... 261
Suffixes A .................................................................... 262
Suffixes B .................................................................... 263
Suffixes C .................................................................... 264
Suffixes D .................................................................... 265
Spelling Rules Review A ............................................. 266
Spelling Rules Review B ............................................. 267
Plurals A ...................................................................... 268
Plurals B ...................................................................... 269
Plurals C ...................................................................... 270
Plurals D ...................................................................... 271
Numbers ..................................................................... 272
Plurals and Numbers .................................................. 273
Words Often Confused A ............................................. 274
Words Often Confused B ............................................. 275
Words Often Confused C ............................................. 276
Words Often Confused D ............................................. 277
Words Often Confused E ............................................. 278
REVIEW A: Spelling Rules .......................................... 279
REVIEW B: Words Often Confused .............................. 280
REVIEW C: Spelling Rules and Words Often Confused .......................................................... 281
REVIEW D: Spelling Rules and Words Often Confused .......................................................... 282

Chapter 17
CORRECTING COMMON ERRORS:
KEY LANGUAGE SKILLS REVIEW
Sentence Fragments and Run-on Sentences A .............. 283
Sentence Fragments and Run-on Sentences B .............. 284
Subject-Verb Agreement A .......................................... 285
Subject-Verb Agreement B .......................................... 286
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement A ............................... 287
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement B ............................... 288
Verb Forms A ............................................................ 289
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verb Forms B</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun Forms A</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun Forms B</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative and Superlative Forms A</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative and Superlative Forms B</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double Comparison and Double Negatives</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misplaced and Dangling Modifiers A</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misplaced and Dangling Modifiers B</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Usage A</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Usage B</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capitalization A</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capitalization B</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commas A</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commas B</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semicolons and Colons</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotation Marks and Other Punctuation A</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotation Marks and Other Punctuation B</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apostrophes</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Marks of Punctuation Review</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spelling A</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spelling A</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Words Often Confused</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spelling and Words Often Confused</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW A: Usage</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW B: Mechanics</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW C: Usage and Mechanics</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using This Workbook

The worksheets in this workbook provide practice, reinforcement, and extension for Chapters 1–17 of *Elements of Language.*

The worksheets you will find in this workbook are traditional worksheets providing practice and reinforcement activities on every rule and on all major instructional topics in the grammar, usage, and mechanics chapters in *Elements of Language.*

The Teaching Resources include the Answer Key, which is located on the Teacher One Stop.
Sentences and Sentence Fragments A

1a. **A sentence** is a word group that contains a subject and a verb and that expresses a complete thought.

A **sentence fragment** is a word group that looks like a sentence but does not contain both a subject and a verb or does not express a complete thought.

**SENTENCE FRAGMENT** Those on board the sailboat. [no verb]
Shouted to the swimmers near the shore. [no subject]

**SENTENCE** Those on board the sailboat shouted to the swimmers near the shore.

**EXERCISE** Identify each of the following word groups as a sentence or a sentence fragment. On the line provided, write **S** for sentence or **F** for sentence fragment.

**Examples**

1. Last Saturday, Antonio and his friends went to the beach. **S**
2. A day that they will not soon forget. **F**
3. Antonio and his friends in the bay. **F**
4. They spotted a shark swimming toward a sailboat. **F**
5. One of the sailboats nearby. **F**
6. Efforts to distract the shark. **F**
7. The people on the shore shouted at the swimmers. **F**
8. The shark opened its huge jaws. **F**
9. As close to the shore as this shark was. **F**
10. The swimmers could see only the fin on the shark’s back. **F**
11. On its way toward shore. **F**
12. Slicing the surface of the water. **F**
13. The fast-moving shark swam under one of the sailboats. **F**
14. Shout and wave. **F**
15. Everyone on the beach continued to wave and shout. **F**
16. With much help from the lifeguards. **F**
17. When they reached the shore. **F**
18. The swimmers were trembling. **F**
19. After they realized that they were safe. **F**
20. Later, the swimmers spoke to news reporters and photographers. **F**
21. The lifeguards closed the beach. **F**
22. And sent everyone away. **F**
Sentences and Sentence Fragments B

A sentence is a word group that contains a subject and a verb and that expresses a complete thought.

A sentence fragment is a word group that looks like a sentence but does not contain both a subject and a verb or does not express a complete thought.

**SENTENCE FRAGMENT**  Shirley Chisholm, the first African American congresswoman.

**SENTENCE**  Shirley Chisholm, the first African American congresswoman, was elected to the U.S. House of Representatives in 1968.

**Exercise**  Identify each of the following word groups as a sentence or a sentence fragment. On the line provided, write S for sentence or F for sentence fragment.

**Example**  
**F** 1. One clear night in the middle of summer.

1. Several teenagers went camping one clear night in the middle of summer.
2. The campers sat around a campfire.
3. Which kept them warm.
4. Someone suggested that they tell stories.
5. Camila told an interesting story.
6. About a man who lived on a houseboat near a village.
7. Never spoke to the villagers.
8. People thought he was a thief.
9. And blamed him when things were lost.
10. One day the man left the boat.
11. And walked far away.
12. A curious villager entered the boat.
13. To see what was inside.
14. Very surprised by what he found inside.
15. There were all kinds of wooden toys.
16. That the mysterious man had built.
17. Each toy was carefully painted.
18. The toys were gifts for the village children.
19. The villagers had misjudged the man.
20. Realized that the man was very kind and felt sorry.
Sentences and Sentence Fragments C

1a. A sentence is a word group that contains a subject and a verb and that expresses a complete thought.

A sentence fragment is a word group that looks like a sentence but does not contain both a subject and a verb or does not express a complete thought.

SENTENCE FRAGMENT  As we carved the ice sculpture.

SENTENCE  My cousin and I carved an ice sculpture of a unicorn.

Exercise  Each of the following groups of words is a sentence fragment because it is missing either a subject or a verb. On the line provided, write S if the incomplete sentence is missing a subject or V if it is missing a verb. Then, rewrite the word group to make it a complete sentence.

Example  $  1. Played for hours in the park.

Daniel and I played for hours in the park.

1. The two energetic boys and their little sister.

2. The man with the small dog on a leash.

3. Ran through the trails.

4. Played until it was too dark to see.

5. The people near the large oak trees.

6. A small group of sparrows or wrens.

7. Flew rapidly from tree to tree.

8. Perched on a high branch of a hackberry tree.

9. The smallest squirrel in the group.

10. Hid in the hollow of an old log.
for CHAPTER 1: THE SENTENCE pages 53–56

Subjects and Predicates

1b. A subject tells whom or what the sentence is about.
To find the subject, ask who or what is doing something or about whom or what something is being said.

1d. The predicate of a sentence tells something about the subject.
In the following examples, the subjects are underlined once and the predicates are underlined twice.

EXAMPLES
The construction of the White House began in 1792.
Not until 1800 did the presidential residence have its first occupants.

Exercise A Identify the underlined part or parts of each of the following sentences as the subject or the predicate. On the line provided, write S for subject or P for predicate.

Example P 1. Has the White House been the home of every United States president except George Washington?
   ___ 1. The White House was originally called the President’s House.
   ___ 2. Later, it was called the Executive Mansion.
   ___ 3. The building’s design was chosen after a contest in 1791.
   ___ 4. The Irish American architect James Hoban won five hundred dollars for his design.
   ___ 5. The original structure was built of white-gray sandstone.
   ___ 6. British forces attacked the capital in 1814 and burned the President’s House.
   ___ 7. After the fire, painters whitewashed the new mansion.
   ___ 8. Covering smoke stains were several coats of white paint.
   ___ 9. People commonly called the building the White House.
   ___ 10. During his presidency, Theodore Roosevelt authorized the popular name.

Exercise B Identify the underlined part or parts of each of the following sentences as the subject or the predicate. On the line provided, write S for subject or P for predicate.

Example P 1. One symbol of United States independence is the Liberty Bell.
   ___ 11. A picture of the Liberty Bell appears in our social studies textbook.
   ___ 12. Does the Liberty Bell really weigh over two thousand pounds?
   ___ 13. The nation’s flag also symbolizes independence.
   ___ 14. The flag’s thirteen stripes stand for the nation’s original thirteen colonies.
   ___ 15. Can any of you explain the symbolic meaning of the flag’s fifty stars?
Simple and Complete Subjects

**Exercise A**  In each of the following sentences, the complete subject is underlined. Circle the word or word group that is the simple subject.

**Example 1.** The long journey would have been impossible without these boots.

1. Traditional Inuit dress includes the parka and mukluks.
2. People in snowy climates wear snowshoes for a variety of purposes.
4. The upper part of this comfortable footwear is often adorned with colorful beads.
5. A simple piece of leather with rawhide lacings was the first kind of shoe.

**Exercise B**  In each of the following sentences, underline the complete subject and circle the simple subject.

**Example 1.** Traditional cowboys in the American West wore boots with spurs.

6. Most of the ancient Egyptians went barefoot.
7. Some kinds of sandals can be laced almost to the knee.
8. Have you ever worn a plastic shoe?
9. At one time, some shoes in Japan were attached to stilts as high as six inches.
10. The Romans shaped shoes to fit the left foot and the right foot.
11. In ancient Rome, shoe style depended on social class.
12. During the 1300s in England, shoes with pointed toes eighteen inches long were popular.
13. The people of some mountainous areas wear shoes with an upturned toe and a high heel.
15. The first shoe factory appeared in Massachusetts in 1760.
FOR CHAPTER 1: THE SENTENCE  PAGE 56

**Simple and Complete Predicates**

1a. The **simple predicate**, or **verb**, is the main word or word group that tells something about the subject.

The simple predicate is part of the **complete predicate**, which consists of a verb and all the words that describe the verb and complete its meaning.

**SENTENCE**  The party for my grandparents’ fiftieth anniversary ended with a grand display of fireworks.

**COMPLETE PREDICATE**  ended with a grand display of fireworks

**SIMPLE PREDICATE**  ended

**Exercise**  In each of the following sentences, underline the complete predicate and circle the simple predicate.

Example 1. The musician played a twelve-string guitar.

1. The guitarist put new strings on her guitar.
2. The new strings sounded much better.
3. She tuned her guitar several times.
4. The guitarist played the first string with the help of a pitch pipe.
5. She then tuned all the strings to the first string.
6. Well-tuned strings are important to the musician.
7. The guitarist has a good ear for pitch.
8. She tried several chords on her guitar.
9. Then she made some adjustments to the tuning.
10. The new strings stretched a bit.
11. Some strings are lighter than others.
12. Do many guitarists prefer the lightest strings?
13. Sometimes the guitarist uses a thumb pick.
14. She plays the low notes with the thumb pick.
15. The guitarist often sings her own lyrics with the chords.
16. She uses a capo for some songs.
17. Capos change the pitch of the strings.
18. Capos fit around the neck of the guitar.
19. With a capo, the musician plays in a different key.
20. Have you ever played a guitar?
Verb Phrases

A verb phrase consists of a main verb and one or more helping verbs.

EXAMPLES
Did you see the meteor shower last night?
One of my cousins in South Carolina has been training for the U.S. Olympic wrestling team.

EXERCISE In each of the following sentences, underline the complete verb phrase.

Example 1. Jillian has been swimming for four years.
1. Jillian’s swim team is practicing for a meet.
2. Her team will be competing next month.
3. Jillian will be swimming freestyle.
4. The coach has been teaching new drills.
5. Some of the swimmers are training for the backstroke competition.
6. Jillian has competed in two other meets.
7. She was practicing each morning before school.
8. Now she will be practicing twice a day.
9. The team members are feeling more confident.
10. The coach has helped everyone on the team.
11. Years ago, Jillian could not swim a whole lap.
12. Now she can swim long distances.
13. Her little sister Rebecca has joined the team.
14. Rebecca is improving quickly.
15. She can do the butterfly stroke already.
16. Next year, Rebecca will compete in Jillian’s age group.
17. Jillian and Rebecca have never raced one another at a meet.
18. They do race for fun quite often.
19. Swimming is recognized as a very healthful form of exercise.
20. Rebecca and Jillian are enjoying the sport.
Complete and Simple Subjects and Predicates A

**1c.** The *simple subject* is the main word or word group that tells whom or what the sentence is about.

The simple subject is part of the *complete subject*, which consists of all the words that tell whom or what the sentence is about.

**1e.** The *simple predicate*, or *verb*, is the main word or word group that tells something about the subject.

The simple predicate is part of the *complete predicate*, which consists of a verb and all the words that describe the verb and complete its meaning.

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, underline the complete subject and circle the simple subject.

**Example 1.** Examples of amphibians include salamanders, frogs, and toads.

1. Many types of amphibians can be found in the United States.
2. Several kinds of salamanders inhabit forest areas.
3. The largest salamander on land is the Pacific giant salamander.
4. The Pacific giant salamander can grow to nearly one foot in length.
5. A small mouse might be a meal to this salamander.
6. The main predator in a small stream might be this large salamander.
7. A smaller salamander is the Olympic salamander.
8. Logs provide shady spots for the Olympic salamander.
9. To these salamanders, moisture from the forest floor is extremely important.
10. These smaller salamanders live on land but need to be near moisture.

**EXERCISE B** In each of the following sentences, underline the complete predicate and circle the simple predicate.

**Example 1.** Ancient forests are extremely valuable to many life-forms.

11. Many mammals, amphibians, and reptiles live in ancient forests.
12. Animals can make nests in dead trees.
13. Logs in streams and along the forest floor become part of an ancient forest.
14. These logs are beneficial for the soil and for animals.
15. All of the elements of an ancient forest work together.
Complete and Simple Subjects and Predicates B

**1c.** The *simple subject* is the main word or word group that tells *whom* or *what* the sentence is about.

The simple subject is part of the *complete subject*, which consists of all the words that tell *whom* or *what* the sentence is about.

**1e.** The *simple predicate*, or *verb*, is the main word or word group that tells something about the subject.

The simple predicate is part of the *complete predicate*, which consists of a verb and all the words that describe the verb and complete its meaning.

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, underline the complete subject and circle the simple subject.

**Example 1.** More and more [people] are using the Internet.

1. Use of the Internet is very common.
2. The World Wide Web is an excellent research tool.
3. Different search engines are available to users.
4. The purpose of a search engine is to help users find information.
5. The person looking for information types key words into a search engine.
6. The search engine looks for Web sites containing the key words.
7. The results of the search then appear in a list.
8. The user clicks on any Web site.
9. Very specific key words are sometimes necessary.
10. A search engine can be easy to use and fast.

**EXERCISE B** In each of the following sentences, underline the complete predicate and circle the simple predicate.

**Example 1.** Finding information on the Internet [may seem] difficult at first.

11. A wealth of information is available on the Internet.
12. People can find ZIP Codes on the Internet.
13. Telephone directories are available on the Internet.
15. Can drivers find maps to their destinations?
Compound Subjects

A compound subject consists of two or more connected subjects that have the same verb. The most common connecting words are and and or.

COMPOUND SUBJECT

The doorbell and the telephone rang at the same time.

EXERCISE A Each of the following sentences contains a compound subject. Underline the parts of the subject in each sentence.

Example 1. Pepper and Salty are our pet cats.
1. Kelly and I found two kittens.
2. My sister and Kelly named them Pepper and Salty.
3. The cats and our dog get along well.
4. My classmates and neighbors often come to visit.
5. Jacqui or Danielle will bring a leash for our dog.
6. Will the other dogs and my dog play together?
7. My sister or I will feed all the dogs.
8. Pepper and Salty sometimes wake up the dogs in the morning.
9. My aunts and uncles all have pets.
10. Parakeets, poodles, and goldfish are my grandmother’s favorite pets.

EXERCISE B For each of the following sentences, underline all parts of the compound subject.

Example 1. Glenn and his brother visited Knoxville, Tennessee.
11. The brothers and their father went to the lake.
12. Ducks, geese, and other birds gathered around the lake.
13. Several picnic tables and benches were lined up on one side of the lake.
14. Are the sandwiches and drinks in the ice chest?
15. The brothers, their father, and several other tourists played a game of kickball.
16. Did Glenn or his father bring the kickball to the lake?
17. Glenn’s brother and a duck got into a tug of war over a slice of bread.
18. Were the sandwiches, drinks, and fresh fruit enough to feed everyone?
19. Glenn’s brother and father cleared the table after the meal.
20. Glenn, his brother, and his father had a splendid time at the lake.
Compound Verbs

**1g.** A **compound verb** consists of two or more verbs that have the same subject. A connecting word—usually **and, or, or but**—is used between the verbs.

**Example** 1. The Tigers **won** the first game of the double-header but **did not win** the second.

**Exercise A** Each of the following sentences contains a compound verb. Underline the parts of the verb in each sentence.

**Example** 1. Megan loves music and enjoys classical concerts.

1. Megan will learn viola, study music theory, and take piano lessons.
2. Her school music teacher gives her lessons and shows her new tunes.
3. Megan reads music but doesn’t sight-read fast.
4. The study of rhythm requires patience and takes time.
5. A music staff has five lines and can look complex at first.
6. Notes may sit on the lines or occupy the spaces between the lines.
7. The notes correspond to the first seven letters of the alphabet and stand for certain tones.
8. Megan reads the note and bows the appropriate string.
9. Megan practices viola often and is improving day by day.
10. Should Megan practice for another hour or start her homework now?

**Exercise B** Underline the parts of the compound verb in each of the following sentences.

**Example** 1. Ted stood, slipped on the grass, and fell into the pond.

11. The cattle slipped and slid in the muddy creek bed.
12. Will Mara come to the party or stay home?
13. Close the hood, wipe the oil off your hands, and start the engine again.
14. Carlie shot the final picture on the roll and rewound the film.
15. Did the outfielder drop the ball or make the catch?
for CHAPTER 1: THE SENTENCE  pages 61–62

Compound Subjects and Verbs

A compound subject consists of two or more connected subjects that have the same verb.

EXAMPLE  Gloria and Ricky are popular singers.

A compound verb consists of two or more verbs that have the same subject.

EXAMPLE  Rita sings and dances beautifully.

EXERCISE A  Underline the compound subject or compound verb in each of the following sentences. Then, on the line provided, identify the compound part by writing CS for compound subject or CV for compound verb.

Example  \[\text{CS} \]

1. Vegetables and whole grains are good for your heart.

   \[\text{CS} \]

   1. According to scientists, too much fat and cholesterol in the diet are harmful.

   \[\text{CS} \]

   2. Cheeseburgers and milkshakes contain large amounts of both.

   \[\text{CS} \]

   3. Therefore, you should not eat or drink such fatty snacks too often.

   \[\text{CS} \]

   4. Did you and your sister have apples or carrot sticks as a snack today?

   \[\text{CS} \]

   5. In the future, stop and think about the health effects of your meals.

EXERCISE B  On the lines provided, combine each of the following pairs of sentences by writing one sentence with a compound subject or a compound verb. Hint: When you create a sentence with a compound subject, you may also need to change other words in the sentence.

Example 1. Gettysburg is a Civil War battle site. Fredericksburg is, too.

   Gettysburg and Fredericksburg are Civil War battle sites.

6. Maples grow well in this area. Birches grow well, too.

7. Sabrina runs every other day. Sabrina swims every other day.

8. The emu is a flightless bird. So is the kiwi.

9. Kwanita designed a new kind of kite. Then she built the kite.

10. When was Sandra Day O’Connor confirmed to the U.S. Supreme Court? When was Ruth Bader Ginsburg confirmed?
**Subjects and Verbs A**

1b. A **subject** tells whom or what the sentence is about.

**Examples**

- Did **everyone** in your class enjoy the field trip?
  - Ross and Roger will report on it tomorrow.

1e. The **simple predicate**, or **verb**, is the main word or word group that tells something about the subject.

**Examples**

- Did everyone in your class **enjoy** the field trip?
  - Ross and Roger **will report** on it tomorrow.

**Exercise A** For the following sentences, underline the subjects and circle the verbs.

**Example 1.** Katya and her younger sister play basketball for our school.

1. Rogelio and Martin are brothers and best friends.
2. Every morning before school, the two brothers practice tennis.
3. Rogelio and his coach will play tennis this afternoon.
4. After lunch, Martin will go to his science class in the portable building outside.
5. The teacher and some visitors were talking in the loud, busy hallway.
6. At seven this evening, Katya and her best friend will study geometry together.
7. Algebra and geometry can be fun.
8. A scientist should know math and enjoy methodical research.
9. Next year, Rogelio will study trigonometry.
10. Ever since the sixth grade, Katya has dreamed of a career as a marine biologist.

**Exercise B** For the following sentences, underline the subjects and circle the verbs.

**Example 1.** Engineers must know math and understand science.

11. Engineering is a specialized field and requires a lot of study.
12. A civil engineer might plan roadways or design bridges.
13. Most engineers study their fields carefully and develop new ideas.
14. The field of engineering requires creativity and demands attention to detail.
15. Engineers often specialize in one area and focus their attention on that subject.
Subjects and Verbs B

1b. A *subject* tells whom or what the sentence is about.

**EXAMPLES** Did *Harry* and *Sally* leave or just go outside?
   In the morning, *we* will go.

1e. The *simple predicate*, or *verb*, is the main word or word group that tells something about the subject.

**EXAMPLES** Did *Harry* and *Sally* *leave* or just *go* outside?
   In the morning, *we* *will go*.

**EXERCISE** For the following sentences, underline the subjects and circle the verbs.

*Example 1.* Rosa and Marta are on the volleyball team.

1. Venus and Mars are Earth’s nearest planetary neighbors.
2. Gilbert will create a short film or write a one-act play.
3. Her three-year-old brother does a silly dance and gives us all a good laugh.
4. Working together, Jamal and Tina carried the boxes of books up three flights of stairs.
5. The best movie of the summer created suspense and frightened the audience.
6. Especially during this close game, the team members and the coach must work together.
7. Last weekend, Aunt Sally went to the neighborhood pool and read for hours.
8. When will we see our relatives and exchange the gifts?
9. Both Hannah and Chuck worked hard on the science project.
10. In her spare time, Elena studies art books, finds interesting ideas, and creates new projects.
12. Every evening before dark, the athlete and her coach jog three miles together.
13. Among those with perfect attendance for the year were Joey, Dannika, and Steig.
14. On the hike up the mountain, I stumbled over a log and bruised my knee.
15. Either the baseball team or the softball team should win the state championship this year.
16. To our surprise, neither Mom nor Grandpa particularly liked the salsa.
17. The amateur photographer takes pictures regularly but never develops her own photographs.
18. My neighbor writes short films but usually doesn’t produce them.
19. Will lettuce and tomatoes be crops in our backyard garden this year?
20. During a funny scene, that actor skipped a line and confused the star of the show.
Classifying Sentences by Purpose

**EXERCISE A**

Classify each of the following sentences by purpose. On the line provided, write **DEC** for declarative, **IMP** for imperative, **INT** for interrogative, or **EXC** for exclamatory.

**Example**  
DEC 1. The Cherokee were forced from their homeland in the Southeast.

1. This forced migration became known as the Trail of Tears.
2. Look at this map.
3. Many migrated west to what is now Oklahoma.
4. How many Cherokee escaped the Trail of Tears?
5. How tragic the story is!

**EXERCISE B**

Rewrite each of the sentences below using the instructions given in brackets.

**Example**  
1. George Catlin began painting professionally in the 1820s. [Ask a question.]  
   **when did George Catlin begin painting professionally?**

6. George Catlin painted portraits of many of the Plains Indians. [Ask a question.]

7. Have you seen Catlin's picture of the Seminole chief Osceola? [Make a statement.]

8. Osceola looks handsome and grand in that picture. [Express strong feeling.]

9. Catlin created more than five hundred pictures showing American Indian life. [Ask a question.]

10. For more information about Catlin, you may want to read this book. [Give a command.]

---

**Classifying Sentences by Purpose**

**A declarative sentence** makes a statement and ends with a period.

**An imperative sentence** gives a command or makes a request.

**An interrogative sentence** asks a question and ends with a question mark.

**An exclamatory sentence** shows excitement or strong feeling and ends with an exclamation point.

**DECLARATIVE**  
I asked the librarian for help.

**IMPERATIVE**  
Help me. or Help me!

**INTERROGATIVE**  
What is the Trail of Tears?

**EXCLAMATORY**  
What a sad part of American history it is!
Exercice A  Classify each of the following sentences by purpose. On the line provided, write DEC for declarative, IMP for imperative, INT for interrogative, or EXC for exclamatory.

Example  INT  1. Did you go to the concert?

_____  1. The orchestra played magnificent Argentine tango music.
_____  2. Did you hear the violin solos?
_____  3. What an amazing arrangement that was!
_____  4. Please find out who the composer is.
_____  5. The composer’s name is Glover Gill.

Exercice B  Classify each of the following sentences by purpose. On the line provided, write DEC for declarative, IMP for imperative, INT for interrogative, or EXC for exclamatory. Then, write an appropriate end mark at the end of each sentence.

Example  EXC  1. What a lovely tune that was!

_____  6. Have you ever heard this type of music before
_____  7. The cello contributed to the haunting and beautiful melody
_____  8. Did you notice how the accordion blends perfectly with the violins
_____  9. The compositions are brilliantly designed to showcase each instrument
_____ 10. What a talented composer we have discovered
Identify each of the following groups of words as a sentence or a sentence fragment. On the line provided, write S for sentence or F for sentence fragment.

Examples

1. Here are the photographs of my visit to Assateague Island. S

2. An island along the Maryland and Virginia coasts. F

1. In a place called Assateague Island.

2. Wild horses live on the island.

3. Not on the mainland, though.

4. Where it is slightly above sea level at the highest point.

5. There is no shelter there from hurricanes.

6. Except sand dunes and a few trees.

7. However, the horses have survived for centuries.

8. No one knows how they got there.

9. According to legend, a great Spanish sailing ship.

10. They may be descendants of horses taken to the island in the 1600s.

11. Wow, there are herds running wild!

12. Thoroughly enjoyed watching them run.

13. Have you ever seen a wild horse?

14. The island is also home to a great variety of birds.

15. How many species?

16. Three kinds of egrets on the island.

17. Some ducks, swans, and geese migrate to the island.

18. Sika elk, which are originally from Japan, Korea, and China.

19. If you have an opportunity to visit this beautiful island refuge.

20. Take your camera along.
**EXERCISE**  In each of the following sentences, draw one line under the complete subject and two lines under the complete predicate. Then, circle each simple subject and verb.

**Example 1.** Does Guido’s little brother collect rocks?

1. The party for Victor is tomorrow.
2. The soundtrack of that movie features a song by Celine Dion.
3. Every club in our school is building a float for the parade.
4. The huge mirror in the hall is a valuable antique.
5. Our entire family attended the commencement exercises.
6. In front of the garage lay three bicycles.
7. My younger brother sat in the back seat with the dogs.
8. Is this vacation plan the least expensive?
9. Our neighbor helped us with the clothesline.
10. Will the members of the committee be making the decisions?
11. Our team finally won its first game.
12. With the help of her teammates, the young woman limped off the soccer field.
13. Would any of you listen to this music by Igor Stravinsky?
14. The science teacher gave us an interesting assignment.
15. What a celebration our class had!
16. Does Mr. Wong give you cello lessons?
17. My English teacher gave me a copy of the book *Little Women*.
18. At the Japanese restaurant, both of us ordered tempura.
19. Neither of these answers is correct.
20. On opening night of the World Series, the ten-year-old girl beamed with excitement.
**Review C: Compound Subjects and Compound Verbs**

**EXERCISE A** For each of the following sentences, underline each part of the compound subject.

Example 1. **Tools and materials** are necessary for home repair.
1. Wood and paint are useful materials for home repair.
2. Aren’t hammers and nails usually necessary for repair?
3. Plumbers or electricians might help with more serious problems.
4. Saws, chisels, and planes are important tools for woodworking.
5. A chisel or gouge helps a carpenter work with wood.
6. Sanders and planes are tools for leveling wood surfaces.
7. Windows and doors require special care.
8. For many projects, measuring tapes or rulers are useful.
9. The height, width, and depth of the windows are important measurements.
10. The weight and thickness of the doors determine the type of hinges necessary.

**EXERCISE B** For each of the following sentences, underline each part of the compound verb.

Example 1. Frank and Edwina **will buy and restore** an old house.
11. Frank examined the house and noticed several problems.
12. To Frank’s dismay, parts of the roof leaked or were damaged.
13. Frank removed the old shingles near the chimney and added new ones.
14. Edwina cleaned the leaves out of the gutters and then repaired the one rusty gutter.
15. Did that same windowpane slip and crack again?
16. Edwina cut some glass, shaped its edges, and then replaced the old pane.
17. Next she bought some fabric and made new curtains.
18. The door in the front hallway squeaked and dragged on the floor.
19. After dinner, Frank cleaned and oiled the hinges.
20. Frank removed the door but hasn’t sanded the bottom of it yet.
Review D: Classifying Sentences by Purpose

**Exercise**  Classify each of the following sentences by purpose. On the line provided, write **DEC** for declarative, **IMP** for imperative, **INT** for interrogative, or **EXC** for exclamatory.

**Example**  **DEC**  1. A laser produces an intense beam of light.

___  1. What kinds of operations can a laser perform?

___  2. Look at this list of operations.

___  3. A laser can drill through a diamond, carry information, or measure the distance to the moon.

___  4. Don’t eye surgeons use lasers?

___  5. How extremely bright the light from a laser is!

___  6. Scientists are studying the power of the laser.

___  7. Even a tiny beam produces an enormous amount of power!

___  8. Perhaps in this mysterious beam lies the answer to an alternative power source.

___  9. What new machines would you like to see in the near future?

___ 10. Class, please make a list of your ideas.

___ 11. Jackie wishes for cars that do not rely on fossil fuels.

___ 12. Will computer-controlled robots become commonplace?

___ 13. Study this sketch of a future space colony.

___ 14. What courage it would take to live there!

___ 15. Perhaps someday we will all be able to travel in space.

___ 16. Do you think the future holds unlimited potential?

___ 17. The way we treat our planet today affects the way we will live in the future.

___ 18. Make smart choices or pay the price.

___ 19. Have you ever wondered what future generations will think of us?

___ 20. I am willing to do what I can to make the world a better place.
EXERCISE A  Underline the nouns in each of the following sentences. Hint: The number in parentheses indicates the number of nouns in each sentence.

Example 1. (3) Thomas Hooker has been called the father of American democracy.

1. (4) Thomas Hooker immigrated to the Massachusetts Bay Colony in 1633 to find religious freedom.
2. (3) Disagreements with the religious leaders of the colony soon developed.
3. (5) Hooker and several followers carved out a new, independent settlement nearby, which eventually became Hartford, Connecticut.
4. (5) He supported the right of the people—not just the members of the church—to vote for their judges.
5. (3) He explained his beliefs in a book published in 1648.

EXERCISE B  Underline the nouns in the following sentences.

Example 1. This past summer, Joey and his sister Dawn took a photography class.

6. On the first day, Mr. Armstrong went around and demonstrated how to use the various cameras.
7. Each camera had at least one mysterious button that had to be explained.
8. After this first lesson, the class learned about composition.
9. Mr. Armstrong displayed his best photos, and Dawn was impressed and inspired.
10. The next class was a field trip to the San Diego Zoo.
11. Joey got a great shot of a howler monkey showing its teeth.
12. Dawn, who adores koala bears, was determined to get a picture to put on her wall.
13. Waiting patiently, Dawn finally caught a koala bear that was looking in her direction.
14. Joey wanted to see the photos right away, so his dad dropped off the film at the drugstore.
15. Dawn bought a shiny silver frame for the koala picture that now hangs over her desk.
Compound Nouns

2b. A compound noun is made up of two or more words used together as a single noun.

**EXAMPLES**
- backpack, Haleakala National Park, brother-in-law

**EXERCISE**
Underline the compound nouns in the following sentences. There may be more than one compound noun in a sentence.

**Example 1.** The Marx Brothers were a family of comedians.

1. They were born in New York City and began working as children.
2. Originally, five of the brothers were in show business.
3. Their given names were Leonard, Adolph, Julius, Milton, and Herbert.
4. Thousands of theatergoers, however, knew them as Chico, Harpo, Groucho, Gummo, and Zeppo.
5. Their first successful play on Broadway was *I’ll Say She Is* in 1924.
6. One of their films was a version of their stage play *The Cocoanuts*, which was written by George S. Kaufman.
7. This film was followed by *Animal Crackers, Monkey Business*, and *Duck Soup*.
8. Every film was a whirlwind of hilarity, with nonstop jokes and physical comedy.
9. The three best-known Marx Brothers were Groucho, Chico, and Harpo.
10. Groucho was known for his eyebrows, his moustache, and his constant wisecracks.
11. He often played characters with funny names, such as Rufus T. Firefly in *Duck Soup*.
12. Chico Marx spoke with an accent, mispronounced words, and excelled as a pianist.
13. Harpo never spoke, so he specialized in sight gags and slapstick.
14. His harp playing was a highlight of every film.
15. The actress Margaret Dumont was often the target of Groucho’s jokes.
16. One of the brothers’ later films was *A Night in Casablanca*.
17. Warner Brothers, a rival studio, threatened to sue the Marx Brothers because of the film.
18. They felt its name was too similar to another film starring Humphrey Bogart and Ingrid Bergman.
19. Groucho Marx sent the studio a humorous letter.
20. “I’ll sue you,” wrote Groucho Marx, “for using the word ‘Brothers.’”
Common and Proper Nouns

2c. A common noun names any one of a group of persons, places, things, or ideas.
2d. A proper noun names a particular person, place, thing, or idea.

**COMMON NOUNS**
- doctor
- planet
- contest
- religion

**PROPER NOUNS**
- Dr. Hopkins
- Neptune
- Special Olympics
- Shinto

**EXERCISE** Identify the nouns in the following sentences. Underline the common nouns once and the proper nouns twice.

**Example 1.** Mark Twain is my favorite author.

1. The fish in the tank are a variety of colors.
2. Mr. Townsend has the *Detroit Free Press* delivered daily to his house.
3. Of all the people in my class, Amy is probably the funniest person.
4. The calendar over my desk has a picture of a lighthouse in Maine.
5. The first day that the doctor is available is Thursday.
6. The two ships just docked at the port.
7. My brother showed me an article about archaeology in *The New Yorker*.
8. Two of the most memorable characters in the novel *Moby-Dick* by Herman Melville are Ahab, a one-legged whaling captain, and the whale itself.
9. The facial expressions of the actor caused a great deal of laughter.
10. A picture of the actor Denzel Washington was pinned to the bulletin board by thumbtacks.
11. Can Uncle Tim take us to the beach?
12. Guadalupe Street runs along the west side of the University of Texas in Austin.
13. My father and my uncle grew up near the Muskegon River in Big Rapids, Michigan.
14. My grandfather taught for many years at Ferris State University.
15. There are several types of hammers, including the claw hammer, the ball-peen hammer, and the sledgehammer.
16. Please take this copy of the book back to the library.
17. In the backyard of our house, I can still find old arrowheads occasionally.
18. The photography in that film is superb.
19. Will Professor Ondaatje be lecturing later?
20. The Reverend Jane Wilcox will be coming to dinner soon.
Concrete, Abstract, and Collective Nouns

A **concrete noun** names a person, place, or thing that can be perceived by one or more of the senses (sight, hearing, taste, touch, and smell).

An **abstract noun** names an idea, a feeling, a quality, or a characteristic.

**CONCRETE NOUNS** friend, restaurant, garlic, *Star Trek*

**ABSTRACT NOUNS** friendship, danger, loyalty, Judaism

A **collective noun** is a word that names a group.

**EXAMPLES** orchestra, herd, bunch, Ecology Club

**EXERCISE A** In the following sentences, underline the concrete nouns once and the abstract nouns twice.

**Example 1.** Victor is an expert on Zen Buddhism.

1. Christa read a book about increasing her self-confidence.
2. Please bring me a box of pencils from the closet.
3. Time moves slowly for people caught in a traffic jam.
4. An editorial is an essay, usually in a newspaper, in which the writer expresses his or her opinion.
5. Tito, do you believe his story is the truth?
6. Professor Said is writing a book about art history.
7. Jennifer learned to overcome her fear of dogs.
8. Dr. Melfi is a specialist in the treatment of certain illnesses.
9. My brother, the playwright, is working on a new play.
10. He likes to talk about what he calls the principles of comedy.

**EXERCISE B** Underline the collective nouns in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** We picked Sam from a litter of black and white kittens.

11. My sister Sandra received a set of drums and a collection of stamps for her tenth birthday.
12. The fleet left the harbor under full steam, followed by a flock of seagulls.
13. The faculty voted to change the requirements for graduation.
14. As the magazine photographer came over the ridge, he saw a herd of water buffalo that stretched to the horizon.
15. The audience applauded so fervently that the band and the chorus returned to the stage for an encore.
Kinds of Nouns

2c. A **common noun** names any one of a group of persons, places, things, or ideas.

2d. A **proper noun** names a particular person, place, thing, or idea.

2e. A **concrete noun** names a person, place, or thing that can be perceived by one or more of the senses (sight, hearing, taste, touch, and smell).

2f. An **abstract noun** names an idea, a feeling, a quality, or a characteristic.

2g. A **collective noun** is a word that names a group.

2b. A **compound noun** is made up of two or more words used together as a single noun.

**Exercise A** Identify each of the following nouns. On the line provided, write **COM** for common noun or **PRO** for proper noun. Then, write **CON** for concrete noun or **ABS** for abstract noun.

Example **COM, ABS** 1 honesty

| 2. wisdom | 7. federalism |
| 3. Potomac River | 8. eagle |
| 5. airport | 10. independence |

**Exercise B** Identify each of the following nouns. On the line provided, write **COLL** for collective noun or **COMP** for compound noun. Hint: One noun is both collective and compound.

Example **COMP** 1. space shuttle

| 12. family | 17. Gulf of Mexico |
| 13. Lake Ontario | 18. self-respect |
| 14. houseboat | 19. audience |
| 15. team | 20. Boston Pops Orchestra |
Pronouns and Antecedents

A pronoun is a word used in place of one or more nouns or pronouns.

The word that a pronoun stands for is called its antecedent.

EXAMPLE Arlon wanted snapshots, but he did not have his camera handy. [The pronouns he and his refer to the antecedent Arlon.]

Sometimes a pronoun’s antecedent is not stated.

EXAMPLE The teacher asked everyone to bring in art supplies for the project. [The pronoun everyone has no stated antecedent.]

EXERCISE For each of the following sentences, identify each pronoun and its antecedent. Underline every pronoun once and its antecedent twice. Some of the pronouns do not have stated antecedents. If a pronoun has no stated antecedent, write NSA above the pronoun.

Example 1. Parker brought her tap shoes to the party, but she did not dance.

1. The gazelles came down to the stream, but they did not drink.
2. Dean and Jim decided to pool their resources and buy a video camera.
3. Debra set up an easel and a palette, and then she began to paint.
4. Don’t play the piano; it needs tuning.
5. Are you going to the library?
6. After seeing three more movies, Paula decided that she liked Harrison Ford after all.
7. The crowd lifted their voices in song as the team took the field.
8. Somebody answer the phone, please.
10. George told Mary that he would love to see the film.
11. On his trip to India, Steve Decker was attacked by a cow.
12. Sandrine signed her name inside the book’s front cover.
13. No one knew who brought the banana bread to the potluck dinner.
14. Carla called out, “The red bass guitar is mine!”
15. The day Dave didn’t use his sunblock, he got badly sunburned.
16. “See that painting on the far wall? Jane knows the woman who painted it.”
17. As the cattle came through the gate, some headed for the barn, but most stayed in the yard.
18. If that is the pen Randy wants, why doesn’t Brad buy it?
19. Steve invited us to his house to watch his favorite show on television.
20. These are the flowers I was talking about; aren’t they beautiful?
Exercise In each of the following sentences, underline the pronoun or pronouns. Above each pronoun, write P for personal, R for reflexive, or I for intensive.

Example 1. Mimi finally gave up looking, and she told herself that the missing book would turn up eventually.

1. Hari bought the bicycle himself, with his own money.
2. As soon as the students decided to write and perform a play, they created an outline of the story.
3. After waiting an hour for Jesse to stop talking on the phone, the kids filled the wading pool themselves.
4. Did you leave the cup on the counter?
5. When Mr. and Mrs. Britt sold their house, it was on the market for only a week.
6. I bought the sandwich for you, Al, and the salad for myself.
7. “We should not be too hard on ourselves,” the coach told the team. “We worked hard and did the best we could.”
8. Gwen, you need to ask yourself some tough questions about the future.
9. The Wahrmans painted their new house themselves.
10. Dr. Connolly himself cooked the main course for us.
Demonstrative and Relative Pronouns

A **demonstrative pronoun** points out a person, a place, a thing, or an idea.

**EXAMPLE**  That is a photograph of the space shuttle *Atlantis*. *(That points out photograph.)*

A **relative pronoun** introduces a subordinate clause.

**EXAMPLE**  Is this the book **that** describes the Hopi Snake Dance? *(That introduces the subordinate clause that describes the Hopi Snake Dance.)*

**EXERCISE**  Identify the demonstrative and the relative pronouns in the following sentences. Underline each demonstrative pronoun once and each relative pronoun twice.

**Example 1.**  This is the best banana bread that I have ever tasted!

1. Last night we watched *The Searchers*, which is my father’s favorite movie.
2. That is the book assigned for class for next week.
3. This is not the sweater that I want to wear.
4. Ms. Garson offered a ride to Dr. Conrad, whose car was being repaired.
5. Dinesh, who is in the chess club, showed me how the pieces on a chessboard move.
6. The sonata, which is usually played on the harpsichord, can also be played on the piano.
7. This is the roll-top desk that my mother refinished.
8. Please tell me the names of those who are willing to work on Saturday.
9. Mr. Cotten, whose book we are reading in English class, is coming to speak to us.
10. That is the ugliest painting that I have ever seen, but this is quite lovely.
11. The apple on the plate was picked yesterday, but those that are on the counter were picked two days ago.
12. My older sister, whose dog is named Padgett, is very fond of all animals.
13. Why don’t we ask Mimi, to whom the package was addressed?
14. This is the best time to speak to Professor Kinbote, who might know the answer to the question.
15. If you follow the directions that Alice gave you, you will find the house with no problem.
16. This is the best-looking pecan pie in the competition, but that tastes better.
17. Are these the kittens that you found under the bridge?
18. These seem to be the shoes that I left in the locker room yesterday.
19. The book, which has two authors, should be filed under the first author’s name.
20. The artist who did the mural in the library probably did this as well.
Indefinite Pronouns and Interrogative Pronouns

**Exercise A** In the following sentences, underline each indefinite pronoun once and each interrogative pronoun twice.

**Example 1.** Who told everyone to meet at my house?

1. Which is the restaurant you would like to try?
2. I found a red jacket! Whose is it?
3. Most of the job was finished by the time Allan arrived.
4. Several of the buildings were damaged by the tornado.
5. Which of the films at the festival did you see?
6. To whom did the broken coffee cup belong?
7. Neither of the dogs was willing to try two types of dog food.
8. What did they think of the last movement of the symphony?
9. Nobody answered the phone when I called.
10. Each car comes with everything a driver could need.

**Exercise B** Write an indefinite pronoun in the blank in each of the following sentences. Use a different pronoun for each sentence.

**Example 1.** Each of the brothers decided on his own to enter the science fair.

11. Could ______________ please give me a hand with this table?
12. Jamal and Karen gave ______________ the same present for Christmas.
13. ______________ of the delicate plants outside survived the first frost of the season.
14. We used ______________ of the flour baking bread for the reunion banquet.
15. Do you know ______________ about the Civil War?
16. ______________ have ever claimed to have seen that bird in the wild.
17. Brenda told ______________ at school about her new job at the pharmacy.
18. ______________ of the guests at the wedding enjoyed the music, but ______________ did not.
19. Please don’t tell ______________ about the surprise party.
20. ______________ of the band members can read music.
A pronoun is a word used in place of one or more nouns or pronouns.

**EXAMPLES**

By studying this, you can teach yourself how to make origami figures. [This is a demonstrative pronoun, you is a personal pronoun, and yourself is a reflexive pronoun.]

Who composed the music that Jacob played at the recital? [Who is an interrogative pronoun, and that is a relative pronoun.]

The students did all of the research themselves. [All is an indefinite pronoun, and themselves is an intensive pronoun.]

**Exercise**

Underline the pronoun in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the pronoun by writing above it one of these abbreviations: PER for personal, REF for reflexive, INTEN for intensive, DEM for demonstrative, INTER for interrogative, IND for indefinite, or REL for relative.

**Example 1.** The managers of the company gave themselves raises.

1. Alejandro does not like snow-skiing, but he loves water-skiing.
2. Is that Buckingham Palace?
3. Everyone here has read the book.
4. Who discovered DNA?
5. “We are not amused,” said the queen to the ambassador.
6. The new student, who is from Iran, is named Darob.
7. Mr. Kilkerney retired in April, and the school gave him a going-away party.
8. Are these the oldest rocks on earth?
9. Whom did the filmmakers cast in the role of King Arthur?
10. The film, which contains extraordinary special effects, will become a blockbuster.
11. The governor herself spoke to the graduating class.
12. Is something burning?
13. The band members worked hard to buy themselves new uniforms.
14. Did Paul write the short story himself?
15. The teacher assigned each of the students a poem to read aloud in class.
16. Which of the planets is farthest from the sun?
17. Mr. Wu and she left nearly an hour ago.
18. Are the gloves on the desk yours?
19. The only U.S. president who served more than two terms is Franklin D. Roosevelt.
20. Dad went to the mall by himself to shop for holiday gifts.
Adjectives and Articles

2p. An adjective is a word used to modify a noun or a pronoun.

An adjective modifies a word by telling what kind, which one, how much, or how many.

**Examples**
- Mr. Cruz collects **Egyptian** art. [What kind of art?]
- Sara won **first** prize. [Which prize?]
- Do you have **enough** money for the tickets? [How much money?]
- Our computer club has **fifty-seven** members. [How many members?]

An adjective may come before or after the word it modifies.

**Examples**
- The soccer players, **confident** and **enthusiastic**, were **ready** to begin the game.

The most frequently used adjectives are the **articles** *a*, *an*, and *the*.

**Exercise A** In each sentence below, underline all of the adjectives, including the articles *a*, *an*, and *the*.

**Example** 1.

Jenny Lind was a **popular** Swedish singer with a **beautiful** voice.

1. Jenny Lind starred in several operas and gained great renown in European cities.
2. At the absolute height of a brilliant career, she stopped performing in operas.
3. In 1849, the talented diva gave up an operatic career and began planning a concert tour.
4. From 1850 to 1851, Lind gave ninety-three concerts for the American public.
5. This extraordinary performer delighted audiences for fifty-three years.

**Exercise B** In each of the following sentences, underline all the adjectives except the articles *a*, *an*, and *the*. Then, draw an arrow from each adjective to the word it modifies.

**Example** 1.

President Thomas Jefferson gave **two** American explorers a **difficult** assignment.

6. These bold explorers were Meriwether Lewis and William Clark.
7. They were to explore the uncharted lands to the west of the Mississippi River.
8. The long and arduous expedition began in St. Louis, Missouri, in 1804.
9. They made their winter camp in what is now North Dakota.
10. During that winter a Shoshone woman, Sacagawea, joined the expedition.
11. Her name translates into the English language as “Bird Woman.”
12. Sacagawea and her husband, a French-Canadian trader, accompanied the explorers through a large portion of the West.
13. As an interpreter of native languages, Sacagawea was helpful to the expedition.
14. The group, daring and resourceful, surmounted many obstacles.
15. The two-year journey was successful.
Demonstrative Adjectives

This, that, these, and those can be used both as adjectives and as pronouns. When they modify nouns or pronouns, they are called *demonstrative adjectives*. When they take the place of nouns or pronouns, they are called *demonstrative pronouns*.

**EXAMPLES**

- Look at *that* pumpkin! [demonstrative adjective]
- *That* is the biggest pumpkin I have ever seen! [demonstrative pronoun]

**EXERCISE**

In the following sentences, underline the demonstrative adjectives once and the demonstrative pronouns twice.

**Example 1.** That building is much taller than this.

1. These stories are the best I’ve ever read.
2. Do you want this CD or that one?
3. That was the song Rashid has been humming all afternoon.
4. Those cats have been resting on the windowsill for two hours.
5. These are the funniest jokes I’ve ever heard!
6. This is the moment all those fans of the singer have been anticipating.
7. Joseph will be recycling those tomorrow, so he put them in the garage.
8. These parts will need to be cleaned before we can use them.
9. Wasn’t that the worst movie you’ve ever seen?
10. Those grapes were tastier than these are.
11. I’ll purchase this, and you can keep that one.
12. That is not what I meant to say.
13. Those comments of yours were right on target.
14. If you’ll put away those toys, I’ll take care of these.
15. Is that all you have to say?
16. That Norman Rockwell painting has always been Tera’s favorite.
17. After reading descriptions of both books, Malcolm has decided to buy this.
18. Would you mind explaining how to solve this equation?
19. I have been needing a new pair of glasses, so I am happy to have these.
20. This photograph of Yvonne’s fifth birthday party makes me laugh.
Proper Adjectives

Unlike a common adjective, a *proper adjective* is formed from a proper noun and begins with a capital letter.

**Examples**

Does every play by William Shakespeare have five acts? [common adjectives]

Does every Shakespearean play have five acts? [proper adjective]

**Exercise**

In the following sentences, underline each proper adjective once and underline twice the word it modifies.

**Example** 1. Mark Twain is one of the most popular American authors.

1. I have a CD of the singer Frank Sinatra performing Cole Porter songs.
2. The French novelist Jules Verne predicted such inventions as the submarine and the television.
3. A Norwegian expedition reached the South Pole a month before a British expedition arrived.
4. Akira Kurosawa, the Japanese filmmaker, directed many entertaining films.
5. Today, the prime minister issued a statement about the Northern Ireland peace talks.
6. I really enjoy the Spanish dish paella; my sister prefers the North African dish couscous.
7. I enjoy Georgia peaches almost as much as I like Michigan cherries.
8. Giuseppe Verdi, the composer of *Rigoletto*, was one of the leading figures of Italian opera.
9. Did you know that Mordecai Richler, who is a novelist, is Canadian?
10. The most famous British rock-and-roll songwriters may be John Lennon and Paul McCartney.
11. Candy skulls are a tradition during the Mexican holiday called the Day of the Dead.
12. My father, who likes spicy food, enjoys eating Indian curry and Thai green curry.
14. Grandmother Adams was born during the Roosevelt administration.
15. The Inca ruins at Machu Picchu are located high in the Peruvian Andes.
16. Cassie will study Italian architecture at the University of Washington next semester.
17. Nicola’s favorite restaurant in New Orleans often has Cajun music.
18. Uncle Shawn is bringing his specialty, chicken Caesar salad, to the picnic.
19. Joel’s mother told us that the college years pass by in a New York minute.
20. What is Reverend Bowman’s opinion of this Biblical passage?
Noun, Pronoun, or Adjective?

The way that a word is used in a sentence determines what part of speech the word is. Some words may be used as nouns or as adjectives. Other words may be used as pronouns or as adjectives.

- **NOUN** May I have an apple?
- **ADJECTIVE** May I have some apple juice?
- **PRONOUN** This is a painting by Mary Cassatt.
- **ADJECTIVE** This painting is by Mary Cassatt.

**Exercise** In each sentence below, identify the part of speech of the underlined word. Above each, write N for noun, P for pronoun, or A for adjective.

1. Some people like their salsa hot.

2. Some prefer salsa that is mild.

3. The rookie hit the baseball over the outfield fence.

4. Did you see the baseball game on television last night?

5. Which way did the dog go?

6. Which of the cats is the oldest?

7. In astronomy class we learned which stars are likely to become supernovas.

8. Antonio plans to study astronomy in college.


10. The morning after the storm, the lighthouse keeper slept in late.

11. That telephone is not working properly.

12. Is that a real duck or a decoy?

13. We heard the tornado warning on the radio.

14. Audra got a job as an intern at the local radio station.

15. Do you have any apples this morning?

16. Ted claimed he had not received any of my messages.

17. Are you happy with your Internet provider?

18. Let’s see if we can find the information we need on the Internet.

19. Nicci saw a very enjoyable movie at the film festival.

20. The action film was three weeks behind its schedule.

---

**Elements of Language | Second Course**
Review A: Nouns

Exercise A Identify the underlined noun in each of the following sentences. On the line provided, write COM for common noun or PRO for proper noun. Then, write CON for concrete noun or ABS for abstract noun.

Example 1. Dorothy Parker was a famous critic and writer.  
1. Parker is especially remembered for her sharp humor.  
2. As a critic, she often used sarcasm in her evaluations.  
3. Once, Parker felt that an actress had given a very stiff performance.  
4. She wrote that the actress had shown a full range of emotion, from A to B.  
5. Parker regularly met with other writers at the Algonquin Hotel in New York City.

Exercise B Above the underlined noun in each of the following sentences, write COMP if the noun is compound or COLL if it is collective. Hint: One noun is both compound and collective.

Example 1. A large crowd gathered outside the theater.

6. Vermont is known as the Green Mountain State.

7. The tour group enjoyed visiting the Alamo in San Antonio, Texas.

8. Did you know that Abraham Lincoln was primarily self-educated?

9. The United States Senate contains two members from each state.

10. South Carolina produces many fruits and vegetables.

Exercise C Identify the part of speech of the underlined word in each of the following sentences. Above the word, write N for noun or A for adjective. Then, write P if the word is a proper noun or proper adjective.

Example 1. Who were the first European explorers in Australia?

11. Australia is an island continent.

12. In 1770, Captain James Cook sailed to the island.

13. Cook claimed it for the British.

14. British convicts were sent there from the beginning of colonization.

15. Much of the continent’s animal life is unique.

16. One animal unique to Australia is the duck-billed platypus.

17. What is the capital city of Australia?

18. The capital of Australia is Canberra.

19. Do most of the people in Australia speak the English language?

20. Yes, English is the primary language spoken in Australia.
REVIEW B: PRONOUNS

EXERCISE A Identify each underlined word by writing above it PRO for pronoun or ADJ for adjective.

Example 1. This is the funniest part of the movie.
1. I have seen this movie three times.
2. Many of my friends helped me search for my missing kitten.
3. Many years passed before his grandparents visited their homeland.
4. Which book do you want to read next?
5. Which of the computer games do you want to play first?

EXERCISE B Underline the pronoun in each of the following sentences. Then, draw an arrow from the pronoun to its antecedent(s). If the pronoun has no antecedent, write NA above the pronoun.

Example 1. Joan and Mary wanted to paint the room by themselves.
6. Carleen bought four tickets to the concert but then misplaced them.
7. Which of the English kings signed the Magna Carta?
8. Mother thanked Barbara and Tim for their thoughtful note.
9. Can anyone here play the piano?
10. Mark Twain, who was a great writer, once worked on a riverboat.

EXERCISE C Underline the pronoun in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the pronoun by writing above it one of these abbreviations: PER for personal, REF for reflexive, INTEN for intensive, DEM for demonstrative, INTER for interrogative, IND for indefinite, and REL for relative.

Example 1. This is an excellent movie about South Africa.
11. Why did she miss the soccer banquet?
12. The record album was signed by the singer himself.
13. That is a beautiful cathedral!
14. For Hank’s birthday, which is next Tuesday, Odessa will bake a cake.
15. Someone on the faculty wrote the school song.
16. Ms. Wang reminded herself to order tickets as soon as possible.
17. Most of Shika’s neighbors were extremely friendly.
18. Whom did Selena invite to the dance?
19. Sean washed and dried the dishes and stacked them in the cabinet.
20. The sailors spotted a squid that was thirty feet long.


**Exercise A**  In the following sentences, underline each adjective once. Then, draw an arrow from each adjective to the word it modifies. Do not include the articles *a, an, and the*.

**Example 1.** After he bought the *old* house, Mr. Blandings repaired the *stone* wall that surrounded the *overgrown* garden.

1. The bright banner hung from the underside of the wooden bridge.
2. Our old cat, once energetic, now sleeps all day.
3. The red light on the video camera means that the camera is recording.
4. Dora prefers Chinese soup that is extremely spicy.
5. The quick brown fox jumped over the lazy dog.
6. That book with the blue cover was written by a good friend of ours.
7. Each member of the marching band brought something to sell at the bake sale.
8. Eight boxes of adhesive tape arrived at the central office.
9. The ambitious swimmer hoped to win a gold medal for an Olympic event.
10. The little car is often overshadowed by giant trucks on the highway.

**Exercise B**  In each of the following sentences, identify each underlined word by writing above it *N* for *noun* or *A* for *adjective*.

**Example 1.** I’m looking forward to the *Fourth of July* celebrations this year.

11. Would you like to go to the movies *Wednesday* night?
12. *Wednesday* is the least crowded night at the theater.
13. Thelonious Monk performed playfully on the *piano*.
14. Ask the *piano* player if he knows “As Time Goes By.”
15. Please tell the actor that we enjoyed his *comedy* performance.
16. My brother is writing a *comedy* for his playwriting class.
17. The chalk broke in two as the teacher wrote on the *chalkboard*.
18. The children drew a *chalk* circle on the driveway.
19. The *space* exhibit was the fair’s most popular attraction.
20. The satellite was lost in *space* and never heard from again.
The Verb

A verb is a word that expresses action or a state of being.

**EXAMPLES**
- We **looked** through the telescope and **observed** the comet.
- The night sky **was** cloudy, so we **were** unable to see the comet clearly.

**EXERCISE A** Underline the verb in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** The ducks swam in the lake.

1. A lady threw bread to the ducks.
2. Several birds flew by.
3. The sky was bright blue.
4. We saw a beautiful sea gull.
5. One of the ducks made a strange noise.
6. She called her ducklings to her.
7. We took a photograph of the ducks and birds.
8. My sister identified the duck.
9. This one is a Muscovy.
10. We learned the names of all the ducks.

**EXERCISE B** Underline the verb in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Mary Ellen has three cats.

11. My father traveled to Easter Island last year.
12. She sliced an onion for the stew.
13. Bring your beach towel with you on the picnic.
14. Is that a sandhill crane?
15. Lyle and Tector walked across the village.
16. Michele is a very good singer.
17. The fox watched the chickens from the other side of the fence.
18. Michael spread the blanket over the bed.
19. These horses are the prettiest in the herd.
20. Orange juice dripped all over the floor.
Helping Verbs and Main Verbs

A helping verb helps the main verb express action or a state of being. Together, a main verb and at least one helping verb (also called an auxiliary verb) make up a verb phrase.

**EXAMPLES**

- I have read many of Ernesto Galarza’s poems
- Have you read any of his poems?

**EXERCISE**

In each of the following sentences, draw one line under the helping verb(s) and two lines under the main verb.

**Example 1.** Ernesto Galarza was born in Mexico.

1. When did the Galarza family move to Sacramento, California?
2. Other Mexican families had also immigrated to the United States.
3. Many of them had come to the United States for economic reasons.
4. In what year did Galarza publish his first book?
5. Many people have been enjoying his works for years.
6. Many are reading his works in the original Spanish.
7. Galarza has written about the struggles of farmworkers.
8. You have probably read some of his poetry.
9. Did you read the poetry in Spanish or in English?
10. You may like his poem about Mother Nature.
11. It is translated as “Copy from an Old Master.”
12. Most young readers do enjoy his poem about the traffic light.
13. Will we be reading any of his poems in class this year?
15. This collection was published in 1971.
16. You will learn valuable lessons from these poems.
17. Galarza has been called the Father Goose of Mexican children.
18. Which poem should we read first?
19. Galarza’s autobiographical work is titled *Barrio Boy.*
20. Does your literature book contain excerpts from *Barrio Boy*?
Action Verbs

An action verb is a verb that expresses either physical or mental activity.

**Examples**
- Carlos **painted** this picture from a snapshot he **had taken**.[physical activities]
- His friends **think** that he **should consider** a career in art.[mental activities]

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, underline the action verb.

**Example 1.** The tourists visited the large wildlife preserve.

1. Dmitri liked the cougar exhibit at the wildlife preserve.
2. A rescue team found two orphaned cougars in the mountains.
3. The team treated the cougars for injuries.
4. They brought the young cougars to the wildlife preserve.
5. The wildlife preserve staff members raised the cougars to adulthood.
6. They named the cougars Wolfgang and Julianna.
7. Next year the wildlife preserve will provide mates for the brother and sister pair.
8. The cougars enjoy healthy lives with good care.
9. Dmitri took a few photographs of the magnificent cats.
10. Months later, Dmitri often remembered the cougar pair.

**Exercise B** On the line provided, write an appropriate action verb to complete each sentence.

**Example 1.** Kim **mowed** the lawn to earn her allowance.

11. Steve ____________ the new song on the radio.
12. A runner from Nigeria ____________ the marathon this weekend.
13. Neither of the boys ____________ the answer to the question.
14. The secretary ____________ a bag lunch to work.
15. Another meteor ____________ across the sky.
Linking Verbs

A linking verb connects the subject to a word or word group that identifies or describes the subject. The noun, pronoun, or adjective that is connected to the subject by a linking verb completes the meaning of the verb.

**EXAMPLES**  Judy Blume *is* a writer. [Judy Blume = writer]
                Her books *remain* popular among young readers. [popular books]

Some verbs may be used as linking verbs or as action verbs.

**LINKING**  The room *smelled* smoky.

**ACTION**  We *smelled* smoke in the room.

**EXERCISE A**  In each of the following sentences, draw one line under the linking verb and two lines under the words that the verb connects.

**Example 1.**  The pilot *remained* calm.

1. Beryl Markham was a famous pilot.
2. She stayed alert on many difficult and long flights.
3. Her accomplishments seem remarkable to many people.
4. Markham became the first woman to fly nonstop from England to America.
5. The task was difficult because of strong opposing winds.
6. A new club in 1929 was the Ninety-Nines.
7. Ninety-nine was the number of its original members.
8. Members were female pilots only.
9. The club remains active today.
10. Female pilots are more common now than many years ago.

**EXERCISE B**  In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined verb by writing above it **LV** for linking verb or **AV** for action verb.

**Examples 1.**  Mr. Singh *looked* in the cabinet for a serving dish.
                *AV*  
                2. The vegetable curry *looked* tasty.

11. Mr. Singh *tasted* the vegetable curry.
12. The stew *tasted* deliciously spicy.
13. Mr. Singh *grew* many of the vegetables in his backyard.
14. He *grew* fond of curry dishes when he lived in India.
15. Mr. Singh’s recipe for vegetable curry *remains* his secret.
Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

A **transitive verb** is a verb that expresses an action directed toward a person, place, thing, or idea. Words that receive the action of transitive verbs are called **objects**. An **intransitive verb** expresses action (or tells something about the subject) without the action passing to a receiver.

**TRANSITIVE**

- She **began** her speech. [The object of the transitive verb **began** is **speech**.]

**INTRANSITIVE**

- The train **arrived** on time.

A verb may be transitive in one sentence and intransitive in another.

**TRANSITIVE**

- Marcia **sings** two solos in the play. [The object is **solos**.]

**INTRANSITIVE**

- Marcia **sings** in the school’s chorus. [no object]

**EXERCISE**

In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined verb by writing above it **TR for transitive** or **IN for intransitive**. Then, for each transitive verb, circle its object.

**Example 1.** No one in the accident **suffered** any **injuries**.

1. My watch **stopped** at 8:22.
2. Marguerite **called** the meeting to order.
3. The trainer slowly **walked** toward the tiger.
4. The trainer slowly **approached** the tiger.
5. Bradley and Chloe successfully **flew** the box kite.
6. During winter break we **traveled** to Orlando, Florida.
7. By the time we arrived, the concert had **begun**.
8. By the time we arrived, the band had **begun** the concert.
9. After a few minutes, the teakettle **whistled**.
10. Yolanda **whistled** a tune from the early 1990s.
11. The family **gave** its fair share to the charity.
12. The family **gave** generously to the charity.
13. For a long while the tree did not **grow**.
14. Did Marvin **grow** a mustache?
15. Some of the guests **left** early.
16. Some of the guests **left** the party early.
17. The nation’s economy has **improved** in recent years.
18. What has **improved** the nation’s economy?
19. Franklin Roosevelt **served** as President of the United States for more than twelve years.
20. President Franklin Roosevelt **served** more terms than any other President.
Identifying Kinds of Verbs/Verb Phrases A

A verb is a word used to express action or a state of being.

Verbs may be classified as (1) helping or main verbs, (2) action or linking verbs, and (3) transitive or intransitive verbs.

**EXAMPLES**  

The USS Nautilus, the first nuclear-powered submarine, **had been cruising** the seas for many years. [Had and been are helping verbs, and cruising is the main verb. Had been cruising is both an action verb and a transitive verb.]

Before its retirement, it **had traveled** around the world. [Had is a helping verb, and traveled is the main verb. Had traveled is both an action verb and an intransitive verb.]

For how long **had** the submarine **been** operational? [Had is a helping verb, and been is the main verb. Had been is both a linking verb and an intransitive verb.]

**EXERCISE A**  

In each of the following sentences, draw one line under the helping verb(s) and two lines under the main verb. Then, on the line to the left of each sentence, write TR if the verb is transitive or IN if the verb is intransitive.

Example  

---

1. A band will perform German music at the cafe tonight.  
---

   1. The couple **had visited** the German cafe several times.
   2. Katerina **had heard** a few bands there.
   3. Tonight a new band **will perform**.
   4. Boris **will be listening** carefully.
   5. Boris **might sing** with the band.
   6. The band **will be playing** popular German songs.
   7. All last week, Boris **had been practicing** the songs.
   8. Boris **will be learning** new German music.
   9. He **has been studying** the German language for two years.
   10. Katerina **will play accordion** with the band.

---

**EXERCISE A**  

For each of the following sentences, underline the verb. Then, on the line before each sentence, write AV if the verb is an action verb or LV if the verb is a linking verb.

Example  

---

1. We grew tired after several hours.  
---

   11. The soup **tasted** salty.
   12. The chef **tasted** the soup.
   13. Martin **grew** roses in his garden.
   14. She **became** a police officer.
   15. The daisy **smelled** sweet.
Identifying Kinds of Verbs/Verb Phrases B

A verb is a word used to express action or a state of being.

**EXAMPLES**

We have been making piñatas for the fiesta. *Have* and *been* are helping verbs, and *making* is the main verb. *Have been making* is both an action verb and a transitive verb.

You certainly have been busy! *Have* is a helping verb, and *been* is the main verb. *Have been* is both a linking verb and an intransitive verb.

**EXERCISE**

In each of the following sentences, draw one line under any helping verb(s) and two lines under the main verb. Then, on the line to the left of each sentence, write AV if the verb is an action verb or LV if the verb is a linking verb. Also, on the line, write TR if the verb is transitive or IN if the verb is intransitive.

Example 1. Will you dance at the talent show?

1. I will dance a reel.
2. Our costumes look beautiful.
3. How will they look?
4. We have sewn them ourselves.
5. Mine is purple and black.
6. Hillary will wear blue.
7. Both of us will be leaping.
8. Have you thought about performing?
9. You gave a good show last year.
10. Have you learned improvisational dance?
11. Improvisation requires creativity.
12. The dancer remains very aware.
13. Each movement flows into the next.
14. Duets are especially difficult.
15. Partners turn somersaults together.
16. This has turned too difficult for me.
17. Actually, everyone can dance.
18. Many have grown more self-confident.
19. Dance class has made me more agile.
20. Will you come to the class next week?
The Adverb

3b. An adverb is a word that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

An adverb tells where, when, how, or to what extent (how much or how long).

EXAMPLES

The popularity of television grew slowly. [Slowly modifies the verb grew, telling how.]
Some people were rather pessimistic about the future of television. [Rather modifies the adjective pessimistic, telling to what extent.]
Others had believed quite strongly in its potential. [Quite modifies the adverb strongly, telling to what extent. Strongly modifies the verb had believed, telling how.]

EXERCISE

For each of the following sentences, underline the adverb(s).

Example 1. The contestants arrived surprisingly early.

1. Each skater practiced nearby.
2. The fans waited impatiently.
3. The skaters moved quite gracefully.
4. One skater seemed very nervous.
5. She stopped practicing rather early.
6. She sat silently and waited.
7. Her coach came quickly to see her.
8. He calmly encouraged her.
9. She began to skate quite skillfully.
10. Another skater moved somewhat reluctantly.
11. He timidly approached his coach.
12. His coach whispered softly to him.
13. The skater nodded enthusiastically.
14. He began to feel surprisingly confident.
15. He performed exceedingly well.
16. Then several other skaters danced.
17. Other skaters spun extremely well.
18. The fans applauded approvingly.
19. The judges decided the scores quickly.
20. The competition was unusually successful.
Adverbs and the Words They Modify

**An adverb** is a word that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

An adverb tells *where, when, how, or to what extent* (how much or how long).

**EXAMPLES**

Soon many birds will be flying south for the winter. [The adverb *soon*, telling *when*, and the adverb *south*, telling *where*, modify the verb *will be flying*.]

Amelia appears thoroughly confident on the stage. [The adverb *thoroughly*, telling *to what extent*, modifies the adjective *confident*.]

Luis left the room quite suddenly. [The adverb *quite*, telling *to what extent*, modifies the adverb *suddenly*. Suddenly, telling *how*, modifies the verb *left*.]

**Exercise**

Circle the adverbs in the following sentences. Then, draw an arrow from each adverb to the word it modifies.

Example 1. In the Arctic Circle, the cold winds can cut very quickly to the bone.

1. Only lichens and a few other hardy plants can actually grow in the Arctic Circle.
2. Lichens can be easily seen in a light dusting of snow.
3. Sometimes caribou feed on the lichens.
4. Would wolves be closely following the caribou?
5. Most people never experience the harsh environment of the tundra.
6. Is the blimp somewhat risky for passenger travel?
7. Thuan really liked the airships.
8. Airships are an extremely effective means of advertising.
9. They float magically among the clouds.
10. Current designs seem much safer than those of the past.
11. The submarine descended rather slowly.
12. No bird flies more swiftly than the peregrine falcon.
13. Janine’s unusual invention works quite effectively.
14. For a beginner, Eugene plays chess extraordinarily well.
15. The team is playing much better.
16. The qualifying exam for a pilot’s license is extremely difficult.
17. The song ended rather abruptly, I thought.
18. Turn left at the stop sign and proceed slowly.
19. If you come early to the concert, you can easily find a seat.
20. Amin took the news calmly.
Adverb or Adjective?

Many adverbs end in –ly. However, some words ending in –ly can be used as adjectives. Remember: An *adverb* modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb by telling *where*, *when*, *how*, or *to what extent* (how much or how long). An *adjective* modifies a noun or a pronoun by telling *what kind*, *which one*, *how many*, or *how much*.

**EXAMPLES**

Melissa writes *daily* in her journal. [The adverb *daily* modifies the verb *writes*, telling *when*.]

Her journal is a *daily* record of events in her life. [The adjective *daily* modifies the noun *record*, telling *what kind*.]

**EXERCISE A** Above each underlined word in the following sentences, write *ADJ* if the underlined word is an adjective or write *ADV* if the underlined word is an adverb.

**Example 1.** Comets *sometimes* produce meteors.

1. Comets often contain *large* rocks.
2. The rocks inside comets are held together by *icy* material.
3. A comet that passes by the sun enough times steadily loses its icy material.
4. Rocky material and grains of dust remain near the head of the comet and in its orbit.
5. These rocks and dust grains *sometimes* enter the earth’s atmosphere.
6. These particles in the earth’s atmosphere can cause a *spectacular* shower.
7. Meteors don’t come *only* from comets.
8. In fact, meteors resulting from other sources in space are *quite* common.
9. The *only* meteor I’ve ever seen was an awe-inspiring sight.
10. If you gaze into the night sky, you are *likely* to see one.

**EXERCISE B** Above each underlined word in the following sentences, write *ADJ* if the underlined word is an adjective or write *ADV* if the underlined word is an adverb.

**Example 1.** A new moon occurs *monthly*.

11. The *monthly* appearance of the full moon is always welcome.
12. Padgett is a *very* friendly dog.
13. Our cat always seems *lonely*.
14. Mom gave me a *timely* reminder to visit the dentist.
15. The newspaper arrives *daily* at 8 A.M.
The Preposition

3c. A preposition is a word that shows the relationship of a noun or pronoun, called the object of the preposition, to another word.

A preposition that consists of more than one word is called a compound preposition.

EXAMPLES The leader of the scout troop led the scouts out of the woods. [Troop is the object of the preposition of, and woods is the object of the compound preposition out of.]

Exercise A Underline the prepositions in the following sentences.

Example 1. Before the hike, the scouts checked the supplies in their backpacks.

1. The scout troop went on a hike.
2. They climbed to the top of Mount Milligan.
3. The climb up the mountain was long and difficult.
4. They crossed over a stream and under fallen trees.
5. During the hike a few scouts went off the trail.
6. Boulders had fallen on the trail from a cliff.
7. They went either around the fallen rocks or between them.
8. There is a great deal of wildlife on the ground and under the brush.
9. On account of snakes, hikers should stay on the trail at all times.
10. The climb down the mountain took them in front of the lodge.

Exercise B Underline the compound preposition in each of the following sentences. Then, circle the object of the preposition.

Example 1. Lars and I decided to go to the library instead of the bookstore.

11. We found the biographies next to the mysteries.
12. The seasonal books were in front of them.
13. According to Mr. Wu, some books were not seasonal.
14. They were there because of a space problem.
15. I borrowed the Sue Grafton mystery in spite of its torn cover.
16. A bird book was the only book I liked aside from that.
17. I did not check out the World Series history on account of Lars.
18. Lars checked out that sports book along with a poetry collection.
19. As of last Friday, I had read ten books this month alone.
Prepositional Phrases

3c. A preposition is a word that shows the relationship of a noun or pronoun, called the object of the preposition, to another word.

All together, the preposition, its object, and any modifiers of the object are called a prepositional phrase.

Example Which flowers grow best in this sandy soil? [The prepositional phrase consists of the preposition in, the object soil, and the adjectives this and sandy.]

Do not confuse a prepositional phrase that begins with to (to the game, to me) with an infinitive that begins with to (to read, to be heard).

Exercise A For each of the following sentences, underline the prepositional phrase.

Example 1. Maya Angelou was born in St. Louis, Missouri.

1. Maya Angelou grew up in rural Arkansas.

2. Her career began with dance and drama.

3. Dr. Angelou is fluent in several languages.

4. Audiences throughout the United States have enjoyed Dr. Angelou’s lectures.

5. Maya Angelou has also lectured in several foreign countries.

6. Dr. Angelou lived in Cairo, Egypt.

7. Dr. Angelou has also lived and taught in Ghana.

8. In 1969, Maya Angelou wrote an autobiographical novel.

9. She has made several appearances on television.

10. Dr. Maya Angelou’s great works are respected around the world.

Exercise B For each of the following sentences, circle the preposition and underline the object of the preposition.

Example 1. Please don’t run in the hallway.

11. This film takes place during the Depression.

12. I found my baseball glove underneath the bed.

13. In spite of the rain the band continued playing.

14. Everybody ran five laps around the track.

15. Is Santa Monica near the beach?
Preposition or Adverb?

Some words may be used as both prepositions and adverbs. To tell a preposition from an adverb, remember that a preposition always has a noun or pronoun as an object.

**PREPOSITION** We walked around the new civic center for several hours. [*Center is the object of around.]*

**ADVERB** As we walked around, we saw many unique exhibits. [*Around modifies the verb walked, telling where.]*

**Exercise** Above the underlined word in each sentence, write **PREP** if the underlined word is a preposition or write **ADV** if the underlined word is an adverb.

**Example 1.** Would you like to come inside?

1. From atop the mountain, we looked below and saw the green fields.
2. The cat was sleeping under the blanket.
3. She crawled inside the box.
4. When they heard the noise, they began to look about.
5. Will the children be playing outside today?
6. The family lives near the lake.
7. The squirrel was frightened and ran off.
8. He wants to travel around the world.
9. We will wait until the prices go down.
10. Did you see the robin perched on the branch?
12. Tobias ran down the stairs.
13. I fed the ducks that were crowded along the shore.
14. As soon as we reached the boat, we climbed aboard.
15. I had never traveled aboard a spaceship before.
16. Besides the time I went to New Delhi, I hadn’t ever flown.
17. The airplane made a humming sound as it zoomed off the runway.
18. During the flight, I was served fruit.
19. A cluster of restless creatures murmured nearby.
20. Below, my classmates were probably doing grammar exercises.
The Conjunction A

3d. A conjunction is a word used to join words or groups of words.

Coordinating conjunctions— and, but, for, nor, or, so, and yet—join words or groups of words that are used in the same way.

EXAMPLE Would you rather have shrimp or salmon for dinner?

Correlative conjunctions are pairs of conjunctions that join words or word groups that are used in the same way. The correlative conjunctions are both . . . and, either . . . or, neither . . . nor, not only . . . but also, and whether . . . or.

EXAMPLE Both Zina and Jada can play the mandolin.

EXERCISE A Underline the coordinating conjunction in each of the following sentences.

Example 1. The river flows through several states and empties into the Gulf of Mexico.

1. She didn’t stay up too late, nor did she watch too much television.
2. The sun had risen, yet it was still too foggy to drive.
3. Arguments soon broke out, for the players had not agreed upon the rules beforehand.
4. The baby cried, so her mother comforted her.
5. Will you be taking the bus or riding your bike?
6. Terri picked the basketball, and Nikki picked the football.
7. I wanted to see the previews, but the movie had already started.
8. Rocco didn’t think the joke was funny, yet he pretended to laugh.
9. He lifted the vase carefully, for he didn’t want to break it.
10. Karin ordered a salad and a baked potato.

EXERCISE B For each of the following sentences, underline the correlative conjunctions.

Example 1. The child wanted neither food nor water.

11. They took vacations not only in July, but also in December.
12. She will neither take a cab nor ride the bus.
13. The team couldn’t decide whether to practice more or take a break.
14. Both the team captain and the coach thought that the competition went well.
15. We will see either the new French film or the popular German film.
The Conjunction B

A conjunction is a word used to join words or groups of words.

Coordinating conjunctions—and, but, for, nor, or, so, and yet—join words or groups of words that are used in the same way.

Example 1. Birthdays and wedding anniversaries are among the events we celebrate.

Correlative conjunctions are pairs of conjunctions that join words or word groups that are used in the same way. The correlative conjunctions are both...and, either...or, neither...nor, not only...but also, and whether...or.

Example 1. Their family celebrates not only birthdays but also name days.

Exercise A  Circle the coordinating conjunction in each of the following sentences. Then, underline the words or word groups that the conjunction joins.

Example 1. All around the world people hold parties, and they have festive celebrations.

1. Many African American families celebrate Juneteenth and Kwanzaa.
2. At an African coming-of-age party, there are music and dancing.
3. At a Jewish bar mitzvah or bat mitzvah, there is prayer.
4. At a Polish or Mexican wedding, the bride collects money during a special dance.
5. For some, weddings are held in houses of worship, for they are religious ceremonies.
6. Some wedding ceremonies are not religious, so they are held at home.
7. Nearly all people welcome the new year, yet not everyone celebrates it on January 1.
8. New Year’s Day is the same day each year in Sweden, but it falls on different days in Vietnam.
10. Name a holiday or festival that is important to your family.

Exercise B  Circle the correlative conjunctions in each of the following sentences. Then, underline the words or word groups that the conjunctions join.

Example 1. Unique species of both plants and animals exist in rain forests.

11. Not only parrots but also hornbills can be seen in some rain forests.
12. Both eagles and monkeys live in rain forests, too.
13. Either people take steps to save the rain forests now, or these habitats will be lost.
14. The question is not whether the rich nations or the poor ones are at fault.
15. Neither one group nor another is solely to blame for the destruction of the rain forests.
The Interjection

An interjection is a word used to express emotion.

An interjection has no grammatical relation to other words in the sentence. Usually an interjection is followed by an exclamation point. Sometimes an interjection is set off by a comma or commas.

**EXAMPLES**

Hey! Did you see those deer?

Well, we played hard and did our best.

We could, oh, have a picnic.

---

**EXERCISE A**

Underline the interjection in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Wow! That movie was outstanding!

1. Ah, now I understand what to do.
2. Ouch! Another mosquito bit me.
3. Oh! What beautiful flowers those are!
4. Hey, we need to get ready, or we will be late.
5. Excellent! Let's go right away.
6. I like playing this computer game, but, gee, it is complicated.
7. Ugh! I should have caught that ball.
8. The team finally won a game. Hooray!
9. Well, Guido, what did you learn from the field trip to the aquarium?
10. What a spectacular fireworks display that was! Wow!

---

**EXERCISE B**

In the blank provided in each of the following sentences, write an appropriate interjection and mark(s) of punctuation.

**Example 1.** Whew! I am tired.

11. ___________ Let's go to the new water park.
12. ___________ That is an excellent idea!
13. I should practice ___________ for at least another hour.
14. ___________ I forgot to return those library books.
15. What a cold day it is! ___________
The way a word is used in a sentence determines what part of speech it is.

The same word may be used as different parts of speech.

- **PRONOUN**: Some of these baseball cards are quite valuable.
- **ADJECTIVE**: Some baseball cards are quite valuable.
- **ADVERB**: Let's go outside and pass the football.
- **PREPOSITION**: We will meet you outside the main entrance to the stadium.
- **NOUN**: Please turn off the light.
- **VERB**: Alex, will you light the candles?
- **INTERJECTION**: Good! I'm glad you agree.
- **ADJECTIVE**: Everyone agreed the plan was a good one.

**Exercise**

In each of the following sentences, identify the part of speech of the underlined word by writing above it **NOUN** for noun, **PRO** for pronoun, **VERB** for verb, **PREP** for preposition, **ADJ** for adjective, **ADV** for adverb, or **INT** for interjection.

**Example 1.** All of the students were in the classroom.

1. The worried young man wandered about.
2. The article is ______ the ancient rain forests.
3. The ______ night felt quiet and empty.
4. She strolled around in the ______.
5. The startled deer ran fast.
6. She worked at an astonishingly fast rate.
7. I ______ every morning.
8. The sprinter had an excellent run in this morning’s competition.
9. You got tickets to the show? ______
10. It should be a ______ show.
EXERCISE A  Underline the verb or verb phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, circle any helping verbs. On the line provided, write AV for action verb or LV for linking verb. Then, write TR for transitive verb or IN for intransitive verb.

Example 1. The car will appear unlike any other car on the road.

1. The car of the future might use batteries as its main source of power.
2. Computers in the car monitor everything.
3. The car will not operate by itself, however.
4. A driver must program his or her destination.
5. To me the car looks extremely small.
6. Today’s cars seem huge by comparison.
7. The exterior appears sleek and shiny.
8. The design, though, is practical and efficient.
9. Today’s designers have been very creative.
10. Their imaginations have soared!

EXERCISE B  Identify the underlined word(s) in each of the following sentences by writing above them ADV for adverb, PREP for preposition, CONJ for conjunction, or INT for interjection.

Example 1. At first, we thought we would go either to the Everglades in Florida or to the Rocky Mountains in Colorado.

11. Before we took the trip, we read extensively about each place.
12. We decided to go to both the Everglades and the Rockies.
13. The climate of the Everglades is exceptionally hot and humid.
14. Wow! Did you see any alligators while you were there?
15. Yes, we did, and we also saw some rather unusual birds.
16. We took an ambitious hike in the Rockies.
17. For several hours we climbed steadily upward.
18. Not only the wildflowers but also the alpine vegetation fascinated us.
19. On the hike around the mountains, we saw several mountain goats.
20. In addition to mountain goats, we saw two species of deer running around.
Review B: Parts of Speech

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, identify the part of speech of the underlined word by writing above it **NOUN** for noun, **PRO** for pronoun, **VERB** for verb, **PREP** for preposition, **ADJ** for adjective, **ADV** for adverb, **CONJ** for conjunction, or **INT** for interjection.

**Example 1.** Connie and Jessica learned to row in a nearby lake.

1. Jessica was quite interested in sweep rowing.
2. In sweep rowing, each rower uses only one oar.
3. In sculling, however, each uses two oars simultaneously.
4. Recreational boats are usually wider than racing boats.
5. A narrow, lightweight boat can glide faster through the water.
6. Jessica and Connie are rowing through.
7. Wow! Their arms, legs, and backs generate amazing power.
8. The seats slide on a track to allow them to push with their legs.
9. This boat seats several.
10. They will train hard and begin racing next season.

**Exercise B** Underline the verb or verb phrase in each of the following sentences. Circle any helping verbs. Then, identify each on the line provided by writing **AV** for action verb or **LV** for linking verb and **TR** for transitive verb or **IN** for intransitive verb.

**Example** AV, TR 1. People have long celebrated Valentine’s Day.

11. Opinions vary as to the origins of Valentine’s Day.
12. It might have begun as early as the 1400s.
13. According to an old English belief, birds choose their mates on February 14.
14. The exchange of romantic messages became customary in the 1700s.
15. Have you sent anyone a valentine?
Review C: Parts of Speech

**Exercise**  In each of the following sentences, identify the part of speech of each underlined word by writing above it NOUN for noun, PRO for pronoun, VERB for verb, PREP for preposition, ADJ for adjective, ADV for adverb, CONJ for conjunction, or INT for interjection.

**Example** 1. She left early, but didn’t tell anyone.

1. Whew! We finally finished this chess game!
2. After lunch, we walked around.
3. I can’t decide whether to write about the short story or the poem.
4. The injured patient made rapid progress in learning to walk again.
5. We thought that they would have arrived by now.
6. Whoops! I dropped the cup of juice.
7. The workers were tired, for they had worked hard all day.
8. I can hardly see the top of that building.
9. The team scored a safety toward the end of the game.
10. I enjoyed the movie, but I was disappointed with the ending.
11. I forgot to bring the book you wanted to borrow.
12. You will find the tools behind the lawn mower.
13. We looked above and saw the constellations.
14. Wow! I can’t believe we’re finally here!
15. The children were hungry, so they ate lunch.
16. The roses smell lovely.
17. The roses have a lovely smell.
18. I couldn’t see beyond the trees.
19. We asked to see both the new painting and the sculptures.
20. The girl’s mother sewed her a blue blouse.
A complement is a word or a word group that completes the meaning of a verb.

**EXAMPLES**

Fran told him the good news. [Him and news complete the meaning of the verb told.]

Paco was happy about the news. [Happy completes the meaning of the verb was.]

**EXERCISE A** Underline the complement(s) in each of the following sentences.

Example 1. Mia and I visited Mr. Merkenson’s plant nursery.

1. Mr. Merkenson is a horticulturist.
2. He grows many different kinds of plants at the nursery.
3. Mr. Merkenson showed us some lovely ferns.
4. All of the ferns looked extremely healthy.
5. Do ferns require any special care?
6. Ferns are rather hardy plants.
7. Mr. Merkenson handed me a booklet about ferns.
8. I read the part about plant care.
9. Mia and I bought our mother a beautiful Boston fern.
10. Our mother seemed appreciative of the gift.

**EXERCISE B** In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word by writing above it COMP for complement, ADV for adverb, or OP for object of a preposition.

Example 1. I met with my school counselor today.

11. The eighth-graders are forming a recycling campaign at the school.
12. Because of the rainy weather, we stayed indoors all day.
13. Are all of these cards and letters for me?
14. The guest speaker spoke to the class about fire prevention.
15. The Nineteenth Amendment gave women the right to vote.
16. My little brother grew restless toward the end of the movie.
17. The president of the company addressed her audience eloquently.
18. Do all bears hibernate during the winter months?
19. Claudio had bought a new suit especially for the occasion.
20. Aunt Epatha is a collector of rare books.
Direct Objects

4b. A direct object is a noun, pronoun, or word group that tells who or what receives the action of the verb.

EXAMPLES
Ms. Damon arranged the desks into a circle.
She bought a sofa and a chair. [compound direct object]

Exercise
In the following sentences, circle the verb and underline the direct object. Some sentences do not have a direct object.

Example 1. Tonight I will read the last chapter of this book.
1. Ms. McCourt manages her business carefully.
2. Our tabby cat, Mr. Alp, stalked the mouse through the garden.
3. Please bring me a salad from the sandwich shop on the corner.
4. At first, she put the dog and the cat in separate rooms.
5. Jada and Whitney attended their ten-year high school reunion last week.
6. He could have talked about African history for hours.
7. Has the detective reached a conclusion about the burglary yet?
8. The mathematician thought about the unusual proof for several days.
9. The final scene of that movie completely surprised me.
10. After the final performance of the play, Ms. Marrazzo congratulated the cast and crew.
11. At his concert last night, Taj Mahal played “Think,” a blues song.
12. Did you rent any videos last week?
13. The author finally published the article.
14. Conchata practices piano three times a week.
15. I’ll be waiting for your call.
16. Mr. Pinkett gave his old books, a computer, and a mattress to the Salvation Army.
17. Did you hear the president on the radio this morning?
18. For my birthday, my sister gave me the latest book in the series.
19. Mr. Miyasaki is an expert on bonsai trees.
20. In a seat at the back of the theater, the playwright watched her play.
Indirect Objects

An indirect object is a noun, pronoun, or word group that sometimes appears in sentences containing direct objects.

An indirect object tells to whom or to what or for whom or for what the action of the verb is done.

**EXAMPLES**

Aunt Aretha bought **herself** a terrarium. [Note: *Terrarium* is the direct object.]
Later she gave **Theo** and **me** the terrarium. [compound indirect object]

An indirect object is never part of a prepositional phrase.

**EXAMPLE**

Later she gave the terrarium to **Theo** and **me**. [objects of the preposition *to*]

**EXERCISE**

In each of the following sentences, underline the indirect object. If a sentence does not have an indirect object, write *None* after it.

**Example 1.** In 1993, the Swedish Academy gave **Toni Morrison** the Nobel Prize for Literature.

1. Iola sent her brother a gift certificate for his birthday.
2. Miriam, Judy, and Roberto taught themselves three-part harmony.
3. Tell me the answer.
4. Ms. Ankers found her glasses on the floor under her bed.
5. The tall man gave us directions to the film festival.
6. Gregory bought himself a burrito for lunch.
7. At the American Museum of Natural History, Mr. Hsing showed James the hall of dinosaurs.
8. Kendall offered Jason his congratulations for winning the bicycle race.
9. At the wedding reception Chang sang Meg and Gordon their favorite song.
10. What gave you the idea for your story?
11. Mr. Linson took us on a field trip to the art museum.
12. After pondering the problem for a long time, Dean revealed his solution to us.
13. Very carefully, Annie offered the stray cat a piece of tuna fish.
14. The coach gave Vic, Bob, and Dan their varsity sweaters.
15. Carter returned the broken CD player to the manufacturer.
16. Our neighborhood grocery store provided the food for our annual charity picnic.
17. When you come back to the table, please bring me the mustard.
18. Jed told the class a story about his trip to Vermont.
19. The company will give you whatever you need to finish the job.
20. The little girl’s story won the hearts of the nation.
Direct Objects and Indirect Objects A

4b. A direct object is a noun, pronoun, or word group that tells who or what receives the action of the verb.

Example 1. The Bavarian king Ludwig II built Neuschwanstein Castle.

4c. An indirect object is a noun, pronoun, or word group that sometimes appears in sentences containing direct objects.

An indirect object tells to whom or to what or for whom or for what the action of the verb is done.

Example 2. Ludwig II built himself many other castles. [Note: Castles is a direct object.]

Exercise A  In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word by writing above it DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, or OP for object of a preposition.

Example 1. Robert Louis Stevenson wrote Kidnapped.

1. The novel offers readers a great adventure.
2. In the novel a poor boy finds himself a captive on a ship.
3. The captain of the ship forces the young prisoner to work for him.
4. He brings the captain food and other supplies.
5. Eventually, the boy and another passenger secretly make plans to escape.

Exercise B  In the following sentences, draw one line under each direct object and two lines under each indirect object. Not every sentence contains an indirect object. (Hint: At least one sentence contains a compound direct object or a compound indirect object.)

Example 1. Carlos bought his brother a birthday gift.

6. Charlotte and I gave our Dalmatian puppy a bath.
7. Eartha told Kim and me a secret.
8. Pass me the ball!
9. After dinner last night, Dad told us a hilarious story.
10. The explorers found the valuable treasure in a cave.
11. At soccer practice, we ran ten laps around the field.
12. At the request of the teacher, each student made a list of his or her goals.
13. Did Karen accept your invitation to the fiesta?
14. Gail gave her story a one-word title.
15. At the beginning of the tour, the museum guide handed each of us a name tag and a brochure.
Direct Objects and Indirect Objects B

4b. A direct object is a noun, pronoun, or word group that tells who or what receives the action of the verb.

**EXAMPLE** Terence framed a photograph for his grandmother.

4c. An indirect object is a noun, pronoun, or word group that sometimes appears in sentences containing direct objects.

An indirect object tells to whom or to what or for whom or for what the action of the verb is done.

**EXAMPLE** Terence sent her the card for Grandparents Day. [Note: Card is a direct object.]

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word by writing above it DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, or OP for object of a preposition.

**Example 1.** My uncle gave me a guitar for my birthday.

1. He also gave me a book of easy-to-play Beatles songs.
2. The book shows the reader the hand positions for each song.
3. So far, I have taught myself three songs.
4. I have learned “Yesterday,” “Hey Jude,” and “Yellow Submarine.”
5. After he heard me play, my uncle praised me for my talent.

**EXERCISE B** In the following sentences, draw one line under each direct object and two lines under each indirect object. Not every sentence contains an indirect object.

**Example 1.** The coach offered us a chance to play.

6. Ms. Wong wrote the store a check for the groceries.
7. Sophie told Carmen the complete story.
8. Carl proposed a title for the film.
9. Offer our guest some soup, Cedric.
10. The newspaper article gave Cody an idea for a story.
11. Just in case, the purser issued every passenger a life vest.
12. Give yourselves a nice round of applause.
13. The avalanche carried away the empty cabin.
14. Mother gave Tim and me some money for lunch at school.
15. Helen gave a tour of the studio to Tonya and Peter.
Subject Complements

4d. A **subject complement** is a word or word group that completes the meaning of a linking verb and that identifies or describes the subject.

**EXAMPLES**

- The horse seemed exhausted. [The adjective *exhausted* completes the meaning of the linking verb *seemed* and describes the subject *horse*.]
- Roberto became a teacher. [The noun *teacher* completes the meaning of the linking verb *became* and identifies the subject *Roberto*.]

**EXERCISE A** In the following sentences, circle the linking verb and underline the subject complement.

**Example 1.** Jeremiah is a friend of mine.

1. Joyce certainly seemed busy this afternoon.
2. Over the years, the song became an anthem for a generation.
3. The tall man at the back of the photograph is my grandfather.
4. Are the pies ready yet?
5. The bad weather in Minnesota this time of year is a good reason to stay home.
6. The cat seems friendly.
7. Jake is the winner of this week’s prize.
8. Dr. Morbius appears happy about the results of his experiment.
9. Irene was the last person out of the pool.
10. Carey was the most improved player.

**EXERCISE B** In the blank in each of the following sentences, write a subject complement that will complete the meaning of the linking verb.

**Example 1.** Kyle felt ***excited*** after he heard the news.

11. Gail became a respected ***___________*** after she graduated from college.
12. Michael appeared ***___________*** as he played his guitar and sang for us.
13. The squirrel seemed ***___________*** when we walked past it.
14. Does the soup taste too ***___________*** to you?
15. We all thought that the movie was very ***___________***.
### Predicate Nominatives

A **predicate nominative** is a word or word group that is in the predicate and that identifies the subject or refers to it.

**EXAMPLES**

- The protagonist of *The Call of the Wild* is a **dog** named Buck.
- Buck becomes a hard-working **sled dog** and a devoted **companion** of John Thornton.

[compound predicate nominative]

**EXERCISE**

In the following sentences, circle the linking verb and underline the predicate nominative. (Hint: Some sentences contain a compound predicate nominative.)

1. My partner for biology lab is Penelope.
2. Jason will be the next student council president.
3. Mrs. Furillo’s favorite song is still “Night and Day.”
4. Rocky Marciano was the world heavyweight boxing champion from 1952 to 1956.
5. My coat is the red one.
6. Leon would have been my first choice for the part.
7. Michelle Kwan has become an inspiration to us all.
8. Is Sara the runner in the blue T-shirt?
9. I could have been a contender.
10. The winner of the spelling bee was Tracy.
11. The next speaker will be Mr. Gonzalez.
12. Who was the fourteenth president of the United States?
13. My favorite memory of the trip is our day at the Grand Canyon.
14. At the age of eighteen, my father became the first person in his family to go to college.
15. Were the stars of that movie Lauren Bacall and Humphrey Bogart?
16. The winner is Terry!
17. Did Sheila become an accountant?
18. Grace’s preferences for lunch are sandwiches or soup.
19. The next contestant on the show is Mr. Hynes.
20. Ginger should have become an actress.
Predicate Adjectives

4f. A predicate adjective is an adjective that is in the predicate and that describes the subject.

**EXAMPLES** Those enchiladas look **delicious**.
The sauce is **spicy** and uncommonly **sweet**. [compound predicate adjective]

**EXERCISE** In each of the following sentences, circle each linking verb and underline all predicate adjectives.

Example 1. Was the new airplane **smaller** and **faster** than the older planes?
1. Our cat Conrad is small for his age.
2. The boiled potatoes tasted a little too bland for me.
3. Belinda sounded optimistic about the outcome of the student council election.
4. Parker looks very nice in that hat.
5. Sales of the new school calendar appear brisk.
6. The llama’s fur felt soft to Marcia’s touch.
7. The door to the basement is squeaky.
8. After his feeding, the baby remained quiet for the rest of the night.
9. The crowd at the championship game was energetic and enthusiastic.
10. Michael’s new wool coat felt rough and scratchy against his skin.
11. Lance didn’t become tired until the final lap of the race.
12. The maze can be frustrating and tiring.
13. The moon appeared big and bright in the evening sky.
14. The bittersweet comedy seemed both funny and sad.
15. The soup may be too hot to eat right now.
16. Have you ever been afraid of the dark?
17. The trail of the meteor appeared blue, green, and red.
18. Every day, Taylor grew more confident about riding her new unicycle.
19. Is your new dog brown and white?
20. Climbing the steep slope of the mountainside is really quite easy, despite its appearance.
Predicate Nominatives and Predicate Adjectives A

**4e.** A *predicate nominative* is a word or word group that is in the predicate and that identifies the subject or refers to it.

**EXAMPLES** Leonardo da Vinci was a great *artist*.  
He was not only an *artist* but also an *inventor*. [compound predicate nominative]

**4f.** A *predicate adjective* is an adjective that is in the predicate and that describes the subject.

**EXAMPLES** Leonardo da Vinci was highly *competent* in many fields.  
How *talented* and *creative* this versatile man was! [compound predicate adjective]

**EXERCISE A** In the following sentences, circle the linking verb and underline each subject complement. Then, on the line provided, identify each subject complement as *PN* for *predicate nominative* or *PA* for *predicate adjective*.

**Example**  
1. **Was** Enrico Caruso a famous tenor?  
   **PN**

1. The bag with the bowling ball in it felt heavy.
2. Mrs. Kaufman is my favorite teacher.
3. The dog seemed eager to see us.
4. The best vegetable, in my opinion, is spinach.
5. Our next-door neighbor is a teacher at the local high school and the coach of the football team.
6. Even after a week, the cat remained aloof from the other pets in the house.
7. That casserole certainly smells delicious!
8. Isn’t Sonya the lead singer for the band?
9. Some Asian dishes are perhaps too hot and spicy for some people.
10. Toni Morrison is the author of several novels, including *Beloved* and *Song of Solomon*.

**EXERCISE B** Each of the following sentences contains at least one subject complement. Underline each predicate nominative once and each predicate adjective twice.

**Example**  
1. The test did not seem very *difficult* to us.

11. The Snapdragon is the fastest and most popular ride at the amusement park.
12. Does the pattern on this shirt seem faded to you?
13. The author Joseph Heller was a famous novelist.
14. Jorge’s two favorite composers are Beethoven and Holst.
15. Will this energetic puppy ever become a calm pet?
**Predicate Nominatives and Predicate Adjectives B**

4e. A **predicate nominative** is a word or word group that is in the predicate and that identifies the subject or refers to it.

**EXAMPLE** Faith Ringgold is a talented **artist**.

A predicate nominative is never part of a prepositional phrase.

**EXAMPLE** That quilt is one of her creations. ([One, not creations, is the predicate nominative. Creations is the object of the preposition of.]

4f. A **predicate adjective** is an adjective that is in the predicate and that describes the subject.

**EXAMPLE** Faith Ringgold is extremely **talented**.

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word or word group by writing above it **PN** for predicate nominative, **PA** for predicate adjective, or **OP** for object of a preposition.

**Example** 1. Ms. Juarez is my English teacher.

1. Ms. Juarez is also an imaginative **playwright**.

2. “A Dog’s Life” is one of her humorous one-act plays.

3. In this play a man becomes a full-grown **Labrador retriever**.

4. The man’s children seem pleased with their new **pet**.

5. As the play unfolds, the dog’s behavior grows comically **strange**.

**EXERCISE B** In the following sentences, identify each predicate nominative or predicate adjective by writing above it **PN** for predicate nominative or **PA** for predicate adjective. (Hint: At least one sentence contains a compound predicate nominative or a compound predicate adjective.)

**Example** 1. Did Randy seem angry and frustrated to you?

6. The dachshund is a highly intelligent breed of dog.

7. Does the water in the swimming pool feel too cold to you?

8. Broccoli is one of my favorite vegetables.

9. The finalists in the eighth-grade geography bee are Kim Chun and **she**.

10. The action in this movie may be too violent for some viewers.

11. The photographer seemed quite pleased with his pictures.

12. Una was certainly happy about the contest results.

13. All of the scouts appeared tired and hungry after their long hike.

14. My mother is a skilled carpenter.

15. Is Rufino Tamayo the Mexican artist who painted **Homage to Juárez**?
Exercise A  In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word by writing above it COMP for complement, ADV for adverb, or OP for object of a preposition.

Example 1. Who invented the telephone?

2. Who was the inventor of the telephone?

1. Alexander Graham Bell is the name of the inventor of the telephone.

2. For many years, telephones did not have dials or push buttons.

3. Telephone operators would place calls for people.

4. A caller would tell an operator the telephone number to call.

5. Telephones with dials became popular in the 1930s.

6. Callers would turn the dials with their fingers.

7. With dial phones people could place their calls more readily than before.

8. Today’s touch-tone phones are an improvement over dial phones.

9. With touch-tone phones people can place their calls quickly.

10. Today, callers can telephone nearly anyone in the world in a few seconds.

Exercise B  Underline every complement that appears in each of the following sentences. Then, identify each complement by writing above it DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, PN for predicate nominative, or PA for predicate adjective.

Example 1. Nearly every day, my pen pal sends me an e-mail message.

11. Celine, my e-mail pal, is Canadian.

12. Montreal, Quebec, is her hometown.

13. Celine and I are both excited about our correspondence.

14. Like me, she speaks both English and French fluently.

15. We have the same tastes in music.

16. She e-mailed me a long letter yesterday.

17. In her letter she thanked me for the birthday gift.

18. I had given her the latest CD by her favorite country singer.

19. We are great fans of the last song on the CD.

20. Celine sent my family and me tickets to a concert in New York City.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word by writing above it COMP for complement, ADV for adverb, or OP for object of a preposition.

Example 1. Baseball is my favorite sport.

1. My uncle Mark took my entire family to a baseball game yesterday.
2. It was a beautiful day for the game.
3. The weather was sunny and warm.
4. The weather, however, suddenly changed on our way to the stadium.
5. The sun disappeared, and storm clouds gathered directly over my head.
6. By the time of our arrival, though, the sky was once again clear.
7. Everyone in my family, even my sister, enjoyed the game.
8. One player gave my sister his autograph.
9. Naturally, we cheered enthusiastically during each of his turns at bat.
10. Like me, my sister is now an avid baseball fan.

EXERCISE B  Underline every complement that appears in each of the following sentences. Then, identify each complement by writing above it DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, PN for predicate nominative, or PA for predicate adjective.

Example 1. People ask me many questions about my hobby.

11. People are curious about my unusual collection.
12. I started the collection at my old house in Michigan.
13. My mother had hired a crew of carpenters.
14. Each carpenter was a skilled roofer.
15. They carefully pulled the old shingles off the roof.
16. The nails in the boards under the shingles were old and unusually large.
17. One of the carpenters noticed my interest in the nails.
18. I handed her an empty box.
19. She gave me some of the nails.
20. Those were the first ones in my collection of handmade nails.
**EXERCISE** In each of the following sentences, identify each of the underlined words or word groups by writing above it **DO** for direct object, **IO** for indirect object, **PN** for predicate nominative, or **PA** for predicate adjective.

**Example** 1. Please bring me a towel.
   2. Don’t worry; this recipe is easy.

1. Now that the election is over, Mr. Danton will be our new representative in Congress.
2. The English author Charles Dickens offers modern readers a vivid look at city life in the nineteenth century.
3. That seedling will eventually become a tree.
4. Marcia, read the class and me your essay.
5. We all use our backpacks to carry our books to and from school.
6. Jenna, my best friend, is the tallest person on our volleyball team.
7. This music is pretty exotic, don’t you think?
8. Some people buy older homes and restore them.
9. Doesn’t the new stereo sound wonderful?
10. Call the switchboard and ask for Jill.
11. The millionaire provided the scientist with the money to finish his research.
12. Did you give the dog his medicine and a treat this morning?
13. The aspiring writer gave the editor several chapters from his book.
14. Everyone in our family is a good diver and a good swimmer.
15. Nelson is curious about marine archaeology.
16. Please tell your sister and me the truth.
17. The ice on the lake seemed thicker the day after the temperature dropped.
18. Who is the person who left the beautiful flowers on my desk?
19. I think I look good in my new shirt.
20. Freddie brought a bat and a baseball glove to the first day of practice.
**Phrases**

5a. A phrase is a group of related words that is used as a single part of speech and that does not contain both a verb and its subject.

**EXAMPLES**
- Colors can influence the way we feel about a place or thing. [prepositional phrase]
- A room painted white often seems larger than it is. [participial phrase]
- Painting something orange draws people’s attention to it. [gerund phrase]
- Studies show that more women than men seem to prefer red. [infinitive phrase]
- Green, the color of many things in nature, relaxes people. [appositive phrase]

A group of words that has both a verb and its subject is called a clause.

**EXAMPLES**
- The class has been conducting a survey. [Class is the subject of the verb has been conducting.]
- after I completed my research [I is the subject of the verb completed.]

**EXERCISE** Determine whether the underlined word group in each of the following sentences is a phrase or not. If the word group is a phrase, write phrase. If the word group is not a phrase, write not a phrase.

Example phrase 1. The cup slipped from her hands and shattered on the floor.

1. Please place the keys on the table.
2. They decided to watch a movie.
3. The glasses are on the shelf.
4. Enrique became excited when he heard the news.
5. Jimmy, fearing a low score, studied diligently for his exam.
7. The clothes in the corner should be donated to charity.
8. Casper, a master of the violin, is learning to play the guitar.
9. To repair a car, you need to have tools and experience.
10. Before she left home, Helena ate breakfast and read a magazine.
EXERCISE A  Underline the prepositional phrase(s) in each of the following sentences.

Example 1. For several years farmers in England found strange patterns throughout their grain fields.

1. The first reports about the cause of these mysterious patterns appeared in 1978.
2. In the middle of a field, the grain would be flattened in huge circles.
3. Some people believed the circles in the fields were made by extraterrestrials.
4. Many others throughout the country attributed the designs to rare weather conditions.
5. Instead of circles, more elaborate designs appeared in 1990.
6. Investigators said that no one had actually seen any of the patterns being formed.
7. In 1991, the mystery may have been solved.
8. The strange patterns could have been made by two pranksters as a practical joke.
9. Since these two hoaxers’ confessions, the number of occurrences of these strange patterns has declined significantly.
10. Several books about the mysterious phenomenon were written during the 1980s and 1990s.

EXERCISE B  Complete each of the following sentences by writing in the blank an appropriate prepositional phrase.

Example 1. The birthday gift ____________ surprised Mateo.

11. _______________ Mateo’s parents bought him a pony.
12. The pony had black patches _______________.
13. So Mateo said _______________, “Let’s call the pony Salt and Pepper.”
14. Mateo’s father helped his son into the saddle, and Mateo rode _______________.
15. Then they led the pony _______________ and gave it some fresh hay and water.
The Adjective Phrase

5c. A prepositional phrase that modifies a noun or a pronoun is called an **adjective phrase**.

An **adjective phrase** tells *what kind* or *which one*.

**EXAMPLES**  
- My favorite writer for young readers is Beverly Cleary. [The adjective phrase modifies the noun writer, telling *what kind*.]  
- I have read most of Beverly Cleary’s books. [The adjective phrase modifies the pronoun most, telling *which one*.]

An adjective phrase usually follows the word it modifies. That word may be the object of another prepositional phrase.

**EXAMPLE**  
Jane read a book about the fall of Rome. [The adjective phrase of Rome modifies fall, which is the object of the preposition about. The adjective phrase about the fall modifies book.]

More than one adjective phrase may modify the same word.

**EXAMPLE**  
The bowl of fruit salad in the refrigerator is for the party. [The adjective phrases of fruit salad and in the refrigerator modify the noun bowl.]

**Exercise**  
In each of the following sentences, underline the adjective phrase or phrases. Then, circle the word that each adjective phrase modifies.

**Example 1.** The town beyond those mountains to the east is no longer inhabited.

1. My favorite writer of science fiction is Ray Bradbury.
2. The pie needs four cups of fruit.
3. A student from Mr. Levy’s class won first prize.
4. The loud crash of the cymbal was deafening.
5. The directions for the assignment confused Gilbert.
6. The glass of water on the table is mine.
7. The play of the sunlight on the water was a beautiful sight.
8. Somebody with feet of large proportions has scuffed the gym floor.
9. Susie mowed the area around the trunk of the tree.
10. The house on the corner of Main and Elm has been abandoned.
The Adverb Phrase

5d. A prepositional phrase that modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb is called an **adverb phrase**.

An *adverb phrase* tells *where*, *when*, *how*, *why*, or to *what extent* (how long, how many, how much, or how far).

**Examples**

- We completed the science project **before the deadline**. [The adverb phrase modifies the verb *completed*, telling *when*.]
- We were happy **with the results**. [The adverb phrase modifies the adjective *happy*, telling *how*.]
- We had worked diligently **for a week**. [The adverb phrase modifies the adverb *diligently*, telling *to what extent*.]

An adverb phrase may come before or after the word it modifies. In each of the following examples, the adverb phrase modifies the verb *learned*.

**Examples**

- From our research we learned many facts about the solar system.
- We learned from our research many facts about the solar system.

More than one adverb phrase may modify the same word.

**Example**

On Friday **we presented our work to our teacher**. [Both adverb phrases modify the verb *presented*.]

**Exercise**

In each of the following sentences, underline the adverb phrase or phrases. Then, circle the word or words that each adverb phrase modifies.

**Example 1.** During the summer, Carlie **went to Italy and Spain**.

1. Terra walked across the street.
2. Throughout next month, the band will perform at the fair.
3. Before Sunday, please clean your room.
4. Mr. Monroe has lived on Mason Street for twenty-two years.
5. Jason was pleased with his grades.
6. For several hours, a cool wind blew from the east.
7. Mrs. Green teaches history through books, magazines, and videos.
8. The boys dipped their feet into the cool, soothing water.
9. Please complete your project by Friday.
10. A quiet stillness reigned at the school throughout spring break.
Adjective and Adverb Phrases A

5c. **A prepositional phrase that modifies a noun or a pronoun is called an adjective phrase.**

An *adjective phrase* tells what kind or which one.

**EXAMPLE** What do you think influences the changes in hairstyles? [The adjective phrase modifies the noun changes, telling what kind.]

5d. **A prepositional phrase that modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb is called an adverb phrase.**

An *adverb phrase* tells how, when, where, why, or to what extent.

**EXAMPLE** Why do you think some hairstyles remain popular for only a short time? [The adverb phrase modifies the adjective popular, telling to what extent.]

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, circle the word or words that the underlined prepositional phrase modifies. Then, identify the phrase by writing above it **ADJ** for adjective phrase or **ADV** for adverb phrase.

**Example 1.** Throughout the night, water from the ceiling annoyingly dripped into the bucket.

1. Sonya is good at soccer.
2. Raphael enjoys reading articles about early space exploration.
3. Throughout the spring, Archimedes spent much time fishing.
4. The young cheetah quietly crouched behind the tall, yellow grass.
5. Herbert watched an informative video on the air battles of World War II.

**EXERCISE B** In each of the following sentences, underline each prepositional phrase. Then, identify the phrase by writing above it **ADJ** for adjective phrase or **ADV** for adverb phrase.

**Example 1.** The store on the corner was damaged during a severe hailstorm.

6. The day before Memorial Day, Henry visited his grandfather for two hours.
7. With great skill, the doctor removed several tiny shards of glass.
8. Elizabeth’s essay about England during Victorian times earned her an A.
9. During the celebration of Mom’s birthday, Uncle Jimmy told hilarious jokes for a whole hour.
10. Helga’s cousin from New Orleans waited in the living room.
11. The cost of the new bridge went beyond the previous estimate.
12. The skateboard was too expensive for Li.
14. That boy with a broken leg had been injured during a soccer game.
15. On the beach of the tiny island, the castaways constructed a hut of leaves and grass.
Adjective and Adverb Phrases B

5c. A prepositional phrase that modifies a noun or a pronoun is called an adjective phrase.

An adjective phrase tells what kind or which one.

Example A glider is an aircraft with no engine. [The adjective phrase modifies the noun aircraft, telling what kind.]

5d. A prepositional phrase that modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb is called an adverb phrase.

An adverb phrase tells how, when, where, why, or to what extent.

Example The chef seasoned the casserole with garlic, pepper, and thyme. [The adverb phrase modifies the verb seasoned, telling how.]  

Exercise A In each of the following sentences, circle the word or words that the underlined prepositional phrase modifies. Then, identify the underlined phrase by writing above it ADJ for adjective phrase or ADV for adverb phrase.

Example 1. Elaine was unhappy with the predictable movie plot.

1. The house beyond that hill belongs to Mrs. Wilton.
2. The woman in the business suit is giving out free tickets.
3. Carl plays piano well for a beginner.
4. The most exciting game of the season occurred last night.
5. Before noon, please complete your projects.

Exercise B Underline each prepositional phrase in the following sentences. Then, identify each phrase by writing above it ADJ for adjective phrase or ADV for adverb phrase.

Example 1. With a mighty toss, Philip launched the paper airplane into the sky.

6. The scientists watched with satisfaction as the probe flew into space.
7. On October 21, the mayor of the city spoke at the convention center.
8. The tower behind the temple was constructed over a ten-year period.
9. At malls, people with clipboards sometimes give shoppers surveys.
10. Frank rode his bike over the rough trails and hills of Pete’s Peak.
11. On Friday, Lisa watched a show about the Maya.
12. A Spanish galleon from the sixteenth century was discovered off the coast.
13. Over the weekend, Adele enjoyed the crisp air of the Rocky Mountains.
14. Mr. James is good at basketball.
15. For his birthday, Jose wants a red convertible with a black top.
Exercise A  In each of the following sentences, circle the noun or pronoun that the underlined participle modifies. Then, above the participle, write present for present participle or past for past participle.

Example 1. The broken glass is on the floor.
1. Clara likes to eat canned peaches.
2. Clapping wildly, the fans welcomed the band.
3. Theresa watered the blossoming flowers.
4. The child’s forgotten toys lined the bottom of the toy chest.
5. Decorated with care, the float was popular at the parade.

Exercise B  Underline the participle in each of the following sentences. Then, above the participle, write present for present participle or past for past participle.

Example 1. The painting, purchased at a garage sale, was worth one million dollars.
6. The book, chosen for its unusual characters, was a class favorite.
7. Feeling confident, Larry volunteered to list all of the state capitals.
8. Dale watched the kitten playing with his shoe.
9. The students planning the field trip decided to take a trip to Washington, D.C.
10. Janet discovered a treasure map on the piece of yellowed paper.
for CHAPTER 5: THE PHRASE  pages 148–149

The Participial Phrase

A participial phrase consists of a participle and any modifiers or complements the participle has. The entire phrase is used as an adjective.

**EXAMPLES**
- Reaching for a bagel, she knocked over her glass of milk. [The participial phrase modifies the pronoun she.]
- Aunt Molly sent me a baseball glove autographed by my favorite player. [The participial phrase modifies the noun glove.]

A participial phrase should be placed as close as possible to the word it modifies. Otherwise, the phrase may appear to modify another word, and the sentence may not make sense.

**MISPLACED**  Many holiday decorations adorned the gift shop made of papier mâché.

**CORRECTED**  Many holiday decorations made of papier mâché adorned the gift shop.

**EXERCISE A**  Underline the participial phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, circle the noun or pronoun that the participial phrase modifies.

**Example 1.** Appreciated for his contribution, Alfred was awarded a trip to Paris.

1. The mascot, known to the students as Sparky, entertained the crowd.
2. Walter, running with speed and purpose, passed the other joggers.
3. Seeing the bump in the road, Nell swerved to avoid it.
4. Dressed in style, Blake left his house and headed for the school dance.
5. The mayor has a building named in her honor.

**EXERCISE B**  Use each of the following participial phrases in a sentence. Be sure to place each phrase as close as possible to the noun or pronoun it modifies.

**Example 1.** looking down at his shoes

Looking down at his shoes, Bart noticed that they were untied.

6. feeling tired

7. dressed in shorts and a T-shirt

8. hiding under the bed

9. damaged by the rain

10. signed by President Abraham Lincoln
Participles and Participial Phrases A

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, draw one line under the participle used as an adjective and two lines under the word it modifies.

**Example 1.** A storm named Hurricane Albert had formed.

1. The roaring wind came first.
2. A concerned look was on my father’s face.
3. The emergency instructions prepared by my mother came in handy.
4. In a few hours, our house had taped windows.
5. Candles brought by my mother were ready on the table.
6. My parents had also bought a large supply of bottled water.
7. The pouring rain beat against the windows.
8. The flickering lights prompted us to light the candles.
9. Huddled around the radio, we listened for weather updates.
10. Finally, the storm passed, leaving behind considerable damage.

**Exercise B** In each of the following sentences, draw one line under the participial phrase and two lines under the word or words it modifies.

**Example 1.** I saw a picture of a woolly mammoth lifting its hairy trunk.

11. Born during the Ice Age, woolly mammoths needed a great deal of hair.
12. The land, covered with ice, was a difficult place to survive.
13. Even a big beast protected by hair had trouble.
14. Searching for food, the woolly mammoths roamed the land.
15. Looking at pictures of these animals, I wonder how they survived at all.
Participles and Participial Phrases B

**A participle** is a verb form that can be used as an adjective.

1. Present participles end in –*ing*.
   - *Example:* The mascot of the **opposing** team is a cougar. (*Opposing* modifies *team,*]

2. Most past participles end in –*d* or –*ed.* Some are irregularly formed.
   - *Example:* At the cookout, they served **grilled** salmon. (*Grilled* modifies *salmon,*]

**A participial phrase** consists of a participle and any modifiers or complements the participle has. The entire phrase is used as an adjective.

- *Example:* The Akashi-Kaiko Bridge, **located in Kobe-Naruto, Japan,** is the world’s largest suspension bridge. [The participial phrase modifies the noun *Akashi-Kaiko Bridge.*]

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, underline the participle. Then, circle the word or words that the participle modifies.

- **Example 1.** Pepe admired the darkening **sky.**
  1. The battered ship was anchored off the coast of Florida.
  2. The hikers took plenty of bottled beverages on their journey.
  3. Jose bought ten used magazines.
  4. The beaten team did not advance to the playoffs.
  5. The running child almost slipped and fell.

**Exercise B** In each of the following sentences, underline the participial phrase. Then, circle the word or words that the participial phrase modifies.

- **Example 1.** Preparing for the winter storm, **Jimmy** took his plants inside.
  6. The tools used by professional mechanics are usually very expensive.
  7. Covered with snow for weeks, the ground was now hard.
  8. The basement, filled with old boxes, was damp and musty.
  9. Simple jewelry left behind by ancient Egyptians can be very valuable today.
  10. Wanting to make a good impression, Harry wore his favorite shirt to the game.
  11. The dogs, barking noisily throughout the night, kept the neighbors awake.
  12. Jeff wanted to buy an antique desk used by a famous writer.
  13. Feeling exhausted after a day of hard work, Ellen decided to go to sleep early.
  14. The boys playing in the park found an arrowhead and the fragments of a necklace.
  15. Torn and tattered, the clothes looked as if they had been worn for a long time.
The Gerund

5g. A gerund is a verb form ending in –ing that is used as a noun.

EXAMPLES  Skiing is my favorite sport. [subject of the verb is]
           My hobby is fishing. [predicate nominative identifying the subject hobby]
           Sam enjoys rock climbing. [direct object of the verb enjoy]
           We should give snorkeling a try. [indirect object of the verb should give]
           Saul has shown great interest in skating. [object of the preposition in]

Do not confuse a gerund with a present participle used as part of a verb phrase or as an adjective.

EXAMPLES  The rabbit was sitting by the edge of the running stream. [Sitting is part of the verb phrase was sitting. Running is a participle modifying stream.]

**Exercise A**  Underline the gerund in each of the following sentences.

Example  1. The key to playing guitar is finger dexterity.
           1. Becoming a doctor takes years of serious study.
           2. Kino’s specialty is cooking mushrooms and onions.
           3. The subtle squeaking of the door hinges told Mira that her sister was home.
           4. Carla decided on writing about famous women in history.
           5. Mr. Riley enjoys the crackling of a campfire on a winter’s evening.

**Exercise B**  Underline the gerund in each of the following sentences. Then, above each gerund, write S for subject, PN for predicate nominative, DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, or OP for object of a preposition. If a sentence does not contain a gerund, write none after the sentence.

Example  1. Laurie loves running early in the morning.
           6. Traveling to new and interesting places is fun.
           7. The smiling child amused his parents.
           8. Give playing golf another chance.
           9. The powerful writing made the novel exciting to read.
           10. Carla was talking in a low whisper to her best friend.
           11. Cecil’s favorite hobby is building scale models of World War II airplanes.
           12. The key to fishing is patience.
           13. Fielding a pop fly on a sunny day can be a tricky play.
           14. Pam is studying for her French exam.
           15. Marie’s favorite event is swimming.
The Gerund Phrase

A gerund phrase consists of a gerund and any modifiers or complements the gerund has. The entire phrase is used as a noun.

**EXAMPLES**

- Holding a class election taught us much about politics. [subject of the verb taught]
- When did the candidates begin campaigning for the class offices? [direct object of the verb did begin]
- Carrie’s passion is rock climbing. [predicate nominative identifying the subject passion]
- Javier gave fishing for bass another chance. [indirect object of the verb gave]
- Election officials made an error in counting the votes. [object of the preposition in]

**EXERCISE A**

Underline the gerund phrase in each of the following sentences.

Example 1. Jim’s tiny handwriting is sometimes difficult to read.

1. The vibrating of the tire caused the car to shake.
2. The noise you heard is the soft chirping of a baby bird.
3. Sally is an expert at identifying Grecian artifacts.
4. Playing the piano well is a difficult skill to learn.
5. Jason’s method of fly-fishing for trout is unique but effective.

**EXERCISE B**

Underline the gerund phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, above each gerund phrase, write S for subject, PN for predicate nominative, DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, or OP for object of a preposition. If a sentence does not contain a gerund phrase, write none after the sentence.

Example 1. The slow rocking of the boat made Daniel seasick.

6. Javier wants to write an essay about the art of playing video games.
7. The swerving car avoided the fallen tree lying in the road.
8. Julie’s favorite pastime is running along the trails near the park.
9. Having defined goals will help you plan your future.
10. Katy’s favorite weekend activity is sleeping late on Saturday mornings.
11. The class used up half an hour by asking the guest speaker questions about comets.
12. The chef gave cooking the stew the attention it deserved.
13. Try flying the kite one more time before you throw it away.
14. Terra dreams of flying a helicopter for a television news station.
15. Our baseball team is playing out of town this week.
Gerunds and Gerund Phrases A

5g. A gerund is a verb form ending in –ing that is used as a noun.

EXAMPLES    Spelunking is a wonderful adventure. [subject of the verb is]
             We could hear the distant rumbling of thunder. [direct object of the verb could hear]
             We should give rafting another try. [indirect object of the verb should give]

5h. A gerund phrase consists of a gerund and any modifiers or complements the gerund has. The entire phrase is used as a noun.

EXAMPLES    One of the president’s duties is serving as commander in chief. [predicate nominative identifying one of the president’s duties]
             The settlers cleared part of the land by burning down the forest. [object of the preposition by]

EXERCISE A Underline the gerund in each of the following sentences.

Example 1. The sharp clanging of the bell alerted the students.

1. Jackie saved money for the trip by grooming horses at a local stable.
2. Training a pet to obey simple commands can be difficult.
3. Jerry’s phobia is speaking to large crowds.
4. Sarah believes in saving money for the future.
5. The annoying rooster enjoys crowing outside my window.

EXERCISE B Underline the gerund phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, above each gerund phrase, write S for subject, PN for predicate nominative, DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, or OP for object of a preposition. If a sentence does not contain a gerund phrase, write none after the sentence.

Example 1. Traveling to distant places is easier today than it was two hundred years ago.

6. Flying in an airplane sounds dangerous, but it is actually quite safe.
7. A far more dangerous activity is driving a car.
8. Some drivers endanger others as well as themselves by recklessly disobeying traffic laws.
9. David’s family is taking a train to New York this summer.
10. For our next vacation we may give riding on a train a try.
11. Watching the countryside roll by from the window of a train would be fun.
12. My sister votes for driving to Seattle, Washington, in an RV.
13. Preston heard the crashing of the surf.
14. Traveling across the country takes a lot of time.
15. Wherever we go on our vacation, my aunt is coming with us.
Gerunds and Gerund Phrases B

A gerund is a verb form ending in –ing that is used as a noun.

EXAMPLES  Playing chess well requires concentration. [subject of the verb requires]
My sister Tyra has started collecting rocks. [direct object of the verb has started]

A gerund phrase consists of a gerund and any modifiers or complements the gerund has. The entire phrase is used as a noun.

EXAMPLES  Before Martin became a journalist, he had given becoming an English teacher serious thought. [indirect object of the verb had given]
When did Tori Murden fulfill her dream of rowing solo across the Atlantic Ocean? [object of the preposition of]

**EXERCISE A**  Underline the gerund in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** The rumbling of Joe’s stomach told us it was time to eat.
1. Larry was intent on watching every movie in our video collection in one weekend.
2. My sister is responsible for cleaning the garage.
3. Deanna’s powerful speaking caused the audience to erupt in applause.
4. The difficult aspect of the workout program is getting up at four in the morning.
5. The cacophonous clanking of the car’s engine could be heard from blocks away.

**EXERCISE B**  Underline the gerund phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, above each gerund, write S for subject, PN for predicate nominative, DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, or OP for object of a preposition. If a sentence does not contain a gerund phrase, write none after the sentence.

**Example 1.** The barking of the menacing dog caused the cat to flee from the yard.

6. Theresa began her report on Medieval Europe with an interesting question.
7. When he was five, the musical prodigy started playing the piano.
8. Plato gave fishing for rainbow trout another chance.
9. Jack’s parents supported his dream of winning a gold medal.
10. The charging rhinoceros on the video frightened the kindergartners.
11. Among other sports, Li enjoys snorkeling in the ocean.
12. The teacher noted that Paul has a love of reading poems and writing them.
13. His strongest event in the track meet was running hurdles.
14. At sunrise the girls began raking the golden leaves.
15. One popular hobby is collecting baseball cards.
Participle or Gerund?

Both present participles and gerunds end in \(-ing\). To avoid confusing these two verb forms, remember that a present participle functions as an adjective or as part of a verb phrase and that a gerund functions as a noun.

**EXAMPLES**

Brian is in his room, **writing** in his journal. [present participle modifying the noun *Brian*.]

Brian is **writing** in his journal. [part of the verb phrase is *writing*.]

Brian enjoys **writing** in his journal. [gerund used as the direct object of the verb *enjoys*.]

**EXERCISE A**

In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word as a participle or gerund. If the underlined word is part of the verb phrase, write *verb* on the line provided.

**Example**

1. The dancing duo amazed the audience with their flawless routine.

   participle

   1. Planning ahead, David carried an umbrella to school.

   2. The zoning committee would not allow a strip mall to be built next to the park.

   3. The tireless beavers were **building** a dam across the stream.

   4. Brian likes **racing** remote-controlled cars.

   5. The restless boy was **fidgeting** throughout the entire movie.

**EXERCISE B**

Use each of the following words as a gerund or a participle. The gerund or participle may be a single word or part of a phrase.

**Example**

1. writing (gerund) Ben enjoys writing to his pen pal in Italy.

   6. jumping (participle)

   7. swimming (gerund)

   8. feeling (participle)

   9. seeing (participle)

   10. tasting (gerund)
The Infinitive

An infinitive is a verb form that can be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb. Most infinitives begin with to.

**NOUN** I have always wanted to visit the Egyptian pyramids. [direct object of the verb have wanted]

**ADJECTIVE** I may soon have the opportunity to visit the Egyptian pyramids. [modifying the noun opportunity]

**ADVERB** I may travel to Egypt next summer to visit the pyramids. [modifying the verb phrase may travel]

Do not confuse an infinitive with a prepositional phrase beginning with to. A prepositional phrase always has an object that is a noun or a pronoun. An infinitive is a verb form.

**INFINITIVE** to travel

**PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE** to Japan

**EXERCISE** Underline the infinitive in each of the following sentences. If the sentence does not have an infinitive, write none after the sentence.

**Example 1.** To visit the pyramids in Egypt would be exciting.

1. Laurie said that the best place to go on Friday is the roller rink.
2. Elaine wants to be a writer after she graduates.
3. The idea to remember is that an infinitive is a verb form.
4. The clerk gave the sack of groceries to him.
5. The neatly chopped tomatoes were ready to go into the salad.
6. Emile read the article to find information about Korea.
7. To learn facts, some people use mnemonics, or memory devices.
8. Eddie came to school late on Wednesday.
9. She wanted her guest to be comfortable.
10. A person needs coordination to dance well.
The Infinitive Phrase

An **infinitive phrase** consists of an infinitive and any modifiers or complements the infinitive has. The entire phrase may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

**NOUN**  
To climb Mount Everest is one of Ann’s goals. [subject of the verb *is*]

**ADJECTIVE**  
Any time is a great time to be in New Orleans. [modifying the noun *time*]

**ADVERB**  
We displayed posters to remind everyone of the Earth Day festivities. [modifying the verb *displayed*]

**EXERCISE**  
Underline the infinitive phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, above the infinitive phrase, write **N** for noun, **ADJ** for adjective, or **ADV** for adverb. If a sentence does not have a infinitive phrase, write **none** after the sentence.

**Example 1.** Sarah took the time to decorate her notebooks.  

1. To fix a flat bicycle tire you may need a tire patch and some glue.  
2. Alex was ready to begin his new class on Monday.  
3. The campers went to a campsite near the mountains.  
4. The ability to play a musical instrument comes from talent and practice.  
5. Henry’s little brother always wants to play hide-and-seek.  
6. The team went to the stadium to practice the new plays.  
7. The purpose of a persuasive speech is to convince others.  
8. The salesperson measured Roy’s arm to determine his sleeve size.  
9. Please hand your science project to the person behind you.  
10. Yori wants to eat Italian food for lunch.  
11. To study a foreign language is a worthwhile pursuit.  
12. We were told to put the food away.  
13. Please tell them to be quiet.  
14. Saturday is a good day to mow the lawn.  
15. Are you prepared to answer the question?  
16. Martina sent the results to her father.  
17. The president asked her advisers to propose a solution.  
18. My chief goal in college is to earn my degree.  
19. To remember a conversation from three years ago is quite a trick.  
20. Don’t forget to return the basketball to the equipment room.
Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases A

**Si.** An *infinitive* is a verb form that can be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb. Most infinitives begin with *to*.

- **NOUN** Would you like *to dance*? [direct object of the verb *would like*]
- **ADJECTIVE** A relatively simple dance *to perform* is the waltz. [modifying the noun *dance*]
- **ADVERB** Are all of the dancers ready *to rehearse*? [modifying the adjective *ready*]

**Sj.** An *infinitive phrase* consists of an infinitive and any modifiers or complements the infinitive has. The entire phrase may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

- **NOUN** To *become a singer* requires talent and desire. [subject of the verb *requires*]
- **ADJECTIVE** Do you have the desire *to become a singer*? [modifying the noun *desire*]
- **ADVERB** You seem eager *to become a singer*. [modifying the adjective *eager*]

**Exercise A** Underline the infinitive phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the use of the phrase by writing above it *N* for noun, *ADJ* for adjective, or *ADV* for adverb.

**Example 1.** Do you like *to make things out of paper*?

1. An easy thing to *form out of paper* is an envelope.
2. To *make a paper airplane* takes little time.
3. Some children were eager to *fold paper into shapes of animal figures*.
4. One child’s goal was to *create a paper jacket*.
5. Others were content to *design paper baskets*.

**Exercise B** Use each of the following infinitives in a sentence. The part of speech is indicated in parentheses.

**Example 1.** to *build* (noun) *Katy said she wanted to build a treehouse in the back yard."

6. to *feel* (noun) ____________________________

7. to *become* (adverb) ____________________________

8. to *believe* (adverb) ____________________________

9. to *fill* (adjective) ____________________________

10. to *decide* (noun) ____________________________
EXERCISE  Underline the infinitive or infinitive phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, write above the infinitive or infinitive phrase N for noun, ADJ for adjective, or ADV for adverb.

Example  1. Jacob was the first student to volunteer for the cleanup crew.

1. Francis wrapped the sandwich in cellophane to keep the sandwich fresh.
2. The assignment was not difficult to complete.
3. At four o’clock, Charles began to paint the garage a dazzling shade of pink.
4. Lee and his buddies got together to design a video game.
5. Fruits and vegetables are good, nutritious foods to eat.
6. The teacher asked the class not to talk.
7. Terry used the World Wide Web to find information about lemurs.
8. We tried to capture the runaway dog, but it was too fast and wily for us.
9. To climb that colossal rock will take skill and concentration.
10. They used nails and ropes to fasten the boards to the tree.
Exercises A  Underline the verbal or verbal phrase in each of the following sentences. Above each verbal or verbal phrase, write gerund, gerund phrase, participle, participial phrase, infinitive, or infinitive phrase.

Example 1.  Kevin researched different methods of measuring time.

1. The plan accepted by the mayor involved a tax cut.
2. Paula expected the paper airplane to fly.
3. Feeling dizzy, Helena stopped and took a break.
4. The weight of the sack made it difficult to carry.
5. My uncle from Michigan enjoys canoeing.
6. The squeaking wheel alerted the mechanic to a potential problem.
7. Getting up early in the morning is sometimes a challenge.
8. We bought a new wrench to fix the leaky faucet.
9. The forgotten treasure lay at the bottom of the sea for three hundred years.
10. Fascinated, Pepe stood and admired the mural for several hours.

Exercises B  Decide how the underlined word groups are used in each of the following sentences. Options for each sentence are given in parentheses. Circle the correct option.

Example 1.  Coughing and sneezing, Doug stayed home from band practice. (adjective or noun)

11. The easiest part of the project is cutting out the pattern. (direct object or predicate nominative)
12. The tools used by some ancient cultures are impressive. (adverb or adjective)
13. Running five miles per week is Joanna’s goal. (subject or direct object)
14. They went to the park to have a picnic. (adverb or adjective)
15. The coach’s philosophy is to practice every day. (predicate nominative or direct object)
**Appositives**

5k. **An appositive** is a noun or a pronoun placed beside another noun or pronoun to identify or describe it.

**Examples**

- The Drama Club will be performing a play about the mythological hero **Perseus**. [The appositive identifies the noun *hero*.]
- Only two eighth-graders, **Saul** and I, auditioned for the lead role. [The compound appositive identifies the noun *eighth-graders*.]

**Exercise A**

Underline the appositive in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Charles Dickens is known for his novel **Great Expectations**.

1. The scientist Marie Curie was born in 1867.
2. Her husband, Pierre Curie, was also a scientist.
3. The novelist Jack London wrote **Call of the Wild**.
4. Nathan studied the explorer Vasco da Gama.
5. Karen’s brother, Darren, plays the flute.

**Exercise B**

Underline the appositive in each of the following sentences. Then, circle the noun or pronoun that the appositive identifies or describes.

**Example 1.** The **character** Tom appears in Chapter One.

6. His cousin Ellen has a magnificent geode collection.
7. The famous baseball player Hank Aaron hit 755 home runs.
8. The book **Sounder** is John’s favorite novel.
9. Harry told his sister Lana that he would take her to the carnival.
10. My mom, Regina, volunteers at the city library.
Appositive Phrases

An **appositive phrase** consists of an appositive and its modifiers.

**EXAMPLES**

The restaurant’s specialty is paella, a Spanish dish of rice and various meats and spices. [The appositive phrase identifies the noun *paella*.]

Paella, one of the restaurant’s specialties, is a Spanish dish of rice and various meats and spices. [The appositive phrase identifies the noun *paella*.]

**EXERCISE A** Underline the appositive phrase in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Pedro, a tall and slender man, rescued the kitten from the tree.

1. Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese explorer, was the first European to reach India by sea.
2. Last week, Freddie witnessed an odd event, a pig and a cat taking a nap together.
3. The professor, a woman of keen insight, explained her interpretation of the story.
4. Charles Dickens, author of *A Christmas Carol*, had to work in a shoe polish factory as a boy.
5. The band played “Panther Pride,” the school’s fight song, during the graduation ceremony.

**EXERCISE B** Underline the appositive phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, circle the noun or pronoun that the appositive phrase identifies or describes.

**Example 1.** The meteor shower, an unpredicted event, caught the scientists by surprise.

6. Hank Aaron, the right fielder from Alabama, broke Babe Ruth’s record for home runs.
7. Make sure that you bring the most important item, your permission slip.
8. Paul, his cousin from St. Louis, could juggle six tennis balls at once.
9. The Mexican food, a delicious change of pace, spiced things up in the cafeteria.
10. Leslie’s cat, an amazingly smart animal, learned to sit up and roll over on command.
EXERCISE  Underline the appositives and appositive phrases in the following sentences. Then, circle the noun or pronoun that the appositive identifies or describes.

Example 1. James Monroe, an earlier president, had hoped to establish a similar policy.

1. The Battle of Bad Axe River, a struggle between a band of American Indians and the United States government, occurred in 1832.
2. Black Hawk, a member of the Sauk nation, led the American Indian forces.
3. Many Mesquakies, allies of the Sauks, followed Black Hawk into battle.
4. This battle, the last skirmish of Black Hawk’s War, resulted in the removal of the Sauks and Mesquakies from their homelands.
5. Other Indian leaders, Chief Joseph, Crazy Horse, and Sitting Bull, fought in battles to protect their homelands and cultures.
6. The Nez Perce leader, Chief Joseph, and his followers fought heroically.
7. Chief Joseph and his forces, a band of fewer than five hundred warriors, defended themselves against a force of five thousand U.S. government troops.
8. After a 1,300-mile trek to Canada, a long and difficult journey, the U.S. troops attacked.
9. After a five-month siege, the Nez Perce were relocated to Indian Territory, a region that is now part of Oklahoma.
10. Crazy Horse and Sitting Bull, two leaders of the Sioux, also fought bravely in their battles against U.S. government forces.
Appositive and Appositive Phrases B

**An appositive** is a noun or a pronoun placed beside another noun or pronoun to identify or describe it.

**EXAMPLE**


[The appositives identify the noun *states.*]

**An appositive phrase** consists of an appositive and its modifiers.

**EXAMPLE**

The Channel Tunnel, *the underwater tunnel connecting England and France,* was completed in 1994.

[The appositive phrase identifies the noun *Channel Tunnel.*]

**Exercise**

Underline the appositives and appositive phrases in the following sentences. Then, circle the noun or pronoun that the appositive identifies or describes.

**Example 1.**

Shelby, the winner of the spelling bee, was mentioned in the newspaper.

1. The pillow was made of an extremely soft material, goose feathers.
2. Gena’s favorite comic strip, *Peanuts,* is a constant source of amusement to her.
3. We listened to beautiful piano sonatas by Beethoven, the famous composer.
4. Kevin gave his sister, Valerie, his old catcher’s mitt as a gift.
5. The skateboarder, an expert at negotiating the half pipe, dazzled the crowd.
6. A single clue, a torn-up slipper, alerted Kim to the fact that her dog had been in the closet.
7. The impressive flag, a symbol of national pride, fluttered softly in the wind.
8. Berkeley has watched the movie *Babe* twelve times.
9. For the afternoon hike, Gino packed an orange, one of his favorite fruits.
10. Ricky chose to study the artist Picasso for his art project.
11. Uncle Mike, my father’s younger brother, is an art director in Hollywood.
12. In New York we saw the musical *Cats.*
13. My grandmother went to high school with the famous film director Stanley Kubrick.
14. *West Side Story,* a retelling of *Romeo and Juliet,* was first a Broadway play.
16. Ms. Hong, my math teacher, is retiring this year.
17. *A Prairie Home Companion,* Helen’s favorite radio show, plays every Saturday night.
18. Jason, the last person you would expect, volunteered to cook.
19. Lara’s hometown, Big Rapids, is in Michigan.
**Review A: Verbal Phrases**

**EXERCISE A** Underline the verbal phrase in each of the following sentences. Above each verbal or verbal phrase, write *gerund, gerund phrase, participle, participial phrase, infinitive, or infinitive phrase.*

**Example 1.** Feeling **proud**, Enrique walked down the hall with a confident swagger.

1. Heloise wants to be an airline pilot.
2. The meowing cat slunk out of the room.
3. Jonathan went to the store to buy the latest magazine.
4. Standing on its hind legs, the cute Chihuahua walked around the room.
5. One of Jane’s favorite pastimes is flying kites.
6. Beth said that the most convenient time to study is at three o’clock.
7. Ruth listened to the pleasant strumming of the Spanish guitar.
8. Charles, seeing the clouds in the sky, proclaimed that it would soon rain.
9. You can save some time by removing the shells first.
10. The artifacts buried beneath layers of dirt and rock were important finds.

**EXERCISE B** Write a sentence using the specified verbal as indicated in each of the following items. If needed, you may add words to the verbal.

**Example 1.** owning (gerund as a subject) *Owning a pet is a great responsibility.*

11. sailing (gerund phrase as a direct object) ____________________________

12. to become (infinitive phrase as a predicate nominative) ____________________________

13. agreeing (participial phrase) ____________________________

14. sailing (gerund phrase as subject) ____________________________

15. seeing (participial phrase) ____________________________
**EXERCISE A**  Underline the prepositional phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, above each phrase, write *adjective phrase* or *adverb phrase*. Some sentences contain more than one prepositional phrase.

**Example 1.** In what year did the settlement of North America by Europeans begin?

1. In the East the Europeans built houses, roads, and cities.
2. Areas of wilderness lay to the west.
3. The land of the open prairie beckoned to them.
4. Cattle could be raised throughout these wide-open ranges.
5. There they could roam freely over large areas.
6. On these ranges most of the beef eaten in cities would be raised.
7. The hides of the cattle were branded to show ownership.
8. A single cow was valuable to a rancher.
9. Cattle that strayed were caught with a lasso.
10. The pioneer spirit of most of the early settlers remained high in spite of the hardship.

**EXERCISE B**  Underline the phrases in each of the following sentences. Then, above each phrase, write *participial phrase*, *gerund phrase*, *infinitive phrase*, *appositive phrase*, or *prepositional phrase*. Hint: Ignore any prepositional phrases within appositive phrases or verbal phrases.

**Example 1.** For thousands of years, farmers have used plows to till the soil.

11. Before the invention of the tractor, farmers used oxen or other animals to pull the plows.
12. One farmworker, the plowman, would walk behind the plow to guide it.
13. Another worker would stand in front of the oxen to guide them.
14. Raising a crop was a strenuous job.
15. One part of the job was plowing the soil, a difficult task.
16. Fertilizer, an important ingredient for a productive crop, was added to the soil.
17. A farmer would walk across the field, spreading the fertilizer.
18. To nourish the ground, the farmer would work the fertilizer into the ground.
19. Sowing the seeds was the next step.
20. Unfortunately, some of the seeds would be eaten by birds.
Review C: Phrases

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined phrase by writing above it prepositional phrase, participial phrase, gerund phrase, infinitive phrase, or appositive phrase. Hint: Ignore any prepositional phrases within a verbal phrase.

**Example 1.** In an effort to protect seeds, farmers would often place scarecrows in the fields.

1. Scarecrows seemed to scare away at least some of the birds.
2. The weather, of course, plays a significant role in the growing of a crop.
3. A crop ripening in the sun can look beautiful.
4. Have you ever stood in a sunlit field to watch the wheat or some other crop sway in the wind?
5. Corn, a plant that has several thousands of varieties, is an important crop.
6. A stalk of corn can grow up to twenty feet tall.
7. A field of corn glimmering in the sun is a beautiful sight.
8. Many varieties of corn from the United States are grown in the Corn Belt.
9. Eating corn on the cob is a common activity at some picnics.
10. The planting and harvesting of crops such as corn is a demanding job.

**Exercise B** Underline the phrases in each of the following sentences. Then, above each phrase, write participial phrase, gerund phrase, infinitive phrase, appositive phrase, or prepositional phrase. Hint: Ignore any prepositional phrases within verbal or appositive phrases.

**Example 1.** Glistening in the summer sun, the orange snow cone topped with fruit looked delicious.

11. The building towering ten stories tall is a treasured landmark.
12. Watching the driveway intently, Janet waited for David.
13. Kelly, wanting a treat, walked to the grocery store to buy a fresh watermelon.
14. The tree, a tall pine with a thick trunk, was over a century old.
15. This lesson’s objective is to learn about phrases in action.
16. Helena, one of the girls from our school, received a blue ribbon.
17. The class heard the soft whimpering of a puppy.
18. The girl standing on the stage is Celia.
19. Sally’s favorite hobby is learning about her family’s history.
20. Swooping down from the sky, the bird buzzed over Tim’s head.
Identifying Clauses

A clause is a word group that contains a verb and its subject and that is used as a sentence or as part of a sentence.

Every clause has a subject and a verb, but not every clause expresses a complete thought.

**SENTENCE** While the bear crossed the road, the tourists stayed inside their cars.

**CLAUSE** While the bear crossed the road [incomplete thought]

**CLAUSE** the tourists stayed inside their cars [complete thought]

Do not mistake a phrase for a clause. A phrase does not contain both a verb and its subject.

**PHRASE** After the soccer game, the coach took us out for pizza.

**CLAUSE** After we won the soccer game, the coach took us out for pizza.

**EXERCISE A** For the underlined clause in each of the following sentences, identify the subject and verb by writing S above the subject and V above the verb.

**Example 1.** After Jim woke, he watched a Japanese monster movie on television.

1. Antonio told her that he had not planned on coming to the party.
2. I have no idea when the mechanic finished the repairs on the car.
3. Before the storm struck, the sky turned an odd shade of green.
4. When she arrived at the dock, the ferry had already left for the island.
5. At last Gretchen met Conrad and Padgett, who were the pets of her friend Mimi.
6. Grabbing his hat, Robb dashed out into the snow.
7. Even though they invited her, Joie decided not to come along on the field trip.
8. Vince decided to read the book before he saw the movie.
9. You may come with us if you want.
10. Teddy stopped the dryer when he heard his boots clunking around inside it.

**EXERCISE B** On the line provided, identify the underlined word group in each of the following sentences as a clause or a phrase.

**Example clause 1.** Before I met you, I had never heard of the jazz musician Miles Davis.

11. After the game, the winning team shook hands with the losing team.
12. While they waited for sunset, the crowd sang songs.
13. During the broadcast, the singer kept her eye on the camera.
14. Unfortunately for us, Warren did not bring enough food for everybody.
15. Sometimes the Santos family likes to eat popcorn while they watch a video.
The Independent Clause

6b. An independent (or main) clause expresses a complete thought and can stand by itself as a complete sentence.

**EXAMPLES**

- People from many parts of Europe have immigrated to the United States. [one independent clause]
- In the mid-1800s, a famine hit Ireland, and many Irish citizens moved to the United States. [two independent clauses]
- Although the immigrants left many of their belongings behind, they brought with them their traditions. [one subordinate clause and one independent clause]

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, draw one line under the subject and two lines under the verb in the independent clause.

**Example** 1. The United States is known as a country of immigrants.

1. In the nineteenth century, Scottish-Irish immigrants came to the United States.
2. They brought with them their music and their way of speaking.
3. Many settled in the south-central part of the United States.
4. In some places you can still hear some of the Scottish-Irish songs.
5. One singer of those old ballads is Jean Ritchie.
6. Audiences love Ritchie’s version of “Barbara Allen.”
7. Ritchie can play the dulcimer as well as the guitar.
8. The dulcimer, which is an oval-shaped stringed instrument, is especially popular among the people of the southern Appalachians.
10. Every group of immigrants brings its own special treasures to our shores.

**EXERCISE B** For each of the following sentences, decide whether the underlined clause is or is not an independent clause. On the line provided, write Yes if it is or No if it is not.

**Example** No 1. The campers fished until they were exhausted.

No 11. Alex sang, and Lani played the harpsichord.
No 12. Have you met our new next-door neighbors?
No 13. We cannot leave because the work has not been completed.
No 14. If I were president, I would send an environmental bill to Congress.
No 15. Some cobras squirt poison when they are attacked.
The Subordinate Clause

6c. A **subordinate** (or dependent) clause does not express a complete thought and cannot stand by itself as a complete sentence.

**EXAMPLE** if wishes were horses

The meaning of a subordinate clause is complete only when the clause is attached to an independent clause.

**EXAMPLE** If wishes were horses, then beggars would ride.

Sometimes the word that begins the subordinate clause is the subject of the clause.

**EXAMPLE** This is a line that comes from a Mother Goose rhyme.

**EXERCISE A** Underline the subordinate clause in each of the following sentences. Then, write S above the subject and V above the verb of each subordinate clause.

Example 1. Before the stories by Raffi and Disney appeared, many children were learning Mother Goose rhymes.

1. England is the country where Mother Goose rhymes originated.
2. The people who composed the rhymes lived hundreds of years ago.
3. These rhymes became popular because they were fun and easy to learn.
4. If a rhyme was especially funny or interesting, children would sing it.
5. One rhyme that children enjoyed was “Baa, Baa Black Sheep.”
6. Some people think that this rhyme is actually a protest against taxes.
7. In the rhyme, the three bags of wool that the sheep produces are given away.
8. Since the sheep has only three bags of wool, it is left with nothing.
9. So, “Baa, Baa Black Sheep” may be a rhyme that protests high taxes.
10. Mother Goose rhymes, which are always fun to read, may or may not have political meanings.

**EXERCISE B** On the line provided, expand each of the following sentences by adding a subordinate clause that begins with the word given in parentheses.

Example 1. *(that)* This is the trophy that our soccer team won.

11. *(if)* On Friday we will go on a picnic.
12. *(who)* Do you know who will be the new principal?
13. *(that)* Is the story that is about to be told true?
14. *(Whenever)*, whenever it rains, our dogs bark.
15. *(because)* The band canceled its performance because the weather was too bad.
Independent and Subordinate Clauses

6b. An independent (or main) clause expresses a complete thought and can stand by itself as a complete sentence.

EXAMPLE I left Trina a message on her voice mail, but she never returned my call.

6c. A subordinate (or dependent) clause does not express a complete thought and cannot stand by itself as a complete sentence.

EXAMPLES When the pot boiled over, the oatmeal spilled onto the stove.

One bird that travels long distances in the spring and fall is the osprey.

Exercise A

On the line provided, identify each of the following word groups as an independent clause or a subordinate clause.

Example subordinate 1. whenever she chops onions

——— 1. as she leaned across the table

——— 2. they voted for a new chairperson

——— 3. the bottle was broken

——— 4. which they all said

——— 5. if someone can help me

——— 6. that the car was already in the garage

——— 7. my birthday comes in August

——— 8. that photograph is striking

——— 9. is the cup full

——— 10. since Keeley is not going

Exercise B

Draw one line under each independent clause and two lines under each subordinate clause in the following sentences.

Example 1. When she had finished skating, the judges awarded the French skater, who was my favorite, the gold medal.

11. Dr. Zamora left the dinner party before the main course was served.

12. Before we begin the meeting, let me introduce the newest member of our team.

13. The last singer on the program is the one who can hit the high notes.

14. When the conductor tapped her baton, the orchestra fell silent.

15. One planet that has often excited the imaginations of science fiction writers is Mars, which is sometimes called the red planet.
The Adjective Clause

An adjective clause is a subordinate clause that modifies a noun or a pronoun.

An adjective clause usually follows the word or words it modifies and tells which one or what kind.

**EXAMPLES**

- There are some insects **that can survive inside blocks of ice all winter.** [The adjective clause modifies the noun insects, telling what kind.]
- Is Samantha the one **who helped you?** [The adjective clause modifies the pronoun one, telling which one.]
- That book, **which tells the story of an orphan,** is one of my favorites. [The adjective clause modifies the noun book, telling which one.]

**EXERCISE A**

For each of the following sentences, underline the adjective clause.

**Example 1.** One entertainer whom we saw backstage was Mariah Carey.

1. The music that you have just heard was composed by Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart.
2. Mr. Cohen, who conducts the school chorus, collects songbooks.
3. Denver, which is situated 5,280 feet above sea level, is called the Mile High City.
4. Is Florida the place where Ponce de León sought the Fountain of Youth?
5. Ed White, whom NASA chose for the first spacewalk, was born in San Antonio.

**EXERCISE B**

Underline the adjective clause in each of the following sentences. Then, circle the word or words that the clause modifies.

**Example 1.** The **pteranodon, which was a flying reptile,** had a wingspan of thirty-six feet.

6. The fourteenth century was a time when many people died of the bubonic plague.
7. Mollusks, which have either one shell or two, are classified as either univalves or bivalves.
8. How many of the written records that were kept during the Middle Ages have survived?
9. Antonia Novello, who was Surgeon General of the United States in 1990, is Puerto Rican.
10. The lightning that flashes during a rainstorm is hotter than the surface of the sun.
11. President Harry Truman was one of those people whose middle name is a single letter.
12. Marian Anderson, who was one of the greatest opera singers, often struggled against racial discrimination.
13. Nyos, in Cameroon, is a lake that sometimes releases huge bursts of carbon dioxide from its floor.
14. Saving the tiger, which is an endangered species, may depend upon preserving its habitat.
15. My sister spends much time working with my aunt, who is president of the local Red Cross.
The Adjective Clause B

6d. An adjective clause is a subordinate clause that modifies a noun or a pronoun.

An adjective clause usually follows the word or words it modifies and tells which one or what kind.

**EXAMPLES**

Gary Soto is the writer **whom I selected for my report**. [The adjective clause modifies the noun *writer*.]

The principal told us everything **that we needed to know**. [The adjective clause modifies the pronoun *everything*.]

Jaime showed us the place **where the accident had occurred**. [The adjective clause modifies the noun *place*.]

**EXERCISE A** Underline the adjective clause in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** The speaker brought slides, which she showed to the class.

1. My aunt Becky, who is an editor for a university press, showed me her office.
2. The soldier with whom my grandmother corresponded during World War II eventually came home and became her husband.
4. The project is called SETI, which stands for “Search for Extraterrestrial Intelligence.”
5. The road that leads to the old mill has been washed out by the flood.
6. She served in the administration of Bill Clinton, who was the forty-second president of the United States.
7. My little brother is a kid whom you can really love.
8. She was the player whose skill at jump shots became legendary.
9. The corn bread that Tish brought to the party was gone within twenty minutes.
10. Dean gave his results to the scientist, who incorporated them into his report.

**EXERCISE B** Underline the adjective clause in each of the following sentences. Then, circle the word it modifies.

**Example 1.** I took my brother to the place where I first saw the stray dog.

11. The model whose face appears on so many magazine covers is a Rhodes scholar.
12. The pictures that we took on our vacation are missing.
13. The church where my sister was married is closed now for renovations.
14. This is the spot where President Kennedy announced the creation of the Peace Corps.
15. Was Ed Bradley the correspondent who reported the story?
Relative Pronouns and Relative Adverbs

A relative pronoun or relative adverb relates an adjective clause to the word or words the clause modifies.

**Example**
One of the slides **that** we saw showed the hospital where I was born. *[That relates we saw to slides. Where relates I was born to hospital.]*

**Exercise A**
Underline each adjective clause, and circle each relative pronoun or relative adverb.

**Example 1.** Last night was the first time **that** she conducted the orchestra.
1. Is Rafael the one who wrote the poem about trees in winter?
2. Starr Auditorium is the place where I first heard *English Folk Song Suite*.
3. The river that was polluted by the factory has been restored to its natural state.
4. Ms. Pollard is the teacher for whom I wrote my history report about the Gulf War.
5. He won’t be able to come until Saturday, when he has a day off from his job.
6. The famous author, whose novel I read, visited our school.
7. Gettysburg, where a famous battle was fought in the Civil War, is in southern Pennsylvania.
8. I was awake at dawn, which is too early.
9. The newspaper printed a picture of the old barn in which the stolen money was found.
10. I know a few lines of the poem that Kerry quoted on television.

**Exercise B**
On the lines provided, add an adjective clause to each of the following sentences. Then, circle the relative pronoun or relative adverb in each adjective clause.

**Example 1.** The student has a cold. **The student who left early has a cold.**
11. The director will present his new film at the film festival.
12. A cat is rolling in the grass.
13. My aunt and uncle drove through New Mexico.
14. The band will play at the dance.
15. Clare and Ruben wrote the class song.
The Adverb Clause A

6e. An adverb clause is a subordinate clause that modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb.

An adverb clause tells where, when, how, why, to what extent, or under what condition. Unlike an adverb or an adverb phrase, an adverb clause has a subject and a verb.

**EXAMPLES**

Did you see the manatee exhibit when you visited the aquarium? [The adverb clause modifies the verb Did see, telling when.]

The dolphin show was just as entertaining as it was before. [The adverb clause modifies the adjective entertaining, telling to what extent.]

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, underline the adverb clause and circle the word or words it modifies.

Example 1. Before I left the aquarium, I had learned many facts about some of our most common sea animals.

1. A lobster fears few enemies because it has a hard, protective shell.
2. A shark can swim faster than a human can.
3. The life expectancy of a sea turtle is not as long as it once was.
4. When an octopus is attacked, it can spray a jet of inky fluid at its opponent.
5. Up close at night, a coral reef is more beautiful than you can imagine.
6. When a moray eel feels threatened, it withdraws into its hiding place.
7. A sea cow can swim faster than you might think.
8. The sting of most jellyfish can be dangerous unless it is treated.
9. A puffer inflates itself like a balloon until its attacker swims away.
10. Ice fish live where temperatures sometimes drop below freezing.

**EXERCISE B** On the lines provided, complete the adverb clauses in each of the following sentences.

Example 1. No one has broken the shot put record since Alex set it in 1995.

11. While ________________________, Bert took the lasagna out of the oven.
12. The salsa dancers were upset because ________________________
13. The spy hid the documents where ________________________
14. As soon as ________________________, people swarmed into the Amazon jungle.
15. Kim can throw a football farther than ________________________
Exercise A  In each of the following sentences, underline the adverb clause and circle the word or words it modifies.

Example 1. After I had locked the door behind me, I realized I had left my keys inside the house.

1. Please read whenever you like.
2. Regis looked as though he had been caught in a rainstorm.
3. None of you should build a campfire until you have learned the proper technique.
4. If your uncle comes to the reunion tomorrow, ask him about his experiences in Indonesia.
5. Paolo mixed the pancake batter carefully so that there wouldn't be any lumps.
6. Ever since James hiked the Appalachian Trail, he has been in better shape.
7. We traveled slowly unless we were forced to go faster.
8. Although she wrote a book set in the Galápagos Islands, she has never been there.
9. After the rainstorm ended, the droplets on the leaves of the trees sparkled like diamonds.
10. I recited the poem more dramatically than she did.

Exercise B  Underline the adverb clause in each of the following sentences. Then, circle the subordinating conjunction.

Example 1. The cat won’t do tricks unless you give it treats.

11. Until Maya brings the eggplant, we won’t be able to start dinner.
12. Clarence is a much better bicycle mechanic than I am.
13. The cat batted its toy mouse under the refrigerator so that no one could reach it.
14. Vladimir played the piano as though his life depended on it.
15. Because the sky is clear, we will have a good view of the meteor shower.
Subordinating Conjunctions

An adverb clause is introduced by a subordinating conjunction—a word or word group that shows the relationship between the adverb clause and the word or words the clause modifies. Common subordinating conjunctions include although, as if, because, if, so that, than, unless, when, where, and while.

**Example**  The aroma of shrimp gumbo greeted Mother when she arrived home from work. [When shows the relationship between the adverb clause and the verb greeted.]

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, draw a line under the adverb clause and circle the subordinating conjunction.

**Example** 1. **Before** she left for work, Keiko remembered to pack a lunch.

1. Though I did not enjoy the first page, I finished the story.
2. Oscar can swim much farther than I can.
3. You may watch television after dinner as long as you finish your homework first.
4. The post office is closed because today is Presidents’ Day.
5. Unless the track team wins its next two meets, it will not go to the state finals.
6. There are footnotes at the bottom of each page so that the reader can immediately see the meaning of old or obscure words.
7. If the weather stays nice, we can go biking this afternoon.
8. Susannah sounds as though she has a bad cold.
9. Although the salad usually came with olives, Gretchen asked the cook not to put olives on hers.
10. Jan’s kite soared higher than Mimi’s model airplane flew.

**Exercise B** On the line provided, identify the underlined word group as AC for adverb clause or PP for prepositional phrase.

**Example**  **PP**  1. Until Saturday, the folk singer will be appearing nightly at the pizza parlor.

   11. Until I was born, my family lived in St. Louis, Missouri.
   12. We left the campsite a few minutes before dawn.
   13. Since breakfast, we have seen eight blue jays.
   14. Hilary spoke to Steve and Judy after she spoke to me.
   15. Try to finish those dishes before you leave.
The Noun Clause

A noun clause is a subordinate clause that is used as a noun.

**EXAMPLES**

- That life exists on other planets seems possible. [subject of the verb *seems*]
- A new computer is what Matthew needs. [predicate nominative identifying the subject *computer*]
- A good salesperson knows what customers want. [direct object of the verb *knows*]
- I will pay whoever finds the gerbil a reward. [indirect object of the verb *will pay*]
- Are you particular about what you watch on television? [object of the]

**EXERCISE A**

In each of the following sentences, underline the noun clause.

**Example 1.** You may take whomever you wish to the dance.

1. The film told us about what we should do in the case of an earthquake.
2. That some tapeworms grow to lengths of more than one hundred feet seems incredible.
3. No one could explain what had happened to all of the treasure.
4. Leuwana sent whoever asked her for one a postcard from Puerto Rico.
5. The ending of the book is not what I had expected.

**EXERCISE B**

Underline the noun clause in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the use of the clause by writing above it one of these abbreviations: S for subject, PN for predicate nominative, DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, or OP for object of a preposition.

**Example 1.** No one knows who first set foot in America.

6. That the referee called a technical foul caused an uproar among the fans.
7. The guest speaker told us what could be done about acid rain.
8. The number of commercials during a television program is what annoys me most.
9. The cafeteria worker gave whoever asked for more pasta another generous helping.
10. Whatever happens at the Super Bowl will be seen by millions of people.
11. Please do not tell me how the movie ends.
12. That the storm caused some damage is an understatement.
13. The ship’s captain offered whoever spotted a whale three gold coins.
14. Whatever happened to Amelia Earhart’s airplane remains a mystery.
15. Tsang Ying is reading a book about what happened to the bison of North America.
Exercise A  Underline each subordinate clause in the following sentences. Then, write over the clause ADJ if it is an adjective clause, ADV if it is an adverb clause, or N if it is a noun clause.

Example 1. Whenever the weather was nice, Jackie and Nicci played in the backyard.
1. Jeri, who learned to dance from his grandmother, taught us the Charleston.
2. Because her favorite program was on, Stacy wanted to stay home.
3. Any author whose books make the bestseller list is likely to make a lot of money.
4. Whoever spilled the mustard all over the floor should clean it up.
5. Esai rode his bicycle whenever he had errands to run.
6. This is the garden where we grow tomatoes.
7. He told his story to whoever would listen.
8. Mother explained why we should change the oil in the car.
9. If we want to get to the game on time, we should leave now.
10. The play on which the film is based is quite good.
Adjective, Adverb, and Noun Clauses B

An adjective clause is a subordinate clause that modifies a noun or a pronoun.

**EXAMPLE**  The panda, which is an endangered species, eats mainly bamboo plants. [The adjective clause modifies the noun *panda*.]

An adverb clause is a subordinate clause that modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb.

**EXAMPLE**  After the game, the pitcher felt as if she had strained a muscle in her right arm. [The adverb clause modifies the verb *felt*.]

A noun clause is a subordinate clause that is used as a noun.

**EXAMPLE**  My parents strongly suggested that I clean my room. [The noun clause is the direct object of the verb *suggested*.]

**Exercise**  Underline each subordinate clause in the following sentences. Then, write above the clause *ADJ* if it is an adjective clause, *ADV* if it is an adverb clause, or *N* if it is a noun clause.

**Example 1.**  Brigitte has read more of the assignment than Sven has read.

1. He rode his bicycle wherever he wanted to go.
2. The poet to whom she is referring is Robert Frost.
3. Whatever you want to do tonight is okay with me.
4. He is the artist whose sculptures are placed in the courtyard.
5. As soon as she got home from the library, she started the book.
6. Ernesto studied hard so that he could pass the sergeant’s exam.
7. We often visited Dr. Ito on Sunday evenings, when he usually cooked a traditional Japanese meal.
8. At last, Carla remembered what she had meant to say before.
9. Because he had a cold that evening, Stevie missed the premiere of the film.
10. The hostess gave whoever came to the party a paper hat and a noisemaker.
## Review A: The Clause

**Exercise A** For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined clause by writing above it **IND** for *independent clause* or **SUB** for *subordinate clause*.

**Example 1.** Edward Jenner became famous when he introduced the smallpox vaccination.

1. The dog acted as if it understood French.
2. As the others watched the parade on television, Jim went into the bedroom and took a nap.
3. The athlete whose face is on the cover of the magazine retired from the game recently.
4. We should ask Peter whether he knows Mr. Mugabe.
5. This year the town was prepared for tornado season because of the disaster last year.
6. Dario folded the towels so that they would fit in the cupboard.
7. Bob, who is my favorite cousin, will be attending West Point in the fall.
8. We were surprised when we found the cat playing happily with the dog.
10. After the explorers arrived at the top of the mountain, they took each other’s picture.

**Exercise B** Underline the subordinate clause in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the subordinate clause by writing above it **N** for *noun clause*, **ADJ** for *adjective clause*, or **ADV** for *adverb clause*.

**Example 1.** It has been raining since I arrived.

11. The relatives whom Christopher visited last week are friendly and generous.
12. Divers wear masks so that they can see underwater.
13. The traveler was grateful to whoever put up the road sign.
14. A person whose temperature rises above 102° Fahrenheit should see a doctor.
15. Is this the time when you usually go to lunch?
16. Until the pool is cleaned, no one is allowed to swim in it.
17. No one has proved the existence of the Loch Ness monster, although many people believe in its existence.
18. You can send whomever you choose a card for Valentine’s Day.
19. If the earth’s climate grows warmer, sea levels will rise, and crops will fail.
20. What actually happened to my baseball glove is anyone’s guess.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined clause by writing on the line provided I for independent clause or S for subordinate clause. Then, identify the use of each subordinate clause by also writing on the line N for noun, ADJ for adjective, or ADV for adverb.

Example 1. In 1859, there lived in Australia an Englishman whose name was Thomas Austin.

1. Two thousand dollars was what the owner was asking for the old Volkswagen.
3. John Ford was a filmmaker who was known for making westerns.
4. Even though it was raining, the race continued as planned.
5. If we leave now, we can beat the traffic to the stadium.
6. Tell them whatever they need to know.
7. Whenever she is painting or sculpting, she listens to the radio.
8. That is the island where the ship ran aground.
9. The eulogy brought tears to the eyes of whoever knew Mr. Muñoz.
10. Lance warmed up with some stretches before the marathon began.

EXERCISE B  Underline the subordinate clause in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the use of the subordinate clause by writing above it N for noun, ADJ for adjective, or ADV for adverb.

Example 1. Broccoli, which is my favorite vegetable, is rich in vitamin A.

11. Until plastic wrap was invented, most people used paper.
12. One mountain that is almost as tall as Mount Everest is K2.
13. Every day, the senator rides the train that runs from Delaware to Washington, D.C.
14. Bronze is what is created by mixing copper and tin.
15. Diamonds are rare although they are made of the widely distributed element carbon.
16. That decade was a time when great strides in civil rights were made.
17. Liang felt as if she had not slept in several days.
18. Mr. Martinez set his daughter on his shoulders so that she could watch the parade.
19. Maryland is one state where a person can find plenty of fresh seafood.
20. Ms. Desai reviewed with her students what they should study for the test.
Exercises A

In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined clause by writing on the line provided IND for independent clause or SUB for subordinate clause. Then, identify the use of each subordinate clause by also writing on the line N for noun, ADJ for adjective, or ADV for adverb.

Example 1. Sub-Adj 1. The new exhibit includes poems that were written by children in other countries.

1. Burton showed his poems to whoever was willing to read them.
2. Before we begin the video, let’s make sure that everybody is comfortable.
3. The house was now for sale, even though it needed extensive repairs.
4. The clothes that got wet in the rain were soon dried.
5. Dean picked up some of the broken glass before he swept.
6. Martin looked as though he had lost his last friend.
7. The truck driver decided not to try the freeway, which was covered with a layer of ice.
8. She agreed as soon as the situation had been explained to her.
9. Finally, I remembered where I had left the keys.
10. After the cat jumped down from the sofa, Maria sat.

Exercises B

Underline the subordinate clause in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the use of the subordinate clause by writing above it N for noun, ADJ for adjective, or ADV for adverb.

Example 1. Adj 1. Vassily, who comes from Moscow, can sing several Beatles songs in Russian.

11. Since she was going downtown anyway, Clare offered to pick up the milk.
12. We decided to watch whatever Diego brought back from the video store.
13. Before he drove into the carwash, he rolled up all the windows.
14. The painting that had hung in the waiting room was now hanging in the doctor’s office.
15. Ms. Johannsen stops at her uncle’s house whenever she is in Portland.
16. What the butler saw was a matter of debate for weeks.
17. The CD, which had rolled across the carpet, came to rest against the cat.
18. Is she the singer for whom the song was written?
19. Although I had read Moby-Dick recently, I could not remember the narrator’s name.
20. Our dog will eat whatever we put in front of her.
Simple Sentences

A simple sentence contains one independent clause and no subordinate clauses.

EXAMPLE Along the edge of the porch, we planted some colorful flowers.

A simple sentence may have a compound subject, a compound verb, or both.

EXAMPLE Katya and I dug four inches into the rich soil and sowed twelve grape hyacinth bulbs.

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, draw one line under each subject and two lines under each verb.

**Example 1.** The monkeys and apes will stay here or move on.

1. Sally and Anne both take music lessons weekly.
2. I climbed that oak tree and swam in the creek.
3. Steve helped Roseanne with the puzzle and then washed the dishes.
4. The parrot said “Cat for sale” and flapped its wings.
5. All of a sudden, Dale and Amy burst into the room and grabbed the water jug.
6. In April the company will increase its profits.
7. Kim and Ted will go to Africa with Jade and photograph wildlife.
8. Both the painting and the sketch show the meadow in the morning.
9. This one and that one will be sold at the auction tomorrow.
10. After all of the hurry and bustle, a week or two at the beach sounded wonderful.

**Exercise B** On each of the lines below, write your own simple sentence. Then, circle each subject and each verb.

**Example 1.** The sun rose and warmed the hillside.

11. ________________________________
12. ________________________________
13. ________________________________
14. ________________________________
15. ________________________________
Compound Sentences

A compound sentence contains two or more independent clauses and no subordinate clauses.

The clauses of a compound sentence may be joined by
- a comma and a coordinating conjunction (and, but, for, nor, or, so, or yet)
- a semicolon
- a semicolon, a conjunctive adverb, and a comma

Examples
- Luisa Ortega is in my English class, and we have become good friends this year.
- Recently, the Ortegas invited me to a campground for the weekend; I eagerly accepted the invitation.
- The family brought along a large tent; however, they did not use it for sleeping.

Exercise
Underline the independent clauses in each of the following sentences. Then, write S above each subject and V above each verb.

Example
1. The Ortegas put their sleeping bags out under the stars, but I preferred the tent.

1. I fear all kinds of wild creatures, but the family very kindly did not tease me about my apprehensions.
2. The family’s black Labrador retriever evidently shared my fears, for he joined me in the tent.
3. In the middle of the night, I awoke to a strange sound; I immediately became frightened.
4. I was alone in the tent, for the dog had left.
5. Suddenly, the dog bounded into the tent, and within seconds the tent collapsed on top of us both!
6. The noise awoke the others, and I felt embarrassed!
7. Luisa crawled out of her sleeping bag, and together we pitched the tent again.
8. Then, Luisa returned to her sleeping bag, and I lay down on my cot in the tent.
9. Later that night, it rained, so the Ortegas ran to the tent.
10. I, along with the dog, remained dry; however, the Ortegas, in their scramble to the tent, were drenched!
**Exercise**  In each of the following sentences, draw one line under each subject and two lines under each verb. Then, on the line provided, identify the sentence by writing S for simple or C for compound.

**Example 1.** David Attenborough has studied many unusual creatures and has written about their unique habitats and behaviors.

1. I hurried over to Michael’s house and met Rafiq on the way.
2. The lightning struck the radio towers on the hill several times but did not damage them.
3. The blinking light grew dim, and then it flashed several times.
4. The gulls circle the fishing boat; they are hoping for a quick meal.
5. The purple lantana and the red salvia look pretty and attract both bees and butterflies.
6. After school I feed the rabbits, and Kris looks after the guinea pigs.
7. In the evening the Korean restaurant opens and welcomes crowds of hungry diners.
8. Patty and Carla are throwing Hilton a surprise party in their big backyard sometime next weekend.
9. The crab scuttled quickly into the water, for it saw a heron nearby.
10. I left, but Marcy stayed.
Complex Sentences

A complex sentence contains one independent clause and at least one subordinate clause.

**EXAMPLE**

Even though it **was** a gray, rainy day, Pilar **looked** forward to her walk in the park.

**INDEPENDENT CLAUSE**
Pilar looked forward to her walk in the park

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSE**
Even though it **was** a gray, rainy day

**Exercise**

In each of the following sentences, draw one line under the independent clause and two lines under each subordinate clause. Then, write **S** above each subject and **V** above each verb.

1. Pilar looked for tiny fish and snails where the pond was shallow.
2. As she watched the fish and snails, she thought about a career in marine biology.
3. Her career plans had been all that she could think about since the Science Club took a field trip to a well-known oceanographic center.
4. Because the center was on a quiet shoreline, the scientists could study hundreds of forms of marine life.
5. Some students who had gone to the center last year had snorkeled around the tide pools.
6. Pilar became interested in Scripps Institution of Oceanography, which is a well-known oceanographic institute in San Diego, California.
7. Because her school computer had Internet access, Pilar could learn more about Scripps and marine biology.
8. First, she learned about research ships and their equipment when she looked at the Scripps Web site.
9. After she read an interview with a marine biologist, Pilar felt confident that marine biology was the career for her.
10. From the interview she learned that a marine biologist should have a good education, care about the environment, and enjoy travel.
Compound Sentence or Complex Sentence?

**A compound sentence** contains two or more independent clauses and no subordinate clauses.

**EXAMPLE**

Today, no humans live on the island, but it is still home to a wide variety of birds.

**INDEPENDENT CLAUSES**

Today, no humans live on the island
it is still home to a wide variety of birds

**A complex sentence** contains one independent clause and at least one subordinate clause.

**EXAMPLE**

Although no humans live on the island today, it is still home to a wide variety of birds.

**INDEPENDENT CLAUSE**

it is still home to a wide variety of birds

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSE**

Although no humans live on the island today

---

**Exercise**

In each of the following sentences, draw one line under each subject and two lines under each verb. Then, on the line provided, identify the sentence by writing **Cd** for compound or **Cx** for complex.

**Example Cx 1.** Louisiana and Mississippi, which are two Southern states, border the Gulf of Mexico.

_____ 1. Iowa is not near any oceans, but the Mississippi River makes up its eastern border.

_____ 2. On the west coast, California borders Mexico, and Washington borders Canada.

_____ 3. Hawaii is the only state that does not lie on the North American mainland.

_____ 4. I learned that the northernmost state is Alaska.

_____ 5. Texas is quite big, but Alaska is bigger.

_____ 6. If you visit Death Valley in California, you will be 282 feet below sea level.

_____ 7. The longest river in the United States is the Missouri River; the largest lake in the United States is Lake Michigan.

_____ 8. Michigan, which resembles a mitten, sits between Lake Michigan and Lake Huron.

_____ 9. I looked at a map, and then I showed Dana my home state.

_____ 10. Dana lived in Canada before her family moved to New York, where her mother taught English.
Compound-Complex Sentences

7d. A compound-complex sentence contains two or more independent clauses and at least one subordinate clause.

**Example**  Matt would have broken the school record, but he stumbled when his right foot hit the last hurdle in the race.

**INDEPENDENT CLAUSES**
Matt would have broken the school record
he stumbled

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSE**
when his right foot hit the last hurdle in the race

**Exercise** In each of the following sentences, draw one line under every independent clause and two lines under every subordinate clause. Then, write S above each subject and V above each verb.

**Example 1.** When Thora Andersen came to this country, she enjoyed her new freedom, but she also worked very hard.

1. Cece went to Chile during the winter vacation, but her older brother stayed home because he had made plans with some friends.

2. When Mr. Tolstoi entered the United States, he knew only a few words of English, but his wife was fluent in the language.

3. The two young men had avoided injuries because they had worn their seat belts, but the driver of the other car was not as fortunate.

4. Vegetarians, who do not eat meat, should watch their diets; they should eat nutritionally balanced meals.

5. Although both were tired, Ahnawake went to her soccer practice, and Carl went to his piano lesson.

6. The two dogs barked at each other constantly until the sun rose; consequently, none of us got much sleep last night.

7. You should shut the gate whenever you leave the backyard; otherwise, the dogs may get out.

8. When we went to the science museum, we attended a lecture on electricity; after the lecture, we visited some of the exhibits.

9. As we left the library, the rain pelted down, so we rushed back inside.

10. Aunt Eudora was born in Nashville, but when she was five years old, she and her family moved to Memphis, where she lived for the rest of her life.
Complex or Compound-Complex?

**7c.** A complex sentence contains one independent clause and at least one subordinate clause.

**EXAMPLE** Although Emma is a talented singer, she did not audition for the eighth grade’s musical play.

**INDEPENDENT CLAUSE** she did not audition for the eighth grade’s musical play

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSE** Although Emma is a talented singer

---

**7d.** A compound-complex sentence contains two or more independent clauses and at least one subordinate clause.

**EXAMPLE** Emma is a talented singer, but she did not audition for the eighth grade’s musical play because she needed more time for her studies.

**INDEPENDENT CLAUSES**

Emma is a talented singer

she did not audition for the eighth grade’s musical play

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSE**

because she needed more time for her studies

---

**EXERCISE** In each of the following sentences, draw one line under each subject and two lines under each verb. Then, on the line provided, identify the sentence by writing Cx for complex or Cd-Cx for compound-complex.

Example **Cd-Cx** 1. I believe that my birthstone is the sapphire; Roseanne’s is the opal.

____ 1. A gem is a mineral or other material that is used in jewelry and other ornaments.

____ 2. Some of the gems that you see are natural; others are artificial.

____ 3. Laney said that scientists can make sapphires, rubies, and emeralds in laboratories.

____ 4. Some gems occur in igneous rock, which forms when hot, molten material cools.

____ 5. Other gems occur in metamorphic rock, which forms under great heat and pressure; still others occur in sedimentary rock, which typically forms when water, wind, or ice deposits sand, gravel, and other materials.

____ 6. I asked Mr. Catalano whether pearls are made by oysters, and he said yes.

____ 7. When light travels through a well-cut diamond, the diamond glitters with different colors.

____ 8. The type of gem cut that is called the brilliant cut has fifty-eight facets.

____ 9. Diamonds are very valuable because they are very durable and brilliant, but some emeralds are even more valuable.

____ 10. Perhaps the most beautiful of all pearls is La Pellegrina, which is from India.
Review A: Classifying Sentences According to Structure

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, draw one line under every independent clause and two lines under every subordinate clause. Then, on the line provided, classify the sentence by writing **S** for simple, **Cd** for compound, **Cx** for complex, or **Cd-Cx** for compound-complex.

**Example**

1. Many of the novels that Agatha Christie wrote have been made into films.

   1. Suspense novels are extremely popular, and many readers especially enjoy those by Agatha Christie.

   2. Christie’s first detective novel was *The Mysterious Affair at Styles*.

   3. Hercule Poirot, who is perhaps her most famous character, is the Belgian detective who solves the murder cases in many of her books.

   4. In *Murder on the Orient Express*, Poirot expertly interrogates many of the passengers on the train before he solves the case.

   5. Miss Marple, another detective of Christie’s, is my favorite character.


   7. In this mystery several people are suspects, for each has a possible motive, but Miss Marple sets an ingenious trap for the murderer.

   8. When I visited England last summer, I saw *The Mousetrap*, a suspense play by Christie, and I also toured her home in Devon.

   9. Because the clues in *The Mousetrap* were hidden so well, the ending surprised nearly everyone in the audience.

   10. Currently, I am reading *Death on the Nile*; I have not seen the movie yet.

**EXERCISE B** Classify each of the following sentences by writing on the line provided **S** for simple, **Cd** for compound, **Cx** for complex, or **Cd-Cx** for compound-complex.

**Example**

1. Do you know what the principal cause of most forest fires is?

   11. I will make the salad if you will make the lemonade.

   12. Amy, who is a three-year-old with an odd sense of humor, sometimes hides in strange places; yesterday I found her in the broom closet.

   13. What kinds of tricks does your dog do, Darren?

   14. The person in the middle is my cousin Josie, and the one to her left is Uncle Timothy.

   15. When I have finished all of my chores, I will sit outside for a while and read.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, draw one line under every independent clause and two lines under every subordinate clause. Then, on the line provided, classify the sentence by writing S for simple, Cd for compound, Cx for complex, or Cd-Cx for compound-complex.

Example  Cx  1. Did you know that some bored surfers created the sport of skateboarding?

_____ 1. If you are a surfer, you may enjoy skateboarding, for the sport is similar to surfing.
_____ 2. Some skateboards are made from wood; others are made from plastic or fiberglass.
_____ 3. At first, skateboards had roller-skate wheels, but today’s boards have special wheels that are much easier to control.
_____ 4. I bought an inexpensive skateboard and customized it.
_____ 5. When the skater shifts his or her weight, the board turns.
_____ 6. My brother taught me how to skate.
_____ 7. Some skaters practice every day, but I practice only on weekends.
_____ 8. When you skate, you should wear kneepads, elbow pads, and a helmet.
_____ 9. Schools in my area often sponsor contests for skateboarders; in fact, Lakeside Middle School is holding a contest this Saturday.
_____ 10. I will not compete in the contest, but I will watch my brother as he competes.

EXERCISE B  Classify each of the following sentences by writing on the line provided S for simple, Cd for compound, Cx for complex, or Cd-Cx for compound-complex.

Example  S  1. Tyrone and I saw a horror movie together.

_____ 11. Some scenes in the movie became too scary for me; consequently, I excused myself and went to the lobby.
_____ 12. I think that many people in the audience left during the scariest scenes.
_____ 13. At one point Tyrone got the hiccups and rushed out for some water.
_____ 14. At times while Tyrone was gone, I turned my head away from the screen and closed my eyes, but I still saw the ugly monster with the glaring yellow eyes.
_____ 15. As we rushed out of the theater to meet our parents, both Tyrone and I said that we could hardly wait to see the sequel.
Review C: Classifying Sentences According to Structure

**EXERCISE**  On the lines provided, write your own sentences, using a variety of sentence structures. Circle each subject and each verb. Then, classify each sentence as *simple, compound, complex, or compound-complex.*

**Example 1.** Lynette and I will study math as soon as we get back from soccer practice.—Complex

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

5. 

6. 

7. 

8. 

9. 

10.
Subject-Verb Agreement

**Number** is the form a word takes to indicate whether the word is singular or plural.

**Exercise A** Above each of the following words, write S for singular or P for plural.

**Examples** 1. woman

2. women

3. cases

4. book

5. pencil

6. stereos

7. them

8. wish

9. mice

10. knuckle

11. feet

12. she

13. few

14. spoons

15. pin

16. lemon

17. plate

18. tribes

19. shelves

20. yam

**Exercise B** On the lines provided, write the plural form of each of the following words.

**Example** 1. chicken **chickens**

21. person

22. dentist

23. cup

24. audience

25. reporter

26. hawk

27. actor

28. cow

29. scientist

30. potato
Subject-Verb Agreement B

8b. A verb should agree in number with its subject.

(1) Singular subjects take singular verbs.

(2) Plural subjects take plural verbs.

When a sentence contains a verb phrase, the first helping verb in the verb phrase agrees with the subject.

**EXAMPLES**

Our favorite **sport** is soccer. [The singular verb *is* agrees with the singular subject *sport.*]

We have been playing soccer in the park. [The plural helping verb *have* agrees with the plural subject *We.*]

---

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, underline the verb in parentheses that agrees with its subject.

**Example 1.** Soccer (**is, are**) the world’s most popular team sport.

1. Our cat (**like, likes**) to watch television with us, especially the nature shows.

2. The entire class (**enjoy, enjoys**) the reading assignment every week.

3. Before he became a lawyer, my uncle Nacio (**was, were**) a high-wire performer in the circus.

4. This music (**has, have**) elements of harmony that are very complex.

5. (**Is, Are**) Rafael usually first in line for every new movie in town?

6. As the final plot twist is revealed, the audience (**start, starts**) to understand why the butler left the French doors open.

7. My mother (**prefer, prefers**) a good book to a good movie.

8. Many (**are, is**) curious about the mysterious building being constructed downtown.

9. Before they leave for vacation, the women (**ask, asks**) their neighbors to look after their house.

10. The grass (**is, are**) always greener after a good rain.

---

**EXERCISE B** In each of the following sentences, underline the helping verb in parentheses that agrees with its subject.

**Example 1.** Jacob (**has, have**) been exploring a salt marsh.

11. Over the past year, Jonelle (**has, have**) been collecting articles about Olympic gymnasts.

12. I read that the English actor Ralph Fiennes (**is, are**) appearing in *Hamlet* this season in London.

13. (**Do, Does**) she know yet about the letter from her brother?

14. They (**has, have**) been thinking about adopting a dog for some time now.

15. Certainly Mr. Iwaye (**do, does**) understand the importance of meeting the deadline.
EXERCISE A

In each of the following sentences, underline the verb in parentheses that agrees with its subject.

Example 1. The book in which I found these facts and figures (belongs, belong) to Ms. Najera.

1. The last people off the ship (carry, carries) their own luggage.
2. This anthology of short stories (include, includes) at least one story by Charles Baxter.
3. Songs about love often (make, makes) me cry.
4. Jim’s brother, who is an art director for television sitcoms in Hollywood, (is, are) a graduate of Carnegie Mellon University in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania.
5. The demolition of a skyscraper always (draw, draws) a crowd.
6. At the end of the story, the king of the birds (declare, declares), “I grant the eagle’s request!”
7. The solution to all of our problems (is, are) to start the project over again from scratch.
8. The potatoes from the garden (was, were) peeled before they were put into the pot.
9. Two pieces of the pie (was, were) eaten before dinner.
10. The sound of the passing ships (echo, echoes) through the fog.

EXERCISE B

In each of the following sentences, circle the subject of the verb in parentheses. Then, underline the verb in parentheses that agrees with the subject.

Example 1. My favorite book of short stories (is, are) Tales of Mystery and Imagination by Edgar Allan Poe.

11. The students in my karate class (watch, watches) carefully whenever the instructor demonstrates a move.
12. The jar of lima beans (was, were) stored in the coolest section of the cellar.
13. The birthday cards that I received this year (is, are) mostly from out of town.
14. The two men, who both work the third shift at the police department, (sleep, sleeps) during the day.
15. The judges on the panel (decide, decides) which skaters will continue to the semifinals.
Subject-Verb Agreement D

8d. The following indefinite pronouns are singular: anybody, anyone, anything, each, either, everybody, everyone, everything, neither, nobody, nothing, no one, one, somebody, someone, and something.

Example 1. Everyone is responsible for bringing his or her own lunch.

8e. The following indefinite pronouns are plural: both, few, many, and several.

Example 2. Both of the girls excel at basketball.

8f. The indefinite pronouns all, any, more, most, none, and some may be singular or plural, depending on their meaning in a sentence.

Often, the object in a prepositional phrase that follows the pronoun indicates whether the pronoun is singular or plural. Usually, if the object of the preposition is singular, the pronoun is singular. If the object is plural, the pronoun is plural.

Examples 3. Some of the carrots have been sliced. [Some refers to the plural object carrots.]
    Some of the salad is in the refrigerator. [Some refers to the singular object salad.]

Exercise Circle the indefinite pronoun in each of the following sentences. Then, underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Example 1. Most of the cups (was, were) unbroken after the earthquake.
1. Something about the candidate’s answers (has, have) been bothering me ever since the debate.
2. Both of the dogs (has, have) already been treated for heartworm.
3. All of the stuff in the attic (need, needs) to be dusted before the yard sale.
4. Neither of the movies (is, are) very good.
5. (Have, Has) not several of these dogs already won awards?
6. Everybody who is registered for the class (read, reads) the same books.
7. No one in the play (was, were) prepared for the overwhelming response of the audience on opening night.
8. (Is, Are) any of the dough ready to be baked?
9. The director is pleased that more of the singers (have, has) memorized the score for this rehearsal than for the last rehearsal.
10. Somebody among the reporters covering the trial (is, are) getting inside information from the district attorney.
Subject-Verb Agreement E

8d. The following indefinite pronouns are singular: anybody, anyone, anything, each, either, everybody, everyone, everything, neither, nobody, nothing, no one, one, somebody, someone, and something.

Example  Each of these lakes has good fishing and boating.

8e. The following indefinite pronouns are plural: both, few, many, and several.

Example Few of the trails are rocky.

8f. The indefinite pronouns all, any, more, most, none, and some may be singular or plural, depending on their meaning in a sentence.

Often, the object in a prepositional phrase that follows the pronoun indicates whether the pronoun is singular or plural. Usually, if the object of the preposition is singular, the pronoun is singular. If the object is plural, the pronoun is plural.

Examples Most of the campground is occupied. [Most refers to the singular object campground.]  
Most of the campsites are occupied. [Most refers to the plural object campsites.]

Exercise Circle the indefinite pronoun in each of the following sentences. Then, underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Example 1. Many of the ocean’s creatures (looks, look) strange to us.

1. Few of the world’s sharks (grows, grow) to be sixty feet long.
2. One of the most interesting sharks (is, are) the whale shark.
3. Each of a whale shark’s eggs (is, are) quite large.
4. “(Has, Have) anyone here ever seen a whale shark’s egg?” asked the tour guide.
5. None of the sharks (swims, swim) toward the visitors.
6. Some of the other sea creatures (is, are) frightening, too.
7. Many of the visitors (screams, scream).
8. Few of us (has, have) seen a giant jellyfish before.
9. Several of the park’s divers (follows, follow) a manta ray.
10. Everyone in our class (seems, seem) to be having a good time at the ocean park.
Subject-Verb Agreement F

8g. Subjects joined by and usually take a plural verb.

A compound subject that names only one person or thing takes a singular verb.

One respected professor and researcher at Tuskegee Institute was George Washington Carver.

8h. Singular subjects joined by or or nor take a singular verb. Plural subjects joined by or or nor take a plural verb.

EXAMPLES  Neither poverty nor any other hardship was too great an obstacle for Carver.
Neither difficult times nor disappointments were too great an obstacle for Carver.

8i. When a singular subject and a plural subject are joined by or or nor, the verb agrees with the subject nearer the verb.

EXAMPLE  At first, neither the local farmers nor Carver’s closest friend was interested in his ideas.

EXERCISE  Circle the subjects of the verb in parentheses in each of the following sentences. Then, underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Example  1. Plants, flowers, and soil (was, were) interesting to Carver.

1. Plants and flowers (is, are) featured on the cover of this book about Carver’s life.
2. The author and illustrator of the book (is, are) the same person.
3. According to the book, grief and sorrow (was, were) part of Carver’s early life.
4. Neither his mother nor his father (was, were) alive to raise Carver.
5. At the time, slaveholding and slave trading (was, were) widespread.
6. Neither Carver nor many other African Americans (was, were) able to find a college that would enroll them.
7. Neither the large universities nor the local college (was, were) accepting applications from African Americans.
8. Just laws and the strict enforcement of them (was, were) needed.
9. Also described in the book (is, are) Carver’s experiments and discoveries.
10. An innovative educator and scientist (was, were) George Washington Carver.
Subject-Verb Agreement G

When the subject follows the verb, find the subject and make sure the verb agrees with it.

EXAMPLES

Here is the list of topics from which you may choose.

When are these books due back to the library?

Exercise A

For each of the following sentences, underline the word or word group in parentheses that correctly completes the sentence.

Example 1. When (do, does) the teacher want us to finish the assignment?

1. Why (is, are) your parents going to Beijing?

2. Here (is, are) the magazines you were looking for.

3. (Has, Have) the students returned from their field trip yet?

4. (There is, There are) a snail crawling across the aquarium.

5. Where (is, are) the cat?

6. (Do, Does) all of your brothers and sisters speak Vietnamese?

7. When (was, were) the latest episodes of the program scheduled to begin?

8. There (is, are) many reasons you should read that book.

9. How (do, does) those new shoes feel?

10. Brittany, here (is, are) the books on astronomy you ordered.

Exercise B

Circle the subject or subjects of the verb in parentheses in each of the following sentences. Then, underline the word or word group in parentheses that correctly completes the sentence.

Example 1. (Has, Have) anyone in your family ever learned to water-ski?

11. (Are, Is) your little brother a finalist in the state gymnastics tournament?

12. (There’s, There are) over forty species of birds that pass through my backyard.

13. How (do, does) bees make honey?

14. Here (lie, lies) the ruins of the colony.

15. When (is, are) your cousins from Guatemala coming to visit?

16. (Do, Does) anyone here have change for a twenty-dollar bill?

17. There (was, were) no excuses for what Dudley had done.

18. What (do, does) the Andersons want to know about the school system?

19. (Has, Have) someone told you the rules of our game?

20. Here (is, are) Amy and her sisters!
The contractions don’t and doesn’t should agree with their subjects.

**Examples**

These shoes don’t fit me very well.

Doesn’t she go to your school?

**Exercise A**

In each of the following sentences, underline the word in parentheses that correctly completes the sentence.

**Example 1.** This old recording (don’t, doesn’t) sound like me.

1. Minneapolis and Toronto (don’t, doesn’t) have the climate for palm trees.
2. They (don’t, doesn’t) plan to attend the concert tonight.
3. (Don’t, Doesn’t) her brothers have a copy of the book?
4. They (don’t, doesn’t) plan to go to the reunion.
5. Macaroni and cheese (don’t, doesn’t) sound very good to me when I’m sick.
6. Only a few of the choir (don’t, doesn’t) know the words to the song.
7. (Don’t, Doesn’t) she attend ballet class with your brother?
8. It (don’t, doesn’t) matter how you fix the bicycle as long as you do it by Friday.
9. Anyone who thinks cricket is easy (don’t, doesn’t) understand the game.
10. (Don’t, Doesn’t) everyone wonder about where the stars come from?

**Exercise B**

Complete each of the following sentences by inserting the correct contraction, doesn’t or don’t, on the line provided.

**Example 1.** She ___________ think she can finish the project on time.

11. Mr. Maduzia ___________ know anyone else on the softball team.
12. ___________ someone have the answer to my question?
13. Dr. Anna Kim ___________ work at this clinic any longer.
14. Paolo ___________ believe in UFOs, but he does believe in ghosts.
15. These ficus plants ___________ look very healthy to me.
16. ___________ you think we should begin the test now?
17. The video box ___________ say who directed the film.
18. He ___________ think you should go, does he?
19. The opera ___________ seem as long in performance as it did in rehearsal.
20. Anyone who ___________ own a dog or a cat wouldn’t understand how I feel.
Subject-Verb Agreement I

A collective noun may be either singular or plural, depending on its meaning in a sentence.

The singular form of a collective noun names a group of persons, animals, or things. It takes a singular verb when it refers to the group as a unit. It takes a plural verb when it refers to the individual parts or members of the group.

EXAMPLES

The team has been practicing since March. [The team practices as a unit.]
The team have been discussing their strategies with one another. [Individual members discuss with one another.]

EXERCISE A

In each of the following sentences, underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Example 1. The orchestra (is, are) rehearsing this afternoon at three o’clock.
1. Before each game, the team (practice, practices) their kicks.
2. As Napoleon once said, an army (travel, travels) on its stomach.
3. The committee generally (decide, decides) on its course of action pretty quickly.
4. After the rain, the entire herd (graze, grazes) peacefully along the hillside.
5. The Activist Alliance (hold, holds) its annual meeting this week in Fargo.
6. As the comedian leaves the stage, the audience (applaud, applauds) wildly.
7. The flock (lift, lifts) into the air a few birds at a time.
8. The evening before the big battle, the army (clean, cleans) their weapons.
9. Our family (has, have) never been able to agree on our destination for summer vacation.
10. Having reached the state semifinals, the team (are, is) celebrating their individual achievements.

EXERCISE B

On the line provided in each of the following sentences, write the correct present tense form of the verb in parentheses.

Example 1. The crowd __________ toward the stage. (surge)
11. The team __________ among themselves over who gets to go first. (bicker)
12. The committee __________ gone their separate ways for lunch. (have)
13. Every Saturday, the troop __________ individual projects to their parents. (present)
14. The public __________ each new CD from Bryn Terfel with even greater acclaim than the one before. (greet)
15. The posse __________ which among them would bring the prisoner back to town.
    (discuss)
Subject-Verb Agreement J

An expression of an amount (a measurement, a percentage, or a fraction, for example) may be singular or plural, depending on how it is used.

**Examples**

Ten dollars was my weekly allowance when I was twelve years old.

Ten dollars with consecutive serial numbers were lying on the counter.

Some nouns that are plural in form take singular verbs.

**Example**

Is mumps a contagious disease?

Some nouns that are plural in form and that name singular objects take plural verbs.

**Example**

Where are the scissors?

**Exercise A**

In the following sentences, underline the verb form in parentheses that agrees with the subject.

**Example 1.** Twenty percent of the class (is, are) absent today.

1. Fifteen dollars (was, were) a fair price for that teapot.
2. Sixty yards of fabric (is, are) necessary to make the banners for the homecoming parade.
3. Eight percent of the microchips (was, were) defective.
4. Twelve miles (seem, seems) like a long distance if you’re walking.
5. About half of the members of the club (was, were) aware of the emergency.
6. The three weeks before Christmas (feel, feels) like forever.
7. One quarter of the flour (is, are) reserved for breading the cutlets.
8. Three pies (was, were) sitting in a row on the table.
9. Three fourths of the book club’s members (has, have) not read the book yet.
10. Four gallons of gasoline (is, are) enough to get us to Grand Rapids and back.

**Exercise B**

In the following sentences, underline the verb form in parentheses that agrees with the subject.

**Example 1.** The news today from Kosovo (is, are) surprisingly good.

11. The Olympics (was, were) in Munich, Germany, that year.
12. Physics (is, are) my first class of the day.
13. (Is, Are) mumps contagious?
14. As she tips her head forward, Charlene’s eyeglasses (slip, slips) down her nose.
15. A summons (was, were) issued for the witness to appear in court the next day.
Subject-Verb Agreement K

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, underline the verb form in parentheses that agrees with the subject.

**Example 1.** *The Confessions of St. Augustine* still *(has, have)* relevance for a modern reader.

1. *The Birds* *(is, are)* one of the scariest novellas I’ve ever read.
2. He is from the Seychelles, which *(is, are)* a small island nation in the Indian Ocean.
3. *Quaker Ladies*, by Andrew Wyeth, *(is, are)* a painting that appears in my literature textbook.
4. *(Is, Are)* *The Railway Children* your favorite book?
5. Big Rapids *(seem, seems)* to be a nice place to grow up.
6. What an unsettling story *(is, are)* “The Willows,” by Algernon Blackwood!
7. *The Lusiads* *(is, are)* an epic poem about the Portuguese explorer Vasco da Gama.
8. This year, the Friends of American Writers *(award, awards)* its literature prize to *The Wild Colonial Boy.*

**Exercise B** In each of the following sentences, underline the verb form in parentheses that agrees with the subject.

**Example 1.** The chief ingredient of my mother’s marmalade *(is, are)* oranges.

11. Potatoes *(is, are)* the chief crop of my grandfather’s farm in Idaho.
12. Weekday afternoons *(is, are)* the best time to reach Julia at work.
13. A good present for Tara *(is, are)* stereo headphones.
14. The most famous product of Detroit, Michigan, *(is, are)* automobiles.
15. *(Is, Are)* books an appropriate gift for a six-month-old child?
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement A

A pronoun usually refers to a noun or another pronoun called its antecedent.

8q. A pronoun should agree in number and gender with its antecedent.

EXAMPLES

Alicia left her book bag on the school bus.
Many people like the movie because of its special effects.
The musicians are practicing for their spring concert.
Not every student has returned his or her permission slip for the field trip.

Exercise On the line provided in each of the following sentences, write a pronoun that agrees with the antecedent. Then, circle each antecedent.

Example 1. Paul loaned Nell __________ jacket.

1. Mary Ellen took __________ dog for a walk after dinner.
2. One of the men bent to pick up __________ tools.
3. Somebody left __________ books on the lawn last night.
4. Sean said that __________ was too tired to come with us to the movies.
5. Out of sheer boredom, the cat chased __________ own tail.
6. Stanley went up to __________ room to do the homework assignment.
7. Miranda hung the diploma on the wall of __________ bedroom.
8. Each of the girls on the soccer team received __________ own jersey yesterday.
9. As the sun set, the mountain cast __________ shadow across the desert.
10. Pick up the frying pan and bring __________ to me, please.
11. We stayed awake to watch the film until __________ was over.
12. If your sister gets here after I leave, tell __________ I left a casserole in the fridge.
13. Neither of the boys remembered where __________ baseball glove was.
15. Either of the men is willing to tell you what __________ saw at the accident scene.
16. Emily Dickinson often gave __________ poems away as gifts to neighbors.
17. Everybody at the office put flowers in __________ cubicle.
18. The author of The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn changed __________ name from Samuel Clemens to Mark Twain.
19. Each of the nuns lifted __________ hand to make the sign of the cross.
20. Someone hung __________ wet towel over the shower curtain.
**Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement B**

**Exercise A** On the line provided in each of the following sentences, write a pronoun that agrees with the antecedent or antecedents. Then, circle each antecedent.

**Example 1.** Every Sunday Maggie and Roger watched **their** favorite television show.

1. When we’re playing tennis, my brother and I never let the other players intimidate **him**.
2. Either Jason or Raul will bring **tool kit** to the bicycle race.
3. Brenda and Caitlin told us that **didn’t plan** to come to the party.
4. If either Brittany or Celine wants to be a successful writer, **will need to work hard**.
5. Leora and Annette pooled **resources** to buy a birthday present for Jim.
6. Please ask Glendon and Maria if **science fair project** is ready yet.
7. Did Lauryn or Marian say if **was going to** the mock trial?
8. Karen and I discussed **difference of opinion** quite calmly.
9. Frank and Tina would like the class to help **set up their display**.
10. Let Kathryn and Michael know in advance if **should bring a dish** to the party.

**Exercise B** Each of the following sentences contains an error in pronoun-antecedent agreement. Cross out the error, and write the correct pronoun above it. Then, circle each antecedent.

**Example 1.** Either Denzel or Malcolm will bring **his** soccer ball to the game.

11. Julio and Spike have brought all of his CDs to the dance.
12. Neither Faith nor Deanna knew where their bicycle was.
13. Is Melissa or Martina sure they won’t join us?
14. Let’s ask Antonia and Belle if she read the Harry Potter books.
15. Does Dutch or Pike have their notebook with him?
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement C

Some indefinite pronouns are plural, some are singular, and some may be either.

8t. Use a singular pronoun to refer to anybody, anyone, anything, each, either, everybody, everyone, everything, neither, nobody, nothing, no one, one, somebody, someone, and something.

**EXAMPLES**

- Each of the boys likes his new uniform.
- Has everybody in the club paid his or her dues?

8t. The following indefinite pronouns are plural: both, few, many, and several.

**EXAMPLE**

- Few of the explorers became lost on their way out of the cave.

8t. The indefinite pronouns all, any, more, most, none, and some may be singular or plural, depending on their meaning in a sentence.

**EXAMPLES**

- Most of the forest has already been cut down, hasn't it? [Most refers to the singular noun forest.]
- Most of the trees have already been cut down, haven't they? [Most refers to the plural noun trees.]

**EXERCISE** Each of the following sentences contains an error in pronoun-antecedent agreement. Draw a line through each incorrect pronoun, and write the correct form above it. Then, circle the antecedent.

**Example 1.** Each of the cats has its own special hiding place.

1. Some of the CDs have lost its jewel cases.
2. Few of the women’s soccer team enjoyed her stay in Helsinki.
3. Either of the brothers is willing to bring their baseball glove to the game.
4. Hasn’t anybody announced their intentions yet?
5. Many of the reporters do his or her own research.
6. All of the rosebushes in the garden have thorns on it.
7. Everyone in the class is aware of their responsibility to bring a note from home.
8. Someone on the swimming team left their goggles by the side of the pool.
9. Several of the boys joined the military after he graduated from high school.
10. Some of the people in the audience got the joke, and it laughed heartily.
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement D

Some indefinite pronouns are plural, some are singular, and some may be either.

1. Use a singular pronoun to refer to anybody, anyone, anything, each, either, everybody, everyone, everything, neither, nobody, nothing, no one, one, somebody, someone, and something.

   EXAMPLES  Has anyone lost his or her keys?
              Each of the recipes calls for wheat as its main ingredient.

2. The following indefinite pronouns are plural: both, few, many, and several.

   EXAMPLE  Several of the teachers ordered their textbooks early.

3. The indefinite pronouns all, any, more, most, none, and some may be singular or plural, depending on their meaning in a sentence.

   EXAMPLES  All of the money retained its value. [All refers to the singular noun money.]
              All of the vases retained their value. [All refers to the plural noun vases.]

EXERCISE  On the line provided in each of the following sentences, write a pronoun that agrees with its antecedent. Then, circle the antecedent.

Example 1. Several of the houses lost their roofs during the storm.

1. Each of my sisters has her own pogo stick.

2. None of the employees should reveal his password to anyone.

3. Everything the teacher said made sense the moment he said it.

4. Both of the astronomical calendars have the same nebula on their covers.

5. Several of the police officers spent holidays volunteering at the new community center.

6. If you have anything to say during the debate, please say it as succinctly as possible.

7. Neither of my grandmothers has ever revealed the secret for making jambalaya.

8. More of the palm trees have been planted this year because they look so striking along the beach.

9. One of the male interns put the clipboard down to pick up the baby.

10. Most of the radio program was written by Marta, but a few minutes of it were written by Tish.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, circle the antecedent for the pronouns in parentheses. Then, underline the pronoun that agrees with the antecedent.

Example 1. After hearing all the evidence, the jury made (its, their) decision quickly.
1. The thundering herd left a wide swath of flattened grass in (its, their) wake.
2. As the team entered the lobby, the fans began to ask for (its, their) autographs.
3. After debating all of (its, their) options, the commission issued its report.
4. The readership of the newspaper were not shy about making (its, their) opinions known.
5. The jury could not agree among (itself, themselves) what to order for lunch.
6. During the intermission, the ensemble tuned (its, their) instruments.
7. The majority of the class took (its, their) work home last night.
8. The Fantasy Society voted The Lord of the Rings (its, their) choice for Book of the Century.
9. The cast of the play took (its, their) curtain calls one at a time.
10. The crowd voted with (its, their) feet and left the debate early.

EXERCISE B  On the line provided in each of the following sentences, write a pronoun that agrees with its antecedent. Then, circle the antecedent.

Example 1. The class agreed to hold its annual party next month.
11. The troupe of actors looked good in its costumes.
12. The entire staff lined up in the parking lot to have their picture taken.
13. The committee cannot even agree among themselves.
14. After a fierce battle, the platoon took their position at the top of the ridge.
15. After winning, the team posed for photographs with their ecstatic fans.
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement F

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, circle the antecedent for the pronouns in parentheses. Then, underline the pronoun in parentheses that agrees with the antecedent.

*Example 1.* Jerrold enjoyed studying genetics because *(it, they)* combined biology and chemistry.

1. If I make fifty dollars from the carwash this weekend, I can use *(it, them)* to put a down payment on a bicycle.
2. After Luther oiled the shears, *(it, they)* were ready to use again.
3. Michiko poured the molasses and watched *(it, them)* cover the bottom of the pan.
4. Now that you've heard the news, do you think *(it, they)* will affect how you vote?
5. If you want to go to the Olympics, you have to train for *(it, them)*.
6. Sue had three dollars in her wallet, but now one of *(it, them)* is missing.
7. Vera dropped the pliers in the grass, and then spent an hour looking for *(it, them)*.
8. Mathematics was more than an interest for Leora; *(it, they)* became a passion.
9. Roxanne decided not to wear her shorts because *(it, they)* had become threadbare.
10. He only had seventy-five cents; would *(it, they)* be enough to pay for the juice?

**Exercise B** Each of the following sentences contains an error in pronoun-antecedent agreement. Cross out each incorrectly used pronoun, and write the correct pronoun above it. Then, circle the antecedent.

*Example 1.* Please put the scissors back when you are finished with *(it)*.

11. Francesca decided to take civics because she could fit them into her schedule.
12. Malik managed to avoid getting measles even though everyone he knew had them.
13. Take the binoculars out of its case, please.
14. Did you hear the news? Could they be any worse?
15. Of all the pants you could have worn, that could be the worst.
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement G

8x. Use a singular pronoun to refer to the title of a creative work (such as a book, song, movie, or painting).

**EXAMPLE** Have you read "The Bells" by E. A. Poe? It is one of my favorite poems to read aloud.

8y. Use a singular pronoun to refer to the name of a country, city, or organization.

**EXAMPLE** Calloway Motors will have its grand opening on Saturday.

**EXERCISE** Most of the following sentences contain an error in pronoun-antecedent agreement. Draw a line through each incorrectly used pronoun, and write the correct pronoun above it. If a sentence is already correct, write C next to the sentence number.

**Example** 1. Hartwig Interiors is redesigning their own showroom.

1. Discount Appliances used to be located on Burnet Avenue; they stood where a beautiful orchard used to grow.

2. *The Cowboys* is one of my dad’s favorite movies, and he has seen it several times.

3. After Tranh was assigned to read *Great Expectations*, the Charles Dickens masterpiece, he managed to finish them over the weekend.

4. The Netherlands is also known as Holland, and its citizens are known as the Dutch.

5. The Sons of the Desert, devoted to the comic films of Laurel and Hardy, was founded in 1964, and my grandfather has been a member of them since 1967.

6. After I read "Flowers for Algernon," I found out that Hollywood has adapted them for the movies twice.

7. As you read T. S. Eliot’s "The Hollow Men," consider the effect of them on your imagination.

8. Jacques Offenbach never completed his opera *The Tales of Hoffmann*; Ernest Guiraud finished them after Offenbach’s death.

9. When you come to the Narrows, where so many ships have gone down, go around them.

10. Several of my uncles are members of the Knights of Columbus; my father has also been a member of it.
Exercise A  Circle the subject in each of the following sentences. If the underlined verb does not agree with the subject, cross out the verb and write the correct verb above it. If the sentence is already correct, write C before the sentence number.

Example 1. The sailors on the ship has all been granted shore leave.

1. My shoes and my shirt lies at the end of the bed.
2. Either Dr. Chen or Dr. Montoya plan to perform the operation.
3. Don’t someone who has read the books have something to say?
4. One by one, the flock of birds have descended into the trees.
5. Afternoons are the best time for a nap.
6. The officers of the Forest Service doesn’t approve of campfires during a drought.
7. Gymnastics or electronics is the only class with spaces available.
8. There are many students who use study hall to finish their homework.
9. Most of the horses grazes in the upper pasture during the summertime.
10. Both of the flute players hopes to audition for the first chair in the orchestra.

Exercise B  Circle the subject in each of the following sentences. Then, underline the form of the verb or contraction in parentheses that agrees with the subject.

Example 1. Everyone in the senior class (is, are) looking forward to the field trip.

11. Neither Jay nor Sonya (is, are) going to the folk festival this year.
12. Each of the children (has, have) gone to bed by now.
13. Anyone who listens to the singer’s music (has, have) to get up and dance.
14. Our cat Conrad and our dog Padgett (like, likes) to sleep on the bed.
15. Katherine told me that the League of Women Voters (is, are) sponsoring a debate between the two candidates this Wednesday.
16. All of my aunts and uncles (remember, remembers) when my grandmother’s birthday is.
17. (Doesn’t, Don’t) most people in our town recycle their bottles and cans?
18. Either of the girls (is, are) happy to help you rake your lawn.
19. When (is, are) the football team scheduled to play Reed City?
20. Enrique told me that he (don’t, doesn’t) care for okra.
Review B: Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement

**EXERCISE A** Circle the antecedent for the underlined pronoun in each of the following sentences. If the underlined pronoun does not agree with the antecedent, cross out the pronoun and write the correct pronoun over it.

*Example 1.*

All of the young men have left his childhoods behind.

1. Many of the science fair contestants have brought his or her own equipment.
2. One of the girls has gotten mud all over their shoes.
3. Every member of the class brought their own pencil to the test on Friday.
4. Either Sergio or Michael will need to bring their boombox to the party.
5. No one in the family remembered to bring their key to the cabin by the lake.
6. Aren’t all of your uncles taking a fishing pole with him on vacation?
7. A few of the students told his or her parents about the pop quiz on Friday.
8. Each of the kittens cried for their mother.
9. One of the young women was certain that the award for Best Class Song was going to them.
10. Some of the books showed Princess Diana on its covers.

**EXERCISE B** In each of the following sentences, circle the antecedent for the pronouns in parentheses. Then, underline the pronoun in parentheses that agrees with the antecedent.

*Example 1.*

Each of the children handed Santa Claus (his or her, their) Christmas list.

11. The Barretts of Wimpole Street is my mother’s favorite film; she has seen (it, them) several times.
12. The cast of the play decided to have a party after (its, their) last performance.
13. One of the ships was able to unload most of (its, their) cargo before the hurricane struck.
14. The Center for South and Southeast Asian Studies will publish Professor Becker’s book as part of (its, their) publication series.
15. Having mastered electronics, Judith is very good at explaining (it, them) to the class.
16. Have you ever wondered why birds resting on a branch or a telephone wire tuck (its, their) heads under their wings during a storm?
17. The council didn’t get to (its, their) final vote until nine o’clock that night.
18. Someone from the boys’ basketball team left (his, their) shoes on the bench.
19. Those young women will carry (her, their) own luggage onto the plane.
20. Neither of the girls can tell me where (her, their) sleeping bag is.
EXERCISE A  Most of the following sentences contain an error in subject-verb agreement. Cross out the incorrect form of the verb, and write the correct verb form above it. If a sentence is already correct, write C next to the sentence number.

Example 1. Grand Rapids, Michigan, are a center of furniture manufacturing.

1. The sound of all these birds echo all around the courtyard.
2. Economics seem like a difficult subject to some people.
3. Fifteen feet of rope were necessary to secure the boat to the dock.
4. Moving with one mind, the crowd surge toward the stage.
5. Don’t he know which way he’s going?
6. Where is the books that I left on the kitchen counter?
7. Either Kadonna or her brother is responsible for sending out the invitations for the reunion.
8. Everybody who contributed to the charities are welcome at the annual dinner.
9. About ten percent of the furniture are sitting in a warehouse.
10. Monday afternoons are the best time to make an appointment with Dr. Secada.

EXERCISE B  Most of the following sentences contain an error in pronoun-antecedent agreement. Cross out the incorrect pronoun, and write the correct pronoun form above it. If a sentence is already correct, write C next to the sentence number.

Example 1. The Netherlands is in Europe; adjacent to them are Belgium and Germany.

11. Mikki has saved fifty dollars; she plans to use them to buy a present.
12. As soon as we heard the news from France, we passed them along to our friends at home.
13. After seeing the film Darby O’Gill and the Little People, Declan recommended them to his brother.
14. Candace or Melanie will bring their soccer ball to the championship match.
15. The gymnastics team discussed their fears about going to the meet.
16. No one who has ever seen Angkor Wat will ever forget their first impression of it.
17. We heard that some of the boys’ ski team are bringing his own skis.
18. Carl or David will bring his football to the game.
19. After you’re done with the binoculars, please put it back in the case.
20. The jury debated the verdict among itself.
Exercise Each of the following sentences contains an error in pronoun-antecedent agreement or subject-verb agreement. Draw a line through each incorrect verb or pronoun, and write the correct verb form or pronoun form above it.

Examples 1. Neither Los Angeles nor San Francisco are the capital of California.

2. Either Dad or Uncle Tom will pick us up in their car.

1. Nicoletta or Jacqueline will present their book report to the class tomorrow.
2. Everybody in our classes were informed in advance about the change in schedule.
3. Some of the best paintings are next-door; let’s look at it first.
4. Here is the books you ordered online, Ms. Shimeda.
5. Each of the priests spoke to their own congregation.
6. Some of the groceries has already been placed in the pantry.
7. Either the players or the coach call timeout.
8. A theater and a rehearsal room was added to the high school last year.
9. Everyone who completed their project on time was rewarded with a bright, shiny apple.
10. Nobody in the caravan were paying attention when the camel went astray.
11. The Cho family will take their vacation this year in Thailand.
12. When the shears were broken, Eric found time to repair it.
13. Doesn’t the dog and cat get along?
14. Macaroni and cheese are my favorite dish.
15. If you spill all of the cereal, make sure to clean them up.
16. Neither Uncle Lyle nor Uncle Tector remembered where their boots were.
17. The presence of thousands of peacekeeping troops assure the villagers of their safety.
18. When presented with a legal summons, a citizen has an obligation to respond to them.
19. We will listen to half of Nights in the Garden of Spain this morning, and we will hear the rest of them this afternoon.
20. Neither the students nor the players is likely to forget the homecoming game.
The Principal Parts of Verbs

The four principal parts of a verb are the base form, the present participle, the past, and the past participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE FORM</th>
<th>PRESENT PARTICIPLE</th>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>[is] arriving</td>
<td>arrived</td>
<td>[have] arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk</td>
<td>[is] talking</td>
<td>talked</td>
<td>[have] talked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>[is] swimming</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>[have] swum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise** In each of the following sentences, identify the form of the underlined verb by writing above it B for base form, PresP for present participle, P for past, or PastP for past participle.

**Example 1.** The dogs are rolling in the grass.

1. Let's sing another song.
2. He has heard about the failed experiment.
3. Indira left for Africa late Sunday afternoon.
4. The ducks have been paddling around on the surface of the lake.
5. I understood the speech, but I didn’t agree with it.
6. Jonathan had been to England once before.
7. In the morning, the eagle’s eggs hatched.
8. Will you help Gina clean the kitchen, please?
9. The helicopters have landed next to the soccer field.
10. To save money, I am trying to buy fast food less often.
11. Is it true that she made them leave early?
12. The sun has set already, hasn’t it?
13. Suddenly, the snake slithered quietly away.
14. The Ferris wheel is slowly coming to a halt.
15. Astonished by the crowds, we stood in a doorway and waited.
16. Cynthia, have you ever seen a morning glory open?
17. The goalie leaped into the air and grabbed the ball.
18. I hope the guards let us get close enough to see the queen.
19. After they had swept, they carried out the recycling.
20. I thought you were singing in tonight’s performance, Mikki.
Regular Verbs

9b. A regular verb forms its past and past participle by adding -d or -ed to the base form.

Example We recently adopted a Chihuahua puppy.

Exercise On the blank in each of the following sentences, write the correct past or past participle form of the verb given in parentheses.

Example 1. (collect) How many baseball cards have you collected?
1. (talk) When he first talked to me, I thought he was from Georgia.
2. (suppose) They were supposed to help put up the decorations.
3. (land) The spaceship landed on the cold surface of the planet.
4. (name) Kelly has a dog that she named Soda.
5. (enjoy) Carla has enjoyed the classes she is taking.
6. (consider) I considered him my best friend.
7. (close) Have you closed the front door?
8. (open) The archaeologists carefully opened the door to the tomb.
9. (please) The jester pleased the court with his antics.
10. (stay) Have you stayed with her before, Susan?
11. (predict) On the news last night, the forecaster predicted snow.
12. (watch) The mother cat has watched over her kittens carefully.
14. (cheer) Your funny story cheered her up.
15. (wait) The patients have all waited here for a while now.
16. (gain) What, after all, have they gained by being spiteful?
17. (promise) If she has promised, I know she will keep her word.
18. (walk) The last people to finish the 10K race waved to me as they walked across the finish line.
19. (return) I returned to my seat and buckled my seat belt.
20. (expect) The dogs had expected to go for a walk.
Irregular Verbs A

9c. An irregular verb forms its past and past participle in some other way than by adding –d or –ed to the base form.

An irregular verb forms its past and past participle in one of these ways: changing consonants, changing vowels, changing consonants and vowels, or making no change at all.

**Examples**  The ship sank in 1912.

*Have you read* The Pearl by John Steinbeck?

**Exercise**  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct verb form in parentheses.

**Example 1.** Have you *(saw, seen)* any of the movies showing now?

1. The strong wind has *(blew, blawn)* the papers about the room.
2. In the morning, the delivery van *(come, came)* with our new washing machine.
3. The mosquito *(bited, bit)* my leg twice.
4. Something the puppy had *(ate, eaten)* made it feel unwell.
5. I have *(become, became)* sleepy.
6. Have you ever *(broken, broke)* any bones?
7. We *(brought, bringed)* some pecans from our yard, Grandma.
8. When was that project *(began, begun)*?
9. I think the inner tube in my front tire *(burst, burst)* when I went over the curb.
10. What have you *(buyed, bought)*, Tony?
11. Have you *(cut, cutted)* any daisies to put on the dinner table?
12. The boy *(chose, choosed)* the straighter path.
13. What kind of table have you two *(built, build)*?
14. I think that lunch *(costed, cost)* more than Laura thought it would.
15. Daniel or Frank *(caught, catched)* a baseball that was batted into the bleachers.
16. Julie, has something *(fallen, fell)* over in there?
17. Roseanne had *(drawn, drew)* a picture of a mockingbird.
18. We just *(drove, drived)* to Cassville, Missouri.
19. Have you *(drank, drunk)* all the milk?
20. Janette *(did, done)* more than anyone else to make sure they succeeded.
Irregular Verbs B

An irregular verb forms its past and past participle in some other way than by adding -d or -ed to the base form.

EXAMPLES For a snack I ate some grapes.
Has he fed the horses?

EXERCISE In each of the following sentences, underline the correct verb form in parentheses.

Example 1. Have you two (lent, lended) Tom your notes?
1. Have the sisters (forgave, forgiven) each other?
2. The two sides had (fought, foughten) about the terms of the treaty.
3. How many home runs have you (hitted, hit) this season?
4. How many times has that jet (flew, flown) across the Atlantic?
5. I think that Jorge (feeled, felt) bad about the argument.
6. The water in the ice trays has not (frozen, froze) yet.
7. Peter had (went, gone) to church before I arrived.
8. Grandma had (gave, given) Aunt Jean a new vase.
9. After we had dismounted, we (lead, led) the horses to the stream.
10. What kinds of native plants (grown, grew) there?
11. Have you (hurted, hurt) yourself, Amelia?
12. We both (heared, heard) the same rumor.
13. The cat (hid, hidden) under Michelle’s bed and would not come out.
14. The anthropologist (found, finded) several cave dwellings in that area.
15. The mailbox (held, holded) seven catalogs and three bills.
16. I think that the two of them (had, haved) a better time than they thought they would.
17. I have always (keeped, kept) secrets well.
18. William had long (knowed, known) Rabbi Goldstein.
19. They (laid, lay) the quilts on the bed.
20. The two soldiers (got, gotten) ready for the advance.
Exercise On the blank in each of the following sentences, write the correct past or past participle form of the verb given in parentheses.

Example 1. (let) Yesterday, the O’Daniels _________ their cats go outside.
   1. (shake) We had __________ the rugs out.
   2. (light) The hostess __________ the candles.
   3. (lose) The boys have __________ no time getting comfortable.
   4. (ride) The jockey __________ the thoroughbred across the finish line.
   5. (meet) The plan has __________ with strong opposition.
   6. (pay) I __________ a little more to get tools of better quality.
   7. (put) Yesterday, Aunt Elma __________ a blooming rose in a vase on the table.
   8. (make) Has he ever __________ grits before?
   9. (read) After you have __________ the chapter, answer the review questions.
   10. (ring) Have you __________ the bell?
   11. (rise) They __________ at dawn to begin harvesting the fruit.
   12. (sell) Has he __________ any of the raffle tickets?
   13. (say) Uncle Juan __________ that Charley would be late.
   14. (run) Have you ever __________ for a position on the student council?
   15. (seek) The hawk __________ its prey.
   16. (see) You both __________ what happened, didn’t you?
   17. (send) She has __________ the package to Baton Rouge.
   18. (set) Aunt Shirley __________ the grandfather clock.
   19. (lie) I had just __________ down to rest when the doorbell rang.
   20. (sing) All of the eighth graders __________ the national anthem.

Irregular Verbs C

9c. An irregular verb forms its past and past participle in some other way than by adding –d or –ed to the base form.

An irregular verb forms its past and past participle in one of these ways: changing consonants, changing vowels, changing consonants and vowels, or making no change at all.

Examples When was the Great Wall of China built?
       Each student has written an essay about an endangered species.

Usage Let
Irregular Verbs D

9c. An irregular verb forms its past and past participle in some other way than by adding -d or -ed to the base form.

An irregular verb forms its past and past participle in one of these ways: changing consonants, changing vowels, changing consonants and vowels, or making no change at all.

**EXAMPLES**

Who **drew** this sketch of the White House?

Marcia **had hurt** her right arm during softball practice.

**Exercise** On the blank in each of the following sentences, write the correct past or past participle form of the verb given in parentheses.

**Example 1.** (swing) The engine **swung** from a block and tackle.

1. (sink) In a few short hours, the boat had __________.
2. (sit) Had they already __________ down?
3. (speak) I believe the guests have __________ to the staff about the mishap.
4. (spend) Has he ever __________ a week there before?
5. (spin) We __________ the wheels in the loose sand.
6. (spread) Our cousins __________ the picnic supplies out on the blanket.
7. (stand) Denny __________ on his head and sang a silly song.
8. (steal) The thief had __________ very little of value.
9. (swim) Have you __________ laps here before?
10. (swing) We had __________ across the gully on a sturdy rope.
11. (take) You two have __________ the best seats.
12. (teach) Ms. Lawson __________ Latin for seventeen years.
14. (tell) The clock __________ time inaccurately.
15. (think) I __________ I would go early.
16. (throw) Has he __________ the first pitch?
17. (wear) It __________ out in less than a year.
18. (win) My mother __________ the door prize.
19. (sink) The lead weights __________ to the bottom.
20. (sit) Seventeen tigers __________ and licked their chops.
for CHAPTER 9: USING VERBS CORRECTLY  pages 234–238

Irregular Verbs E

9c. An irregular verb forms its past and past participle in some other way than by adding –d or –ed to the base form.

An irregular verb forms its past and past participle in one of these ways: changing consonants, changing vowels, changing consonants and vowels, or making no change at all.

EXAMPLES  We [underline]sent[/underline] the package to you yesterday.

Bradley [underline]had bought[/underline] the bicycle at a rummage sale.

**EXERCISE**  On the blank in each of the following sentences, write the correct past or past participle form of the verb given in parentheses.

**Example 1.**  (become) What had ______________ of the treasure map?

1. (begin) Sara had ______________ saving for college when she was very young.

2. (burst) The balloon ______________ when it hit the ceiling.

3. (choose) I ______________ a simple black sweater.

4. (cost) How much time has that mistake ______________ us?

5. (drink) We had ______________ a lot of water, but we were still thirsty.

6. (eat) The frogs ______________ the flies that were buzzing around the pond.

7. (give) Has Uncle Sal ______________ you a copy of the family tree?

8. (go) She has ______________ to the launchpad.

9. (know) What had you ______________ about jellyfish before you took biology?

10. (lie) The German shepherds ______________ down to nap in the sun.

11. (lead) Have you ______________ them across the desert?

12. (lay) The squirrel ______________ a leaf where it had buried the pecan.

13. (lend) I have ______________ him money for the pay phone.

14. (ring) The cathedral bells ______________ out in the morning.

15. (run) They had ______________ a great distance.

16. (see) Two of the deer ______________ a wolf at the edge of the clearing.

17. (swing) The monkeys ______________ from limb to limb.

18. (wear) The Mullaney children always ______________ their seat belts.

19. (be) Last week, Donna and Tressa ______________ sure they would be able to run in the 10K race.

20. (rise) The temperature had ______________ since morning.
for CHAPTER 9: USING VERBS CORRECTLY pages 242–244

**Tense**

9d. The tense of a verb indicates the time of the action or state of being expressed by the verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Present Perfect Tense</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Perfect Tense</th>
<th>Future Tense</th>
<th>Future Perfect Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I give</td>
<td>I have given</td>
<td>I gave</td>
<td>I had given</td>
<td>I will (shall) give</td>
<td>I will (shall) have given</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The progressive form of each tense expresses continuing action or state of being. It consists of a form of the verb be plus the present participle of a verb.

**EXAMPLE** The candidates will be giving their speeches Friday. [future progressive]

**EXERCISE** Underline the verb in each of the following sentences. Then, above the verb, identify its tense. Also, indicate if the verb is in the progressive form.

**Example** 1. I am going to the market.

1. The Reigers have moved to San Antonio, Texas.
2. I run three miles every day after school.
3. Today, we will be meeting the President of the United States.
4. We climbed Mount Monadnock.
5. As of next Thursday, you will have been a United States citizen for one year.
6. I have written to my congresswoman about the homeless people in our town.
7. Beatrice had spent the summer with her favorite cousin.
8. Sara Luisa is now living in Lima, Peru.
9. By next Friday, we shall have finished the construction of the set for the new play.
10. By then, the orchestra had already learned the new piece of music.
11. Has the waiter brought your water yet?
12. Nicci will be attending music camp this summer.
13. The author had published her first book at the age of twenty-four.
14. Next year, the wax museum will have been open for two hundred years.
15. I enjoy fresh orange juice every morning.
16. Will the composer be present for the concert?
17. The pilot flew to fifteen cities in three days.
18. We had sent the package by airmail.
19. I have never heard of that film.
20. By the end of the month, I will have been here six months.
**Consistency of Tense**

**9e.** Do not change needlessly from one tense to another.

When describing events that occur at the same time, use verbs in the same tense. When describing events that occur at different times, use different tenses to show clearly the order of events.

**EXAMPLES**

Everyone in the audience stood and applauded. [Both verbs are past tense because both actions occurred at the same time in the past.]

The spelunkers thought that they had found a valuable treasure. [Because the action of finding was completed in the past before the action of thinking was completed, had found is past perfect tense, and thought is past tense.]

**EXERCISE**

Read the following passage. Decide whether it should be written in the present or the past tense. Above each underlined verb, either rewrite the verb to correct any unnecessary changes in tense or write C if the verb tense is already correct.

**Examples**

I [1] went to New Orleans and [2] see the French Quarter. or


Active and Passive Voice

A verb in the **active voice** expresses an action done by its subject. A verb in the **passive voice** expresses action done to its subject.

**Examples**

- I.M. Pei designed this building. [The subject, I.M. Pei, performs the action.]
- This building was designed by I.M. Pei. [The subject, building, receives the action.]

**Exercise**

On the line provided, write **AV** if the underlined verb in the sentence is in the active voice. Write **PV** if it is in the passive voice.

**Example PV**

1. Our cats, Spooky and Shine, were fed by our neighbor John.
   - 1. We adopted Spooky last year.
   - 2. As kittens, Spooky and several other cats were dumped nearby.
   - 3. Their owner did not want them.
   - 4. The owner should not have left them to fend for themselves.
   - 5. They mostly stayed hungry until we found them.
   - 6. They were sick and skinny, and they were frightened by just about anything.
   - 7. My mother and I spent many days making friends with them.
   - 8. We brought them food and talked to them quietly while they ate.
   - 9. We had been warned that they might be too skittish to come near us.
   - 10. However, they acted as if they knew we were there to help.
   - 11. Quite a lot of food was eaten by them.
   - 12. Two of the kittens, calico cats, had black, tan, and white patches.
   - 13. The other two were covered by thick black coats.
   - 14. We named one of the black ones Spooky because she ran away at the slightest movement or noise.
   - 15. It was a long time before we were allowed to pet her.
   - 16. They were all taken to a veterinarian, who gave them shots.
   - 17. Spooky was spayed as soon as she was old enough.
   - 18. Our friend Eileen helped us find homes for the other three.
   - 19. They were all neutered before they were a year old.
   - 20. By spaying and neutering the cats, we are helping to reduce the problem of unwanted pets.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice
for CHAPTER 9: USING VERBS CORRECTLY  pages 247–248

**Sit and Set**

The verb *sit* means “to rest in an upright, seated position” or “to be in a place.” *Sit* seldom takes an object. The verb *set* means “to put (something) in a place.” *Set* usually takes an object.

**EXAMPLES**
- Angelo *sat* between Dominic and me. [past tense of *sit*]
- Karen *set* a vase of flowers on the piano. [past tense of *set*]

**EXERCISE**  Write the correct form of *sit* or *set* on the line provided.

**Example 1.** We had _______ down to rest just before we heard the siren go off.
1. _______ that bowl of noodles over there, please.
2. Will you three _______ down for a minute or two?
3. Yesterday morning, I _______ the papers on that ledge.
4. Off and on last week, the cardinal _______ on the bird feeder and sang.
5. Are you _______ the tomatoes on the windowsill to ripen?
6. Is Joe _______ next to the radiator, Wanda?
7. The two old benches had _______ on the front porch for about twenty years.
8. Have you _______ the Easter eggs in the dye bath?
9. We usually _______ here to wait for the election results.
10. _______ your piggy bank in a place where you’ll remember to drop coins into it.
11. The newspaper _______ on the table all afternoon last Sunday.
12. Has the student _______ down her pencil yet?
13. Is the pencil _______ on the desk?
14. How long has the dog been _______ there?
15. They both _______ down on the stage and took off their shoes.
16. I grabbed the book and _______ it next to my backpack.
17. The bicycle pump had _______ in the garage for years without anyone using it.
18. He has _______ the signal flare where we can see it.
19. Nigel was _______ the dishes in the cabinet when you startled him.
20. Have Sarah and Laney _______ on the new sofa?
**Lie and Lay**

The verb *lie* means “to rest,” “to recline,” or “to be in a place.” *Lie* does not take an object. The verb *lay* means “to put (something) in a place.” *Lay* usually takes an object.

**EXAMPLES**  
Dad *lay* down on the sofa and took a short nap. [past tense of *lie*]  
He *laid* his eyeglasses beside his book. [past tense of *lay*]

**EXERCISE**  
Write the correct form of *lie* or *lay* on the line provided.

**Example 1.** They had **lain** down to sleep an hour earlier.

1. _______ that quilt in the cedar chest.
2. Is it _______ there now?
3. She _______ the ring on top of the dresser.
4. The emerald ring _______ at the back of the drawer where nobody could find it.
5. Have your slippers been _______ next to the fireplace?
6. Has our dog Banjo _______ your slippers next to the fireplace?
7. Yesterday I _______ the report on your desk.
8. It has _______ on your desk since then.
9. Use sunscreen when you are _______ in the sun.
10. We had _______ in the sun too long.
11. Will you _______ there all morning?
12. Will you _______ your work down?
13. San Antonio _______ southwest of Austin.
14. The map shows where the ghost town once _______.
15. After lunch today I was sleepy, so I _______ down for a nap.
16. I _______ down my books and went for a walk.
17. The clothes had _______ out where the cat could lie on them.
18. Are you _______ your clothes out for tomorrow?
19. _______ on the ground, Mike, and look up at the stars.
20. Mike had _______ a blanket on the cold ground.
Rise and Raise

The verb *rise* means “to go up” or “to get up.” *Rise* does not take an object. The verb *raise* means “to lift up” or “to cause (something) to rise.” *Raise* usually takes an object.

**EXAMPLES**
- Gasoline prices have risen recently. [present perfect tense of *rise*]
- Oil producers have raised gasoline prices. [present perfect tense of *raise*]

**EXERCISE** Write the correct form of *rise* or *raise* on the line provided.

**Example 1.** Rise up and make your voices heard!

1. ________ your voice a little please.
2. Has the price ________ recently?
3. Esther ________ a good point at yesterday’s meeting.
4. One issue ________ in importance above all others.
5. Are those balloons ________ very high?
6. We will ________ early in the morning when we go camping.
7. I had ________ the blinds so I could see who was making the noise.
8. It has been ________ steadily since Tuesday.
9. I am slowly ________ my eyes to look at the screen.
10. We ________ as a group and went outside.
11. Last week Sergio ________ the flag each morning.
12. Have you ________ your hand?
13. After the Vice President had spoken, the Congressional representative ________ quickly to make her point.
14. Has the sun ________ before 6:30 this month?
15. I often ________ my binoculars to watch the elk grazing.
16. The price of fuel generally ________ as demand increases.
17. When you ________ that point, what did Bob say?
18. His temperature has ________ since this afternoon.
19. I am ________ my expectations.
20. My expectations ________ as I see my goals more clearly.
Six Troublesome Verbs

The verb *sit* means “to rest in an upright, seated position” or “to be in a place.” *Sit* seldom takes an object. The verb *set* means “to put (something) in a place.” *Set* usually takes an object.

The verb *lie* means “to rest,” “to recline,” or “to be in a place.” *Lie* does not take an object. The verb *lay* means “to put (something) in a place.” *Lay* usually takes an object.

The verb *rise* means “to go up” or “to get up.” *Rise* does not take an object. The verb *raise* means “to lift up” or “to cause (something) to rise.” *Raise* usually takes an object.

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, underline the correct verb form in parentheses.

**Example 1.** Carmen *(lay, laid)* on the beach and watched the sailboat regatta.

1. I had *(set, sat)* the scissors down in the kitchen.
2. The cattle had *(lain, laid)* under the oak trees for quite a while.
3. Has the price of wheat *(risen, raised)* again?
4. Has the puppy *(lain, laid)* the chew toy down yet?
5. After that, we both *(sat, set)* quietly and thought about the future.
6. Please do not *(rise, raise)* the umbrella in the house.
7. Were you *(laying, lying)* in the hammock?
8. Myron is *(sitting, setting)* colorful napkins next to the plates.
9. She *(raised, rose)* up and started to protest.
10. I *(lay, laid)* there for a while.

**Exercise B** Decide whether the underlined verb in each of the following sentences is correct. If the verb is incorrect, write the correct form above it. If the verb is correct, write *C* above it.

**Example 1.** Who is *(setting)* next to Mr. Mitchell?

11. Sit the new trophy on the mantel with the others.
12. Our hopes for the soccer championship have *(raised)*.
13. I *(sat)* on the dock for three hours waiting for the ferry to return.
14. Philip’s bicycle is *(laying)* in the middle of the driveway.
15. The stage manager had *(lain)* the props in the wrong places.
EXERCISE  On the line provided before each of the following sentences, write the correct form (past or past participle) of the verb given in parentheses.

Example 1. (fall) The last Russian czar had _______ from power in 1917.

1. (carve) The Navajo artist has _______ a special design on his front door.
2. (claim) The defendant _______ that she was out of the country at the time of the crime.
3. (be) Cecile and I have _______ friends since the third grade.
4. (dance) Ginger Rogers _______ with Fred Astaire in the days of ball gowns and top hats.
5. (make) I have _______ the basketball team two years in a row.
6. (start) The Coast Guard officer _______ the boat’s engine and headed toward the wreck.
7. (write) The mystery writer has _______ twelve books to date.
8. (begin) The mayor has already _______ her reelection campaign.
9. (fight) The boxing champion announced that he had _______ his last bout.
10. (swim) Have you ever _______ in the ocean?
11. (draw) Maraya _______ a stunning picture of the Egyptian pyramids.
12. (come) Have the O’Briens _______ back from their vacation in Ireland?
13. (give) The judge _______ the jurors their instructions.
14. (work) During the summer Molly _______ at the animal clinic.
15. (teach) Who _______ you to water-ski?
17. (go) Steven has _______ to the store to buy some dog food.
18. (win) Ben and I _______ first prize in the three-legged footrace.
19. (break) Is your new wristwatch _______?
20. (know) I have _______ Dr. Stamos all my life.
EXERCISE A  On the line provided, identify the tense of the verb in each of the following sentences. Then, circle the verb if it is in the progressive form.

Example: present 1. The train [is leaving] in ten minutes.

1. Toadstools had grown in a ring on the lawn.
2. We are going to school now.
3. I crossed my arms.
4. Will you have finished by then?
5. I shall succeed, Melinda.
6. The goldfish was swimming around the new water plant.
7. He has turned on the flashlight.
8. Jean and Nick have been taking piano lessons.
9. The volcano had erupted very suddenly.
10. Will you be there?

EXERCISE B  On the line provided, identify the voice of the verb in each of the following sentences. Use AV for active voice and PV for passive voice.

Example: PV 1. We were left with little to do.

11. The cold wind chilled the weary passengers.
12. I was given a silver dollar by my great-uncle.
13. The newsletters were all delivered in the Dawson neighborhood.
14. Russell wrote an article about the creeks in the area.
15. The turtle is crossing the pond.
EXERCISE  Proofread the following sentences for errors in the use of *sit*, *set*, *lie*, *lay*, *rise*, and *raise*. Cross out each incorrect verb form, and write the correct form above it. If the verb form is already correct, write *C* above it.

**Example 1.** The panther had lain in the sun all morning.

1. I quickly sat the colander down and went to see what was the matter.
2. We lay the embroidery on the table to show Grandma.
3. How high has the balloon raised?
4. The warriors laid their weapons on the sand.
5. The old cart has set there for at least a year.
6. Had you sat there long before Steve arrived?
7. Tania is laying down to rest after work.
8. The president of the club raised and went to the podium.
9. Please sit that where your cousin will see it.
10. Have the lions laid in the shade all day long?
11. Is the toad still setting near the drain?
12. I have just laid down to do some stretching.
13. The corner market has just risen its prices again.
14. Yesterday I sat the flowerpot on the deck.
15. Please lie the seed packets down and come look at this tomato.
16. Are the temperatures raising?
17. All morning long last Sunday, the dog set there and looked hopefully at the back door.
18. The tools lay on the garage floor until I picked them up.
19. The football set forgotten on the floor of Tony’s closet all through last summer.
20. We rose several objections to the plan.
EXERCISE A  Underline the verb in each of the following sentences. Then, above the verb, identify its tense. Also indicate whether the tense is in the progressive form and whether it is in the active voice or passive voice.

Examples 1. He is making bread for the bake sale.  
2. We had been given daisies.

1. The team is finishing its work now.  
2. I have read *The Lion, the Witch, and the Wardrobe*.  
3. I am called Kate by my relatives.  
4. The avalanche will have destroyed the village.  
5. The dye has been staining the counter.  
6. I shall interview several people for the position.  
7. The story was told to everyone nearby.  
8. Desirée had thanked Aunt Kendra for the birthday present.  
9. We have looked everywhere for the fake mustaches.  
10. Danielle and Sara are leaving Muskogee.

EXERCISE B  Proofread the following sentences for errors in the use of verbs. Cross out each incorrect verb form, and write the correct form above it.

Example 1. I have brung my stamp collection to show you.  
2. I went up to Larry and tells him my name.

11. They been asked not to make so much noise.  
12. Marcel and Reginald have lead the hikers across the snowy ridge.  
13. Mr. Benedict builded several houses with energy-efficient appliances.  
14. The blue jay seen the cat before it pounced.  
15. The king had soon forgave the duke for his angry words.  
16. Have you two set outside very long?  
17. The cheetah had ran across the grassy plain.  
18. I use to live in Baltimore.  
19. She was laying down when the news came.
Case Forms

*Case* is the form that a noun or a pronoun takes to show its relationship to other words in a sentence. In English, there are three cases: *nominative*, *objective*, and *possessive*.

**NOMINATIVE CASE**  
That *author* is my favorite. *He* is my favorite. [subjects]

**OBJECTIVE CASE**  
I gave *him* a *book* with *pictures*. [objects]

**POSSESSIVE CASE**  
My sister likes that *author’s* books. [possessive pronoun and possessive noun]

**EXERCISE**  
Above each underlined word in the following sentences, write *N* for *nominative case*, *O* for *objective case*, or *P* for *possessive case*.

**Example 1.** I read an article about a famous explorer.

1. *She* went to the bottom of the ocean.
2. Another diver followed *her* as a safety precaution.
3. The divers used hand signals to communicate underwater.
4. Near the shore, they saw a *shelf* of land.
5. This *shelf’s* name is the continental *shelf*.
6. A *shelf* can slope many fathoms under water.
7. These *shelves* attract *explorers* from around the world.
8. Scuba divers wear special *equipment* for exploring.
9. A *diver’s* mask is a window to an exciting, new world.
10. Its *fit* helps to ensure a safe and comfortable dive.
11. *Hers* is equipped with a purge valve that helps to remove water.
12. Fins increase a *diver’s* swimming power.
13. A *snorkel* is attached to the mask strap on the left side.
14. It helps a diver on the surface to conserve air.
15. When they wear scuba tanks, divers take their air supply with *them*.
16. We want to learn to scuba dive.
17. Mr. Jesse will teach *us*.
18. He teaches his *classes* at the city pool.
19. *Our* final dive, or checkout dive, would be at Lake Travis.
20. Will Tana’s soccer schedule interfere with scuba classes?
EXERCISE A   For each of the sentences below, underline the correct pronoun form in parentheses.

Example 1.  Al and (they, them) volunteered at the homeless shelter.

1.  (We, Us) play chess every afternoon.
2.  Everyone could see it was (he, him).
3.  Did the Jenkins family or (they, them) host the picnic?
4.  The French government and (we, us) have a good relationship.
5.  On our team the high scorers were (he, him) and I.
6.  The only people to understand the poem were (they, them).
7.  The police officer and (we, us) were the ones who saw the UFO.
8.  Stephanie and (he, him) thought the joke was hilarious.
9.  Either Toni or (she, her) will pick you up after the show.
10.  Wasn’t it (he, him) who reported the missing bicycle.

EXERCISE B   Each of the following sentences contains an underlined pronoun. Write C above the underlined pronoun if its form is correct. If the pronoun form is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it.

Example 1.  The tutors will be she and I.

11.  Grandma and me went to a class to learn about computers.
12.  After the replay, the referee said the winners were us.
13.  The photographers should have been them.
14.  The first to perform are we.
15.  The most valuable player might have been her.
EXERCISE A For each of the sentences below, underline the correct pronoun form in parentheses.

Example 1. Did you go with Conchita and (he, him) to the party?
1. The clown chose Mike and (she, her) from the audience.
2. He offered (we, us) some kimchi, a Korean salad.
3. Everyone applauded the performers and (he, him).
4. Between you and (I, me), the Yankees are my favorite team.
5. The crossing guard gave Racquel and (I, me) some good advice.

EXERCISE B Each of the following sentences contains at least one underlined pronoun. Write C above the underlined pronoun if its form is correct. If the pronoun form is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it.

Example 1. Will you show him and I your science project?
6. There are several seats between her and we.
7. Mr. Yakanura made us tempura for dinner.
8. Mr. Hinds gave Peggy and she directions.
9. She gave the CD-ROM to we.
10. When we visited China, Grandma took me to a festival.
11. Will you give her and I your e-mail address?
12. We played against the Raiders and they at the end of the season.
13. Will our class send him a get-well card?
14. The soothing piano music calmed she and I.
15. For he and I, Ms. Tompkins drew a huge cat.
Nominative and Objective Case A

The **subject** of a verb and a **predicate nominative** should be in the nominative case.

**EXAMPLES**

May **we** go to the art exhibit? [subject]

My favorite artists are **Frida Kahlo** and **she**. [predicate nominatives]

A **direct object**, an **indirect object**, and an **object of a preposition** should be in the objective case.

**EXAMPLES**

Mother took **her** and **me** to the gallery opening. [direct objects]

Show **us** your latest charcoal drawing. [indirect object]

For **Sue** and **them**, the guide gave a special tour. [objects of a preposition]

**Exercise**

For each of the following sentences, underline the correct pronoun form in parentheses.

**Example 1.** They and (**I, me**) visited the Metropolitan Museum of Art.

1. The guide showed (**we, us**) the Yoruba sculpture exhibit.
2. Tell (**I, me**) more about this African art form.
3. (**We, Us**) think this terra-cotta sculpture is fascinating!
4. The last to leave the exhibit was (**she, her**).
5. Greta and (**he, him**) were eager to see “Mirror of the Medieval World.”
6. They waited for (**we, us**) at the door.
7. Art of the Middle Ages interests (**they, them**).
8. (**We, Us**) saw works of art created between the fourth and sixteenth centuries.
9. The group members most interested in medieval art are (**we, us**).
10. The guide directed (**I, me**) to an American Indian art exhibit.
11. Everyone except (**they; them**) followed me.
12. Hal and (**he, him**) were amazed by the quilled and beaded work.
13. Drawings on painted buffalo skins told (**we, us**) stories.
14. Kim showed (**I, me**) a basket woven by Datsolalee.
15. One of the best-known of all American Indian basket weavers is (**she, her**).
16. Between you and (**I, me**), the wooden masks seemed scary.
17. The guide gave (**we, us**) pamphlets about the exhibit.
18. It was (**I, me**) who begged to stay.
19. My sister should have come with (**we, us**).
20. I bought (**she, her**) a book from the museum’s bookshop.
Nominative and Objective Case B

The subject of a verb and a predicate nominative should be in the nominative case.

A direct object, an indirect object, and an object of a preposition should be in the objective case.

**Exercise** Each of the following sentences contains at least one underlined pronoun. Write **C** above the underlined pronoun if its form is correct. If the pronoun form is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it.

**Example 1.** Our visitors might have been **she** and **him**.

1. Did you see the photographs by Dorothea Lange and **she**?
2. The winner in the Fun Run’s wheelchair division was **he**.
3. Dr. Chen showed **her** and **I** his acupuncture clinic.
4. The volunteer coordinator should be **her**.
5. Will you play a game with **he** and **I**?
6. **Him** and **me** are building a model of the White House.
7. Did you see **him** and **her** at the grocery store?
8. Grandpa taught **he** and **I** some yoga postures.
9. Your biggest fans are **her** and **me**.
10. Will you go with Claire and **I** to hear the violinist Itzhak Perlman?
11. I made **her** and **him** a nutritious snack.
12. **We** and **they** meet on Thursdays for chess games.
13. Mother and **me** designed a new birdhouse.
14. Daisuke told **she** and **I** about his trip to Tokyo.
15. Did you choose **him** or **I**?
16. Juanita, Malcolm, and **me** collaborated on a science project.
17. Is the author of the skit **her** or **him**?
18. Uncle Stuart gave **him** and **I** bicycles for our shared birthday.
19. The awards presented to **she** and **I** were hung over the mantelpiece.
20. We may have to go to the mall without **her**.
EXERCISE A   In each of the following sentences, underline the personal pronoun in the possessive case.

Example 1.  Mine has white stripes.
1. Did Jenny try on her kimono?
2. With yours, the class has now collected over one hundred cans.
3. My report is about the history of skateboarding.
4. Mine is hanging in the closet.
5. Has theirs ever been tested for safety?
6. Our piñata is filled with fruit, nuts, and small toys.
7. A vegetarian restaurant is their choice.
8. Hers is the only project about volcanoes.
9. Where are your new glasses?
10. Its nest is made of twigs, leaves, and bits of yarn.

EXERCISE B   Choose appropriate possessive-case pronouns for the blanks in the following sentences. Use a variety of pronouns.

Example 1.  Is this video game ______ yours _______
11. Will _______ poem appear in our school’s literary magazine?
12. _______ stamp collection is not for sale.
13. Place your trophy next to _______.
14. I want to leave my suitcase here with _______.
15. _______ Web page design looks professional.
16. Has _______ piano been tuned lately?
17. _______ opinions differ on that issue.
18. _______ was chosen first.
19. Did _______ basketball coach offer any helpful suggestions?
20. Most of _______ clothes are made of cotton.
EXERCISE A  For each of the sentences below, underline the correct pronoun form in parentheses.

Example 1. The person (who, whom) she invited is a secret.
1. The woman (who, whom) fixed our stereo just called.
2. Taro is the one (who, whom) gave me the letter.
3. My aunt, (who, whom) I admire, is a lawyer.
4. Do you know (who, whom) is on the committee?
5. I don’t know to (who, whom) this address book belongs.
6. The dedication page tells for (who, whom) the book was written.
7. Aborigines are the only people (who, whom) live in some parts of Australia.
8. We need a business leader (who, whom) can speak Japanese.
9. The girl to (who, whom) I was speaking is my cousin.
10. Coretta Scott King is a woman (who, whom) I respect.

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, write C above the underlined pronoun if its form is correct. If the pronoun form is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it.

Example 1. I only listed those who raised their hands.

11. Ask her to whom we should mail the package.
12. We need an assistant coach whom is enthusiastic.
13. I send e-mail to a pen pal who lives in Italy.
14. Is this your new friend who you met yesterday?
15. Can you tell me whom invented the light bulb?
16. My uncle, whom is from Zambia, has an African mask collection.
17. Are you the team to whom these uniforms belong?
18. Mrs. Jones, who I visit daily, appreciates my help.
19. I like the band who sings this song.
20. Mohandas Gandhi, who we honor, used nonviolence to help bring freedom to India.
EXERCISE A  In each of the sentences below, underline the correct pronoun form in parentheses. Then, circle the noun to which the underlined pronoun refers.

Example 1. Shelby sent *(we, us)* children boots for the winter.

1. Mrs. Woo thanked *(we, us)* traffic-safety helpers.
2. *(We, Us)* girls were first-string on the basketball team.
3. The league leaders were *(we, us)* Sentinels.
4. Mark wrote a postcard to *(we, us)* scouts.
5. Did you invite *(we, us)* group leaders?
6. The first people on the program were *(we, us)* twirlers.
7. *(We, Us)* brothers were known as the Great Beninos.
8. The teacher called *(we, us)* students up to the stage.
9. Nurse Anthony gave a plaque to *(we, us)* volunteers.
10. *(We, Us)* boys plan to help with the park cleanup.

EXERCISE B  For each of the sentences below, underline the correct pronoun form in parentheses.

Example 1. Omar treated *(himself, hisself)* to a new basketball.

11. Did they make *(theirselfs, themselves)* enough food?
12. Jake will finish the project by *(himself, hisself)*.
13. The girls announced *(themselves, theirselves)* the winners.
14. The guests helped *(theirselfs, theirselves)* to the appetizers.
15. Is he going to the movies by *(hisself, himself)*?
Special Pronoun Problems

10g. The use of who or whom in a subordinate clause depends on how the pronoun functions in the clause.

**EXAMPLE**  Do you know who won the wheelchair division of the race? [subject]

10h. A pronoun used as an appositive is in the same case as the word to which it refers.

**EXAMPLE**  We spectators waited anxiously. [The pronoun We is in the nominative case because it is used as an appositive of the subject, spectators.]

Reflexive pronouns such as himself and themselves can be used as objects. Do not use the non-standard forms hisself and theirselfs or theirselves in place of himself and themselves.

**NONSTANDARD**  Did Jim build the racing chair by hisself?

**STANDARD**  Did Jim build the racing chair by himself?

**EXERCISE**  Each of the following sentences contains at least one underlined pronoun. Write C above the underlined pronoun if its form is correct. If the pronoun form is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it.

**Example 1.** Ask them to whom ___ racers should report.

1. In 1977, ___ wheelchair racers competed in the Boston Marathon for the first time.
2. The seven racers readied theirselves for the race.
3. Do you know who won the race in 1978?
4. All athletes who complete such a long, difficult race should declare themselves winners.
5. A foundation, to whom we are grateful, gave traveling assistance to we racers.
6. In 1980 Sharon Limpert, whom won the women’s title, became the first woman to break three hours.
8. It looks like a tie! To whom do you think they will give the medal?
9. The race officials, who we respect, asked ___ spectators to step back.
10. The racers usually ask theirselves what they can do to improve their speed.
Exercise A  Each of the following sentences contains an underlined pronoun. Write C above the underlined pronoun if its form is correct. If the pronoun form is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it.

Example 1. I will meet Lili and she at the bus.

1. Our band and them are performing at the Fall Marching Festival.
2. Judges rank us according to musical skill and technique.
3. Did you save a seat for Lili and I?
4. The instruments were loaded carefully by they.
5. On the bus Kirby and he made up a pep song.
6. They taught Mary and she the song.
7. The boys and we took turns suggesting games to play.
8. The first to arrive at the field were us.
9. Our band director gave Bob and I some sunscreen.
10. Where should Carol and he put their trombone cases?

Exercise B  Choose appropriate pronouns for the blanks in the following sentences.

Example 1. Tamika and she went skating last Friday.

11. Do Ray and ________ have time to practice?
12. Some of ________ talked to friends in other bands.
13. Is the drum major ________?
14. Sue reminded Lili and ________ to straighten our hats.
15. For the other bands and ________, weeks of practice are about to pay off!

Exercise C  Choose appropriate possessive-case pronouns for the blanks in the following sentences. Use a variety of pronouns.

Example 1. ________ are too muddy to wear inside.

16. With only seconds left, ________ midcourt shot won the game!
17. Was ________ published in the school newspaper?
18. At the dog show, ________ collie won several blue ribbons.
19. ________ neighborhood’s crime-prevention program won national recognition.
20. Does ________ family celebrate Hanukkah?
Exercise A  Each of the following sentences contains an underlined pronoun. Write C above the underlined pronoun if its form is correct. If the pronoun form is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it.

Example 1. They made a papier-mâché globe for themselves.

1. Desmond and me looked at the map of the world.
2. Mr. Rudolph pointed out the Indian subcontinent to us.
3. The students helped themselves to pushpins for marking countries of special interest.
4. My favorite country is Italy because of its interesting shape.
5. Did you know that my favorite country is also theirs?
6. Della was the student who gave a report about Asia.
7. The amount of water seemed enormous to we students.
8. Whom can say how much of the earth is water?
9. Neither Mr. Singh nor him has visited relatives in India.
10. Juan surprised himself by naming all of Africa’s countries without looking at the map.

Exercise B  Each of the following sentences contains an underlined pronoun. Write C above the underlined pronoun if its form is correct. If the pronoun form is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it.

Example 1. Kamika told us who the leader of Pakistan is.

11. The expert on geography was him.
12. We can ask Juan or he for help if we need it.
13. My mother gave my sister and I a Mercator projection map.
14. It was my sister who really wanted it.
15. The proud new owners of the map were us.
16. Us children hung it on the wall of the basement.
17. My uncle and he checked to see whether the country, Burkina Faso, was on it.
18. Between my sister and I, we found 107 countries.
19. Both of we enjoyed studying the map.
20. Someday, two experts on the globe will be Erica and she.
Review C: Case and Special Pronoun Problems

**Exercise A**  For each of the sentences below, underline the correct pronoun form in parentheses.

**Example 1.** Tell me *(who, whom)* knows about crystallization.

1. Gillian and *(I, me)* were studying crystals.
2. Tad helped *(hisself, himself)* to some salt crystals.
3. There are many kinds of crystals, and you have walked on some of *(they, them)*.
4. Ms. Albert and *(they, them)* examined the crystals in the rocks.
5. Ms. Albert showed *(we, us)* pictures of crystals in caves.
6. Between Sarah and *(I, me)*, we held twenty-seven crystals.
7. Everyone *(who, whom)* participated held a crystal in his or her hand.
8. *(Us, We)* girls saw crystals in the snowflake pictures.
9. Iola and *(her, she)* verified the rare crystals by using some simple tests.
10. It was *(he, him)* who looked in the microscope.

**Exercise B**  Each of the following sentences contains at least one underlined pronoun. Write C above the underlined pronoun if its form is correct. If the pronoun form is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it.

**Example 1.** The tutor *(whom)* uses e-mail is she.

11. *(Whom)* can I ask about storyteller dolls?
12. *(Us)* students are writing a report about Buddhists.
13. *(He)* reminded hisself to take out the garbage.
14. The last to arrive was her.
15. *(My family, who)* visited Japan, attended a special celebration.
16. Saving natural resources will be beneficial for *(we)* humans.
17. Just between you and *(I)*, the choice is mine.
18. *(Mara and me)* will make the team and *(they)* a delicious snack.
19. The judges, *(who)* we respect, readied *(theirselves)* for the competition.
20. The most limber people were *(we)* gymnasts.
What Is a Modifier?

A *modifier* is a word or word group that makes the meaning of another word or word group more specific. *Adjectives* modify nouns and pronouns. *Adverbs* modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

**ADJECTIVES**  
My *green* dress is here. [*Green* modifies the noun *dress*.]  
This one is *fast*. [*Fast* modifies the pronoun *one*.]  

**ADVERBS**  
Eli spoke *softly*. [*Softly* modifies the verb *spoke*.]  
I feel *too* tired. [*Too* modifies the adjective *tired*.]  
You work *more* quickly than I. [*More* modifies the adverb *quickly*.]  

**Exercise** In each of the following sentences, circle the word that modifies the underlined word or word group. Do not include the articles *a*, *an*, and *the*.

**Example 1.** *Will you try* harder?

1. The bright *sun* hurts my eyes.
2. That dancer *moves* gracefully.
3. These peanuts seem much *saltier*.
4. Paris is an exciting *city*.
5. The downpour almost completely *flooded* our yard.
6. Leaves provide food for small animals.
7. Your report was extremely *interesting*.
8. She talks rather *softly*.
9. *Will you listen* carefully?
10. *Send us another* one.
11. Several *others* have voted.
12. I *could almost taste* it!
13. This room is slightly *cooler*.
14. The steaming *drink* warmed us.
15. You are very *late*!
16. We were too *late* for front-row seats.
17. He answered the question *intelligently*.
18. Your e-mail message was *so funny*!
19. *I will gladly help* you.
20. *Samone is unusually quiet* today.
Examine the following sentences to determine whether a word is used as an adjective or an adverb:

1. **Example 1.** Our long-distance runner is **sick**.

2. We arrived **late** for the track meet.

3. I hurriedly dressed in my uniform.

4. The locker room smelled **musty**.

5. Will the first event begin **soon**?

6. The anxious **participants** filled the bleachers.

7. Can you line up **quickly**?

8. The runner beside me looked so **serious**.

9. I can’t believe I finished **first**!

10. The distance to the finish line seemed **endless**.

11. I have never run so **fast**.

12. The crowd cheered **enthusiastically** for all the runners.

13. Our team is so **excited** about the 400-meter relay.

14. We have the **best** record in our region.

15. Eli ran a **surprisingly fast** time in the trial.

16. He walked **confidently** to the starting blocks.

17. Pedro jumped **easily** and cleared the bar.

18. Our whole team performed **fantastically**.

19. Coach Williams **proudly** accepted our trophy.

20. We looked **exhausted**, but we felt **great**!
Good and Well

*Good* is an adjective. It should be used to modify a noun or a pronoun. Use *well* to modify a verb.

**EXAMPLES**
- Ramón's paintings look **good**. [*Good* modifies the noun *paintings.*]
- Ramón paints **well**. [*Well* modifies the verb *paints.*]

*Well* may be used either as an adjective or as an adverb. As an adjective, *well* has two meanings: “in good health” or “satisfactory.”

**EXAMPLES**
- Ramón feels **well** today. [*Meaning “in good health,” *well* modifies the noun *Ramón.*]
- All is **well** at his studio. [*Meaning “satisfactory,” *well* modifies the pronoun *All.*]

**EXERCISE A** For each of the sentences below, underline the correct modifier in parentheses.

**Example 1.** Everything is (good, well) with my favorite band.

1. We didn’t have (good, well) seats at the concert.
2. Inge and I couldn’t hear the lead singer very (good, well).
3. The band performed as (good, well) as we had hoped.
4. The drummer looked (good, well) in that silver outfit.
5. It was so hot in the concert hall that I didn’t feel (good, well).
6. Being a (good, well) friend, Janeatha bought me a cup of cold apple juice.
7. The apple juice tasted (good, well).
8. How (good, well) was the concert?
9. I was surprised that the bass guitarist sang so (good, well).
10. His voice is so (good, well) that I think he should become the lead singer.

**EXERCISE B** The following paragraph contains errors in the use of *good* and *well*. Cross out the errors and write the correct modifier above each word that you have crossed out.

**Example** [1] All is **good** with me today.

[11] How good, or healthy, I feel depends on how good I take care of myself. [12] A good breakfast gives me a well start on my day. [13] Foods low in sugar are well choices. [14] My family and I work good together to make healthy foods that taste well. [15] Exercise is important, too. [16] I can’t run very good, but a long walk gives me energy. [17] I also play basketball very good, so I get plenty of exercise. [18] How good I sleep at night also affects the way I feel. [19] I need at least eight hours to perform good at school the next day. [20] Diet, exercise, and rest will help me live a well, long life.

*Copyright © by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. All rights reserved.*
**Regular Comparison**

11b. The three degrees of comparison are the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative**.

In regular comparison, modifiers form the comparative degree by adding –**er** or using **more/less**. They form the superlative degree by adding –**est** or using **most/least**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>newer</td>
<td>newest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>more quickly</td>
<td>most quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>less careful</td>
<td>least careful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE** Complete the following chart by filling in the two missing forms for each modifier given.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>juicy</td>
<td>juicier</td>
<td>juiciest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. small</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Irregular Comparison

The comparative and superlative degrees of some modifiers are not formed by the usual methods.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>least</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise**  Complete each sentence below by writing the modifier specified in the parentheses on the line provided.

**Example 1.** (superlative of little) Orange is my ______ favorite color.

1. (superlative of much) The ________ common form of Nigerian jewelry is a long string of beads.

2. (comparative of good) Both of the charcoal drawings were exceptional, but I thought Ian’s was ________.

3. (comparative of little) I have ________ time to practice the piano today than I had yesterday.

4. (superlative of good) Tony has the ________ scoring record on our team this year.

5. (superlative of bad) This is the ________ movie I have ever seen!

6. (comparative of much) Joseph Bruchac’s “Birdfoot’s Grampa” is the ________ interesting of the two poems.

7. (superlative of well) Of all the musicians who performed last night, I think Wynton Marsalis played the ________.

8. (comparative of many) There were ________ people at this year’s school carnival than at last year’s.

9. (superlative of far) Which of the following Tanzanian cities is ________ from Mtwara: Lindi, Songea, or Tabora?

10. (comparative of well) I feel much ________ today than I did yesterday.
**EXERCISE**  Complete the following chart by filling in the two missing forms for each modifier given.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example 1.</strong> bossy</td>
<td><strong>bossier</strong></td>
<td><strong>bossiest</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. more believable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. angrily</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td>dimmest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. good</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. drier</td>
<td></td>
<td>least bitter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td></td>
<td>most observant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. worse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. warm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. many</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. farther</td>
<td></td>
<td>perkiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. well</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. little money</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>more ridiculous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. much</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td></td>
<td>saddest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. slyer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. happily</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td></td>
<td>grumpiest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Regular and Irregular Comparison B

The three degrees of comparison are the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative**.

**POSITIVE**  An anglerfish is a **big** saltwater fish.

**COMPARATIVE**  A barracuda is **bigger** than an anglerfish.

**SUPERLATIVE**  The bluefin tuna is the **biggest** of the three fish.

**EXERCISE**  Complete each sentence below by writing the modifier specified in the parentheses on the line provided.

**Example 1.** (superlative of exciting) The **most exciting** spot our family has ever visited is the Monterey Bay Aquarium.

1. (superlative of large) Most of the aquarium’s permanent exhibits focus on Monterey Bay, the nation’s _____________ national marine sanctuary.

2. (comparative of many) The aquarium had _____________ exhibits than our family could visit in one day.

3. (superlative of well) Because a diver hand-fed sharks in the Kelp Forest exhibit, Stephen liked that exhibit _____________.

4. (superlative of odd) The _____________ fish in the Outer Bay exhibit was the ocean sunfish, which looked like a big leather disk.

5. (comparative of much) In the Mystery of the Deep exhibit, visitors can learn _____________ information about the deep sea.

6. (superlative of deep) Some of the animals we saw from the _____________ waters—as deep as 3,300 feet—were Pacific hagfish, mushroom corals, and squat lobsters.

7. (superlative of interested) Of all the members of my family, I am the _____________ in deep-sea life.

8. (comparative of gracefully) In the Splash Zone exhibit, my little sister Kate crawled _____________ through the coral reef structures than I did.

9. (superlative of cute) She decided that the _____________ animal she saw was the black-footed penguin.

10. (comparative of far) On that exciting day Kate, who usually complains, walked _____________ than she ever had before!
Exercise  In the following sentences, if an underlined modifier is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it. If the underlined modifier is correct, write C above it.

Example 1. Which is most destructive to an archaeological site: wind or water?
1. The tomb of Qin Shihuangdi has been called “the greater archaeological find of our time.”
2. Of the more than 7,000 life-size warriors, horses, and chariots, which looked more realistic?
3. It was the most amazing thing I had ever seen!
4. Since 1974, archaeologists in China have been putting forth their better efforts to rebuild the lifelike terra-cotta army.
5. Rebuilding the statues was probably hardest than unearthing them.
6. Some of the smallest pieces provide the best clues about sculpting techniques during the emperor’s time.
7. Amy knows more information about China’s first emperor than I do.
8. Were the chariots or the horses buried deepest?
9. Of all the farmers who found the first clay head, he was more terrified.
10. Do you have a more current account than this one?
USE OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE FORMS B

Exercise 1. Some of the following sentences need other or else to complete their meaning. Insert a caret (^) where the word other or else is needed, and write the omitted word on the line provided. If a sentence is already correct, write C on the line.

Example 1. Julia is taller than anyone in her class.

1. Can anyone else on the team run faster than he can?
2. These scissors are sharper than any pair I could find.
3. Berta has won more trophies for track and field than any athlete.
4. She is more skillful than anyone in her art class.
5. I write to my cousin more than I write to anyone in my family.
6. Is jogging more effective for weight loss than any form of exercise?
7. During free reading, short stories are more popular than any form of literature.
8. Juan has done more volunteer work than anyone in his troop.
9. This kitten is not as curious as all the kittens in its litter.
10. Gina was more observant than anyone on the hike.
11. This first song is better than any song on the CD.
12. The cheetah can run faster than any land animal.
13. The month of February has fewer days than any month.
14. Houda speaks Arabic better than anyone in his family.
15. This book has fewer pages than any book.
16. Rachel scored more goals than anyone on her soccer team.
17. Has Paul run more miles than anyone in his track club?
18. A saltwater crocodile is larger than any other reptile.
19. Our neighbor Mrs. Gold grows more flowers than anyone on our street.
20. These pants are baggier than any other pants in my closet.
Double Comparisons and Double Negatives

11f. Avoid using double comparisons.

NONSTANDARD This sweater is more warmer than my jacket.

STANDARD This sweater is warmer than my jacket.

11g. Avoid using double negatives.

NONSTANDARD I don’t have no mail today.

STANDARD I don’t have any mail today, or I have no mail today.

EXERCISE Most of the following sentences contain incorrect double comparisons or double negatives. Cross out any unnecessary words. Insert carets (^) where words are needed, and write the needed words on the lines provided. If a sentence is already correct, write C on the line.

Example any

1. I don’t have no change.

1. I don’t hardly know nothing about the country of Zambia.

2. We have never had no problems with our car.

3. These enchiladas are more tastier than the tacos.

4. The most strangest noise is coming from behind that door.

5. I haven’t never watched the sun rise.

6. Your explanation doesn’t make no sense to me.

7. If the water were more deeper, we could dive safely.

8. I can’t barely reach the top shelf.

9. Is the most longest bridge in the world the Humber Bridge in England?

10. Grandpa seems more wiser than anyone else I know.

11. The black rock for these statues can’t be found in no other place.

12. That’s the most funniest story I have ever heard!

13. We didn’t see no weeds in the garden.

14. Could I try on this dress in a larger size?

15. This discount store has the most cheapest prices on school supplies.

16. I don’t remember ever eating a plantain.

17. The most oldest covered bridge in use is in New Hampshire.

18. I never heard no one play the piano as well as Angela Cheng.

19. Joe needs a more shorter board for the birdhouse floor.

20. She never goes nowhere without her glasses.
EXERCISE A  Underline the prepositional phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, circle the word that the phrase modifies.

Example 1. I saw in the newspaper a camera advertisement.

1. The ad said that the camera came with two extra lenses.
2. I called the phone number that was listed in the advertisement.
3. I wanted further information about the camera.
4. The camera dealer had satisfactory answers to my questions.
5. A camera of my own is a dream come true!

EXERCISE B  Underline the misplaced prepositional phrase in each of the following sentences. Draw an arrow from the phrase to its correct location in the sentence.

Example 1. I saw a movie about spiders in my science class.

6. I took a nap and dreamed about a faraway castle on my blue couch.
7. Virgil found a book about prehistoric animals in the library.
8. The woman wrote a play about two elephants in the red dress.
9. Three men had to stop quickly while a goose crossed the road in a small car.
10. The water refreshed us from a fountain.
11. Did you see the medals that Aunt Elsa won in the attic?
12. This daruma doll is said to help wishes come true from Japan.
13. That boy will feed our dogs in the yellow shirt.
14. The rocks are from the playground in my shoes.
15. The book Scorpions describes two friends living in Harlem by Walter Dean Myers.
Misplaced and Dangling Participial Phrases

11h. Place modifying words, phrases, and clauses as near as possible to the words they modify.

**Example 1.** Addressing the crowd, Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr.'s speech was inspiring.

**Correct**

Addressing the crowd, Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr., gave an inspiring speech.

**Exercise** Rewrite the following sentences to correct the misplaced and dangling participial phrases.

1. Hoping to win the race, the fall was disappointing.

2. Grasped tightly in my hands, I urged the horse onward with the reins.

3. Vo, hidden in the closet, couldn't find his sleeping bag.

4. The log fit into the stove broken in half.

5. Running on empty, I needed to stop for gas.

6. Built into the cliffs, archaeologists have learned much from Anasazi dwellings.

7. Aunt Rosa offered grilled chicken to us wrapped in a flour tortilla.

8. Rested from a long nap, the afternoon hike seemed easy.

9. Traveling along the Congo River, exotic birds and brightly colored insects can be seen.

10. Leaping across the stage, the dancer's performance amazed us.
Misplaced Clauses

11h. Place modifying words, phrases, and clauses as near as possible to the words they modify.

An adjective clause should be placed directly after the word it modifies.

MISPLACED CLAUSE  He gave a turtle to his sister that he found under the tree.
CORRECT  He gave a turtle that he found under the tree to his sister. [The clause modifies turtle, not sister.]

EXERCISE A  In each of the sentences below, underline the adjective clause. Then, circle the noun or pronoun that the clause modifies.

Example 1. I have an uncle who lives in Hungary.
1. I really enjoyed the movie that we saw last night.
2. My sister, who lives in Oklahoma, is coming home for Thanksgiving.
3. I couldn’t have finished without your help, which I really appreciate.
4. The man whose car had been dented filed an accident report.
5. The boy whom I invited to the dance will be unable to go.

EXERCISE B  Rewrite the following sentences to correct the placement of adjective clauses.

Example 1. The bike is on sale this week that I want.  The bike that I want is on sale this week.
6. Jolene gave a bird to her brother that has white feathers.
7. The pictures were of monkeys that we took.
8. The trees held many birds’ nests that lost their leaves in the hurricane.
9. The burglar turned himself in to the police who had stolen my bracelet.
10. The store is on Elm Avenue that offers secondhand clothing.
Misplaced Phrases and Clauses

**Exercise A**
Underline the misplaced phrase or clause in the following sentences. Then, draw an arrow from the phrase or clause to its correct location in the sentence.

**Example 1.** Charlie Brown and his gang teach readers valuable lessons, including a beagle and a bird.

1. Beth showed me a magazine article about Charles Schulz in the library.
2. Schulz created his comic strip for almost fifty years called *Peanuts*.
3. The comic strip was published in twenty-one different languages about a funny group of neighborhood children.
4. The comic strips are my favorites about sandlot baseball and the Great Pumpkin.
5. The one is about Charlie Brown that I like the most finally hitting a home run.
6. Charlie Brown worries about his batting ability, who loves baseball.
7. Charlie Brown’s beagle has an adventurous personality whose name is Snoopy.
8. Snoopy flies an imaginary airplane in World War I called the *Sopwith Camel*.
9. The evil Red Baron often threatens Snoopy’s safety, who also flies a World War I airplane.
10. The beagle is confident and comical, nicknamed “Joe Cool.”
11. Snoopy writes novels sitting on his doghouse.
12. The bird Woodstock takes shorthand for Snoopy’s great novels, who rarely speaks.
13. Linus sucks his thumb, carrying a security blanket.
14. He anxiously awaits Halloween hoping to see the Great Pumpkin.
15. Peppermint Patty and Marcie share a secret crush on Charlie Brown, who are pals.
16. Schulz’s children talk of hope, faith, and love, whose problems are not always childhood ones.
17. *Peanuts* has given its millions of readers many laughs, originally called *L’il Folks*.
18. Did you see the box of *Peanuts* comic strips in the attic that Bill collected?
19. Bill was given the collection, whose father is a *Peanuts* fan, for his birthday.
20. Dating as far back as 1951, Bill has comic strips.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, circle the word that modifies the underlined word or words. Do not include the articles a, an, and the.

Example 1. Can you whisper quietly?
1. The colorful headdress is from Jamaica.
2. Today I am unusually tired.
3. Few others have won the award.
4. The child waited anxiously.
5. He is moving rather slowly today.

EXERCISE B  For each of the sentences below, underline the correct modifier in parentheses.

Example 1. I waited (patient, patiently) for the bell to ring.
6. Do you speak Vietnamese as (good, well) as your brother does?
7. My baby sister cries (loudly, loud) at bedtime.
8. These Mongolian dumplings, called buuz, taste (delicious, deliciously).
9. Alice (frantic, frantically) rushed to catch the bus.
10. How (well, good) can Greg sing this Israeli song, “Hava-nagilah”?
11. My model of the Eiffel Tower turned out (good, well).
12. The park seems so (peaceful, peacefully) today.
13. Although she looks fine, Tina does not feel (well, good).
14. Fresh fruit and yogurt make a (good, well) dessert.
15. The sun shone (bright, brightly) on the morning of the swim meet.
16. I always speak (respectfully, respectful) to my parents and grandparents.
17. How (well, good) a hot, steamy bath will feel!
18. Everyone on the team played (well, good) tonight.
19. Jamal felt (bad, badly) after eating such a large meal.
20. How (good, well) did Rich play the part of Peter Van Daan in the play The Diary of Anne Frank?
Review B: Comparisons and Double Negatives

**Exercise A**  In the following sentences, if an underlined modifier is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it. If the underlined modifier is already correct, write C above it.

1. During practice today, the trombone sounded louder than any instrument.
2. This is one of Henry Rowe Schoolcraft’s most finest books about American Indian history and culture.
3. Both of the Assad brothers, who are classical guitarists, performed well, but I thought Odair’s solos were best.
4. Carlos can run farer than anyone else in his class.
5. This little gray kitten is the most cutest of the litter.
6. Which of these two books by Lensey Namioka is least expensive?
7. Cold water tastes gooder than warm water.
8. Of everyone in our class, Sela collected the most cans.
9. Which of the following Tibetan cities is lar: Lhasa, Xungba, or Nagqu?
10. Olivia seems more daring than anyone on the playground.

**Exercise B**  The following sentences contain double negatives. Cross out any unnecessary words. Insert a caret (^) where words are needed, and write the needed words on the lines provided.

1. My baby sister can’t barely climb the steps.
11. Nobody in our neighborhood knows nothing about gardening.
12. I won’t never be able to play the guitar as well as B. B. King.
13. The directions that José gave us don’t make no sense.
14. Although Carol has only one arm, she hasn’t never lost the city tennis championship.
15. Our family hardly never gets e-mail on Sunday.
Review C: Misplaced Modifiers

**EXERCISE A** Underline the misplaced phrase or clause in each of the following sentences. Then, draw an arrow from the phrase or clause to its correct location in the sentence.

**Example 1.** Felipe called out of the yard to tell us that our dog had jumped.

1. Chirping excitedly, I listened to the bird.
2. Lucas designed a costume for the play with red sequins.
3. Our family saw giraffes driving through the game preserve.
4. Jazz musician Stefon Harris plays the vibraphone, whose first album is called *A Cloud of Red Dust*.
5. I brought a scarf for Mother that is made of silk.
6. The giant land tortoise inhabits the Galápagos Islands which can live 200 years.
7. The man saw a movie about George Washington in the brown hat.
8. The bowl fell on the floor that was filled with fruit salad.
10. I saw a petrified tree taking a shortcut through the woods.

**EXERCISE B** Rewrite the following sentences to correct dangling participial phrases.

**Example 1.** Excited about tomorrow's race, sleep did not come easily. *Because I was excited about tomorrow's race, sleep did not come easily.*

11. Prepared for the test, it seemed easy.

12. Excited about the party, the balloons were blown up.

13. Sewing all day, my costume is finally finished.

14. Soothed by the soft music, the baby's cries stopped.

15. Traveling through the city of Ayuthaya in Thailand, the beautiful temple called Wat Tanot was seen.
**EXERCISE A**  In most of the following sentences, a modifier is used incorrectly. Cross out any unnecessary or incorrect words. Insert a caret (^), and write above it any words that need to be inserted. If a sentence is already correct, write C beside the sentence’s number.

**Example 1.** Please speak slow so everyone can hear you.
1. Karl hasn’t never heard of the Paralympics.
2. Is the Sears Tower in Chicago the most tallest building in the United States?
3. Grandmother never hears no one who speaks softly.
4. Pluto is farther from the sun than any planet in our solar system.
5. Of the two jackets, this one will keep you warmest.
6. Many of the doors in Zanzibar are carved beautiful.
7. The comedian’s jokes were more funnier than usual.
8. I enjoyed *Swan Lake* more than any other ballet I have seen.
9. Which of these three salsas is spicier?
10. Yo-Yo Ma plays the cello really good.

**EXERCISE B**  Rewrite the following sentences to correct misplaced or dangling modifiers.

**Example 1.** Reading my mystery novel, the afternoon slipped away.  
*As I was reading my mystery novel, the afternoon slipped away.*

11. One player has a dog named Woofer on the team.  
12. Rushing to answer the telephone, the ringing stopped.
13. Birds swooped to the bird feeder chirping loudly.
14. Tumbling across the mat, the gymnast’s strength and grace were amazing.
15. The tired runner congratulated the winner, admitting defeat.
Usage Glossary A

Review the glossary entries on pages 308–311 of Elements of Language for information on the correct usage of the following terms:

- a, an
- accept, except
- affect, effect
- ain’t
- all ready, already
- all right
- a lot
- anyways, anywheres, everywheres,
- nowheres, somewheres
- at
- bad, badly

**EXERCISE**  Two choices appear in parentheses in each of the following sentences. Circle the correct choice.

**Example 1.** My sister cannot go (anywhere, anywheres) without our younger brother.

1. (Anyways, Anyway), as I was saying, the best part of the story happened after we got on the bus.

2. Did that woman tell her friends that their gift was too expensive for her to (accept, except)?

3. When my cousin returned from his week-long vacation, his refrigerator smelled (bad, badly).

4. Where did you say that Aunt Sally will (live at, live) when she moves across town in two weeks?

5. My father says that our grandfather was (a, an) honorable man.

6. Cherise was happy that there were (a lot, alot) of the same old choices on the new menu.


8. Dad says that he would prefer to wait in the car until we are (all ready, already) to leave the house.

9. Darla’s allergy to dogs does not (effect, affect) her sinuses as severely as her allergy to cats.

10. Is it (allright, all right) if we choose to eat lunch in the courtyard this afternoon?

11. Can you believe that those children (all ready, already) know how to speak three languages?

12. Though they were naturally athletic, the enthusiastic couple played tennis (bad, badly).

13. If we search every room, I am positive we’ll find your address book (somewhere, somewheres).

14. This (is not, ain’t) the most exciting book I have ever read.

15. If you have (all ready, already) made up your mind, I will not try to persuade you any more.

16. The marching band in the navy and gold uniforms received (a, an) high score in the competition.

17. The worried teenager could not remember where she had left her (keys, keys at).

18. The lawn looks (bad, badly) today; we have not mowed it for three weeks.

19. All of the jurors (accept, except) one believed that the defendant was guilty.

20. Do you think it would be (allright, all right) if we cooked spaghetti for dinner tomorrow night?
Usage Glossary B

Review the glossary entries on pages 312–314 of Elements of Language for information on the correct usage of the following terms:

- between, among
- fewer, less
- bring, take
- good, well
- bust, busted
- had ought, hadn’t ought
- could of
- hardly, scarcely
- doesn’t, don’t

**Exercise**  Two choices appear in parentheses in each of the following sentences. Circle the correct choice.

**Example 1.** Who would *(of, have)* guessed we’d be studying in Paris?

1. Even though she was nervous, Cleo played *(good, well)* at the piano recital last night.
2. There are far *(fewer, less)* bison today than there were one hundred fifty years ago.
3. If you ask me, that little boy *(doesn’t, don’t)* look too happy.
4. José shared the prize money *(between, among)* his many friends.
5. There are *(fewer, less)* jobs in manufacturing now than there once were.
6. Don’t forget to *(bring, take)* your baseball mitt to my house tonight.
7. The extended school year was discussed *(among, between)* the three parents.
8. Derwood might *(have, of)* believed that story about Loch Ness, but I could not tell for sure.
9. Mi Ling won’t be able to *(bring, take)* her dog along when she goes away to camp.
10. The child got *(busted, caught)* when he tried to stay up later than the baby sitter had instructed.
11. Many immigrants *(brought, took)* only what they could carry when they came here to the United States.
12. Dinah’s opinion is that the novel *(ought not, hadn’t ought)* to have ended so suddenly.
13. She put the flowers *(between, among)* two pages of a favorite childhood book.
14. Jimmy Carter *(is, is not)* hardly idle in his retirement from public office.
15. Let’s put *(fewer, less)* walnuts in this batch of muffins than we put in the last.
16. We *(ought not, hadn’t ought)* to wander off too far; the trails in this park can be confusing.
17. I could *(of, have)* predicted that the most popular song of the year would be that one.
18. Not only was the toddler’s temperature too high, but we could tell that he did not feel *(good, well)*.
19. When the temperature outside goes below freezing, we let the faucets drip to prevent the pipes from *(bursting, busting)*.
20. The art teacher *(don’t, doesn’t)* mind if we talk while we work, as long as we talk quietly.
Usage Glossary C

Review the glossary entries on pages 315–317 of *Elements of Language* for information on correct usage of the following terms:

- *he, she, it, they*  
  - kind of, sort of
- *himselves*  
  - learn, teach
- *how come*  
  - leave, let
- *its, it’s*  
  - like, as
- *kind, sort, type*  
  - like, as if, as though

**Exercise**  
Two choices appear in parentheses in each of the following sentences. Circle the correct choice.

**Example 1.** Why don’t you do your homework *(like, is)* I do, right after school?

1. Perry convinced *(himself, hisself)* that he was going to win the match.
2. The peacock spread *(its, it’s)* feathers and strutted away from the turkey.
3. Abraham Lincoln was a quiet man but his words can *(teach, learn)* us a lot.
4. The man looked *(like, as though)* he had a guilty conscience, but he was later proven innocent.
5. The poet was *(kind of, somewhat)* disappointed when the publisher misunderstood her latest poem.
6. Do you know *(how come, why)* we got chosen to wash dishes tonight?
7. Although *(its, it’s)* not right to do so, some salespeople make exaggerated claims.
8. The pumpkin was *(kind of, rather)* small, but we made wonderful bread with it.
9. The old general looked *(like, as if)* he might cry when he talked about the war.
10. The small boy wanted to take the toy, but his cousin convinced him to *(leave, let)* it there.
11. David Robinson *(is, he is)* one of Uncle Gene’s favorite basketball players.
12. Will the lifeguard at camp this summer *(learn, teach)* us how to swim the butterfly stroke?
13. The professional photographer uses *(these type, this type)* of film more than any other.
14. I’d like to find out *(why, how come)* this batch of mashed potatoes turned out so lumpy.
15. Because I am good at math problems, I like to *(learn, teach)* other students how to do them.
16. The frantic baby sitter wished that the toddlers would *(let, leave)* her have peace for just one moment.
17. Model airplanes *(they are, are)* are all over the desk in my nephew’s room.
18. By the end of the boat ride, I was feeling *(kind of, slightly)* sick to my stomach.
19. *(These sorts, These sort)* of test questions are difficult until you get the chance to practice them.
20. The soccer forward decided to shoot right under the post, just *(like, as)* Coach Weinberg had told the players to do.
Usage Glossary D

Review the glossary entries on pages 319–320 of *Elements of Language* for information on the correct usage of the following terms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>of</th>
<th>their, there, they're</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>real</td>
<td>themselves, theirselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reason . . . because</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some, somewhat</td>
<td>this here, that there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than, then</td>
<td>try and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise** Two choices appear in parentheses in each of the following sentences. Circle the correct choice.

**Example 1.** Would you get *(off, off of)* that roof?

1. The reason geese migrate is *(that, because)* they can’t survive in frozen water.
2. The crowd revived *(somewhat, some)*, but Judy still thought the team deserved more support.
3. Cristina and Gil sent *(their, there)* regards from Niagara Falls.
4. From now on, I will *(try to, try and)* do my laundry more often so it won’t pile up like this.
5. Although *(they’re, their)* not large, shrews are quite strong.
6. When you finish your dinner, put your trash in one of *(them, those)* trash cans over there.
7. Robert Burns wrote the *(real, very)* lovely Scottish song “Auld Lang Syne.”
8. The reason we can grow corn today is *(because, that)* the Maya cultivated the plant over two thousand years ago.
9. The Minnesota Twins scored one run more in the final game *(than, then)* the Atlanta Braves.
10. Although *(their, there)* coats are often white, Arabian horses have jet black hair underneath.
11. I was *(extremely, real)* sorry to hear that you lost your dog.
12. Argentina is farther south *(then, than)* Ecuador and has a cooler climate.
13. The reason the Appalachians are more rounded than the Rockies is *(that, because)* they are older than the Rockies.
14. Her family pays higher property taxes because they live *(outside of, outside)* the city limits.
15. In the past ten minutes, the sun has gone down *(somewhat, some)*.
16. Class, look *(inside, inside of)* this box and choose the book that you would like to read next.
17. I told Julia that I would *(try to, try and)* have lunch with her tomorrow.
18. *(This here, This)* rainbow trout is the largest fish that I have ever caught.
19. Irene, would you pass me *(them, those)* tasty-looking appetizers?
20. Can you even believe that those seventh-graders wrote this entire play by *(themselves, themselves)*?
Usage Glossary E

Review the glossary entries on pages 321–322 of Elements of Language for information on the correct usage of the following terms:

- use to, used to
- suppose to, supposed to
- way, ways
- when, where
- who, which, that
- who’s, whose
- without, unless
- your, you’re

**Exercise**

Two choices appear in parentheses in each of the following sentences. Circle the correct choice.

**Example** 1. It’s only a short (way, ways); I think I’ll walk.

1. Singing *a cappella* is (*when there’s singing, singing*) without instrumental accompaniment.
2. This relay race is so confusing that I can’t tell (*who’s, whose*) turn it is to run.
3. Don’t go swimming in the ocean (*without, unless*) you have someone with you.
4. Delia is the only child in her class (*who, which*) is from Peru.
5. Negotiation is (*where people discuss and compromise, discussing and compromising*) to reach an agreement.
6. (*Who’s, Whose*) the congressperson for your district?
7. Old Dog Tray was the faithful dog (*that, who*) Stephen Foster owned.
8. Nobody should try out (*without, unless*) he or she is willing to rehearse daily.
9. A mosaic is (*when you have small pieces, small pieces*) of material, such as colored gravel, fitted together to create a design on a flat surface.
10. Did it feel unusual at all when you changed (*your, you’re*) last name?
11. The ancient Egyptians had an underworld god (*who’s, whose*) name was Osiris.
12. You can’t travel to some countries (*without, unless*) you have a passport.
13. The bird (*that, who*) visited the speaker in Poe’s famous poem was a raven.
14. The photographer used a special lens because her subject was a (*ways, way*) off.
15. The middle school science teachers are (*suppose, supposed*) to go to a conference next month.
16. In order to collect data from Mars, the satellite has to travel a long (*way, ways*).
17. Sheila read (*where, that*) the city of Austin is going to tear down that dance hall.
18. The flight attendant says that (*your, you’re*) supposed to fasten your seat belt.
19. Nelson is not (*used to, use to*) animals, but he warmed up to the puppy right away.
20. The driving instructor pointed out a sign (*where, that shows*) the speed limit has changed.
EXERCISE Two choices appear in parentheses in each of the following sentences. Circle the correct choice.

Example 1. Did you see that turtle before it slid (off of, off) the rock and into the water?

1. Jesse will hand me (them, those) paintbrushes when he is finished with them.

2. By the time we got around to raking the leaves in our front yard, winter had (all ready, already) come, and there were flurries of snow in the air.

3. Tiger Woods (he is, is) my favorite athlete.

4. Red peppers have a powerful flavor, and so they (affect, effect) the taste of a dish more than most other vegetables do.

5. Can you believe that Martha (doesn’t, don’t) want to run for class president?

6. There (was, was not) scarcely any water in southern California until engineers built waterways from the mountains.

7. Although the chess champion had (fewer, less) pieces on the board than her opponent, she knew how she would win the game.

8. After World War II, several Allied nations divided Germany (between, among) themselves.

9. Did you really get (caught, busted) falling asleep in class?

10. Dad read in the paper (where, that) the city will let the voters decide whether to create a park here.

11. My Spanish is (kind of, somewhat) better than my French.

12. Miguel bought (himself, hisself) a good pen for his writing class.

13. I still do not understand (why, how come) getting in shape is so difficult while getting out of shape is so easy.

14. William Shakespeare’s plays are more well known (than, then) those of his contemporaries.

15. The reason Lana got angry was (because, that) Kadeem criticized her unfairly.

16. President Kennedy told Americans to ask what they could do for (their, there) country.

17. Actually, I did not really want to go to the movies on Friday night (anyway, anyways).

18. Don’t make a promise (without, unless) you can keep it.

19. Was it Great Britain (whose, who’s) flag was first planted at the summit of Mount Everest?

20. The overanxious reporter did not (leave, let) the figure skaters have a moment to themselves before asking them how they felt.
Two choices appear in parentheses in each of the following sentences. Circle the correct choice.

Example 1. Even though Arthur had (all ready, already) gone to the grocery store once today, he had to go back because he was missing an ingredient.

1. Why don’t we (accept, except) the seventh-graders who apply to our club so that we can increase our membership?

2. What do you think would be the (effect, affect) of combining hydrogen and oxygen?

3. The living room has warmed up (somewhat, some), but Leah still feels comfortable in a sweater and heavy socks.

4. Some of the most expensive cheeses smell (bad, badly).

5. I have (fewer, less) money in the bank than Carmelita has because she is very good at saving.

6. Did you know that Mrs. Lawless (used to, use to) live in Ireland?

7. Amit is going to (bring, take) his new video of Never Cry Wolf to Janet’s party.

8. Before there was anesthesia, doctors (could, couldn’t) hardly do surgery at all.

9. The basketball center hurt (himself, hisself) at the end of the first half of the championship game.

10. It’s (kind of, rather) sad that black-and-white movies are seldom made these days.

11. Licking one paw, the snow leopard stared at us from within (its, it’s) icy den.

12. In the middle of January, we felt (like, as though) warm weather would never return.

13. The lioness holds a (real, very) important responsibility in the pride.

14. The baby bird flapped its wings tentatively and (than, then) grew brave enough to fly out of the nest.

15. The city of Sydney, Mr. Wilkinson’s first home, is a long (way, ways) from here.

16. (This here, This) chicken soup is the best meal to have when it is cold outside.

17. Firing a piece of pottery is (when you bake it, baking it) until the clay is hard and dry.

18. A bee will not sting (without, unless) you provoke it.

19. Yes, I’d love to see (your, you’re) art portfolio if you are willing to show it to me.

20. (Those sorts, Those sort) of paint will not mix well with the ones on this shelf.
EXERCISE  Two choices appear in parentheses in each of the following sentences. Circle the correct choice.

**Example 1.** I meant it when I told you that *(you're, your)* a talented singer.

1. After driving through this neighborhood where the houses look so similar, I hardly know where *(I am, I am at)* anymore.

2. Let’s find out *(who’s, whose)* going to organize the school newspaper staff next year.

3. By the end of the summer, I am determined to *(teach, learn)* myself how to steer this canoe.

4. The Johnstown Flood was a *(real, very)* tragic event in U.S. history.

5. My family *(use to, used to)* live near the beach.

6. Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr., is the leader *(that, which)* everyone remembers from the civil rights marches of the 1960s.

7. Clay has misplaced *(a real, an extremely)* important piece of paper.

8. Luis *(had ought, ought)* to finish this project before he starts the next one.

9. Jerry practiced his guitar chords every night, just *(like, as)* his teacher had encouraged him to do.

10. Carla is proud of her younger brother Joey for doing so *(good, well)* at his new job at the software company.

11. I was so hungry last night that I could *(of, have)* eaten the whole batch of pasta myself.

12. Keith has read *(alot, a lot)* of stories by his favorite science fiction author, but the tale he likes best of all is the one about the man with tattoos that come to life.

13. My best friend can sometimes seem blunt, but I am glad that she is *(an, a)* honest person.

14. Lauretta’s shin stung when the tennis ball hit it, but after a minute or two it felt *(all right, all right)*.

15. All of the United States is in North America *(accept, except)* Hawaii.

16. When the cast and crew were *(all ready, already)*, the stage manager drew back the curtain.

17. This *(isn’t, ain’t)* the spiciest salsa I have ever tried, but it tastes good with the meal.

18. Maurice accidentally stepped on the back of my shoe, and the shoe flew *(off, off of)* my foot.

19. Why do your cats Princess and Wallflower always go off to the corner by *(themselves, themselves)* when it is raining outside?

20. Could you and I *(try to, try and)* visit my old friend Jason in Seattle this summer?
MECHANICS

EXERCISE A

In each sentence below, cross out any word that has an error in capitalization and write the corrected word above it.

Example 1. A love for reading is a great thing to develop.

1. When I was eight years old, my grandmother came to live with my family.
2. She always used to say, “great books need to be read often.”
3. Every night after dinner, my grandmother and I would settle down to read.
4. On some evenings she’d say something like “o, great bookcase! What do you have for us?”
5. Then she’d close her eyes and pick the first book that she touched.

EXERCISE B

In each item below, cross out any word that has an error in capitalization and write the corrected word above it.


[6] dear Annika,


[15] your friend,

Anna

Copyright © by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. All rights reserved.

NAME ____________ CLASS ____________ DATE ____________
Proper Nouns A

13e. **Capitalize proper nouns.**

(1) **Capitalize the names of persons and animals.**

Capitalize initials in names and abbreviations that come before or after names. For names that contain more than one part, capitalization may vary.

**EXAMPLES**
- Franklin D. Roosevelt
- Shep
- Willem de Kooning
- Walter de la Mare
- Ms. Margaret Halloway
- Katie Brown, M.D.

**EXERCISE A** Circle all letters that should be capitalized in the following sentences.

Example 1. The professor named Jerald Middleton seems to know everything there is to know about William Shakespeare.

1. Is there anyone in this class who can tell us Booker T. Washington’s middle name?
2. I loved the picture Alex just sent us that shows her two cats, Pumpkin and Snowball.
3. Her daughter’s favorite essay was written by Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr.
4. If you are looking for a good dentist, you may want to try Joseph Dawes, D.D.S.
5. The newspaper story announced the company’s new chief financial officer: Shawn T. Moddes.
6. When I get my first dog, a Sheltie, I will name her Lassie.
7. The directions say to turn left at the street just after the sign that says “Marcia Ford, M.D.”
8. While at her friend Mandy’s house, Suzi felt awkward every time Mandy’s mother called out, “Here, Susie!” and the family’s poodle came running.
9. Did the magazine article you read quote Herbert Martin, Sr., or Herbert Martin, Jr.?
10. When she was in high school, Jackie Joyner-Kersee was on the basketball, volleyball, and track teams.

**EXERCISE B** For each of the following types of common nouns, provide a corresponding proper noun. Be sure to capitalize each proper noun correctly.

Example Rebecca Lobo  1. name of a professional basketball player

11. pet
12. teacher
13. U.S. president
14. person in your class (include first name, middle initial, and last name)
15. doctor (followed by appropriate abbreviation)
for CHAPTER 13: CAPITAL LETTERS pages 333–335

Proper Nouns B

13e. Capitalize proper nouns.

(2) Capitalize geographical names.

EXAMPLES the Gulf of Mexico the Southwest Prince William Forest Fifty-first Street [The second part of a hyphenated street number is not capitalized.]

(3) Capitalize the names of planets, stars, constellations, and other heavenly bodies.

EXAMPLES Neptune Polaris Great Nebula

EXERCISE A For each item, write a C next to each common noun and a P next to each proper noun.

Example ______ 1. Cassiopeia

______ 1. the Milky Way ______ 6. Ursa Minor
______ 2. a constellation ______ 7. the large continent
______ 3. the Indian Ocean ______ 8. Mediterranean Sea
______ 4. a beautiful ocean ______ 9. a still, silent lake
______ 5. the southwest peak ______ 10. Pikes Peak

EXERCISE B Circle all letters that should be capitalized in the following sentences. Draw a slash (/) through any incorrectly capitalized letters.

Example 1. A constellation called the Southern Cross appears on Australia’s flag.

11. Does your uncle live in a suburb of Washington, D.C., or in the city itself?

12. Reginald says to turn left on Thirty-Seventh street.

13. The only constellation Shannon can recognize immediately is Orion.

14. The main business district of Omaha, Nebraska, lies near the Missouri river.

15. The freshwater Lakes that empty into this river are known as the great lakes.

16. Sharing its name with a mythological god, Pluto is a dwarf planet in our solar system.

17. A certain species of wild monkey has been living on the famous rock of Gibraltar for hundreds of years.

18. To go from Austin to San Antonio, he gets on Interstate 35 and starts driving south.

19. My cousins have lived on Peachtree Lane in Atlanta, Georgia, for three years.

20. The largest ice cap in Iceland, Vatna Glacier, covers more than three thousand square miles.
Proper Nouns C

13e. Capitalize proper nouns.

(4) Capitalize the names of teams, organizations, institutions, and government bodies.

EXAMPLES Kansas City Chiefs Future Teachers of America

(5) Capitalize the names of historical events and periods, special events, holidays, and other calendar items.

EXAMPLES Malta Conference the Sixties Springfield Summer Fair

EXERCISE A Circle all letters that should be capitalized in the following sentences.

Example 1. I love to watch the city’s fireworks display every year on the Fourth of July.
1. Will the post office be closed on Columbus Day this year?
2. How many schools in the United States have the name Trinity College or Trinity University?
3. The committee decided that the new school’s teams would be known as the Lincoln High Panthers.
4. To punish the colonists for the rebellion known as the Boston Tea Party, England passed a series of laws that the colonists called the Intolerable Acts.
5. Can you name the country where the matches of the next World Cup will be played?
6. My neighbor helped organize the parade for Veterans Day.
7. Are you going to New Orleans during Mardi Gras?
8. Next September a friend of Joe’s will begin attending the University of Redlands in California.
10. Aretha’s mom has been working downtown at the Department of Insurance for seven years.

EXERCISE B For each of the following common nouns, provide a corresponding proper noun. Be sure to capitalize each proper noun correctly.

Example Labor Day

__________ 1. holiday
__________ 11. professional baseball team
__________ 12. historical period
__________ 13. historical event
__________ 14. government body
__________ 15. organization
Proper Nouns D

13e. Capitalize proper nouns.

(6) Capitalize the names of nationalities, races, and peoples.

EXAMPLES  Ojibway  European  Chinese  Caucasian

(7) Capitalize the names of religions and their followers, holy days and celebrations, sacred writings, and specific deities.

EXAMPLES  Roman Catholics  Hanukkah  Rig-Veda  Allah

EXERCISE A  In the items below, write a C next to each common noun and a P next to each proper noun.

Example  C  1. nationality

____  1. British
____  2. land
____  3. Germans
____  4. deity
____  5. Koran

EXERCISE B  Circle all letters that should be capitalized in the following sentences.

Example  1. Have you ever taken part in a Passover Seder?

6. In Greek mythology, Hermes is the cunning messenger of the gods known for his winged shoes and hat.
7. Brooke and Paige just bought tickets to see their favorite Celtic band play on Saturday night.
8. Lauren's mom prepared a wonderful selection of food for the first night of Rosh Hashanah.
9. The supreme deity of the Muslim religion, Islam, is Allah.
10. My two favorite dishes at that Thai restaurant are ginger shrimp and cashew chicken.
11. We watched a video about the history of Polynesian New Zealanders, known as Maoris.
12. As we drove down the street, we admired the architecture of the Episcopal church to our left and the Baptist church to our right.
13. When Corey visited India, she learned more about Hinduism, which is the country's principal religion.
14. African culture was influenced by the Egyptians, who provided Africa with its earliest civilizations.
15. One reason that Kevin is learning Hebrew is to increase his understanding of the Torah.
Proper Nouns E

13e. Capitalize proper nouns.

(8) Capitalize the names of buildings and other structures.

EXAMPLES  Globe Theatre  Oakwood High School  Brooklyn Bridge

(9) Capitalize the names of monuments, memorials, and awards.

EXAMPLES  Jefferson Memorial  Tomb of the Unknown Soldier  Newbery Award

EXERCISE A  In the items below, write a C next to each common noun and a P next to each proper noun.

Example  

1. bridge

1. Big Ben

2. church

3. L. C. Anderson High School

4. Majestic Theater

5. medal

EXERCISE B  Circle all letters that should be capitalized in the following sentences.

Example  1. The arc de triomphe in Paris stands above France’s tomb of the unknown soldier.

6. I just noticed that construction is finally underway for Atkins Elementary School.

7. Did you know that the design for France’s Eiffel tower was chosen from a contest?

8. Tanya watched the country music awards on TV last night, but I decided to read.


10. In 1940, William Saroyan, a writer whose work celebrates life, turned down a Pulitzer Prize for a play that he said was “no more great or good” than anything else he had written.

11. When we saw a show at the Paramount theater last Wednesday, we parked across the street at the Covington hotel’s parking garage.

12. In Washington this past summer, Kira saw the White House and the Lincoln Memorial.

13. Once called the Tokyo Imperial Museum, the Tokyo National Museum showcases Japanese calligraphy, paintings, swords, pottery, and many other kinds of art.

14. Suddenly, a booming voice came over the loudspeaker announcing that Mr. Romano had won our school district’s educator of the year award.

15. The shape of the Sydney Opera House is hard to forget!
MECHANICS

EXERCISE A
In the items below, write a C next to each common noun and a P next to each proper noun.

Example 1. Hill Country Flyer

   1. train
   2. USS Lexington
   3. company
   4. Kraft
   5. Sputnik

EXERCISE B
Circle all letters that should be capitalized in the following sentences.

Example 1. Every time Angela goes to Apollo’s Cafe, she orders the same thing: pasta primavera.

6. When the British ship Carpathia reached the Titanic at 4:00 in the morning, just over seven hundred people were rescued.

7. The primary corporation that provides bus travel among cities in the United States and Canada is Greyhound Lines, Inc.

8. Uncle Carlo was thrilled when he got the chance to unveil the sign at his brand-new store, Cornerstone Books.

9. Charles Lindbergh’s plane, Spirit of St. Louis, had the most advanced aircraft instruments available in the late 1920’s.

10. When my Australian friend Fiona says “nestlé,” she pronounces the name of this company as if it rhymes with the word wrestle.
**Proper Adjectives and Names of School Subjects**

13f. **Capitalize proper adjectives.**

A *proper adjective* is formed from a proper noun and is capitalized.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROPER NOUN</th>
<th>PROPER ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>a German scientist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kansas City</td>
<td>a Kansas City landmark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>a Mexican artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>William Shakespeare</td>
<td>a Shakespearean play</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13g. **Do not capitalize the names of school subjects, except course names followed by numerals and languages.**

**EXAMPLES** After lunch I go to French class and then to art and then to Algebra I.

**EXERCISE A** In each sentence below, draw a slanting line through any error in capitalization and write the letter correctly above the error.

*Example 1.* My new classes are Spanish and home economics.

1. Our junior high offers French, Spanish, and Russian courses.
2. The Chunnel connects England and France by way of the English Channel.
3. Shakespeare was the most famous of the Elizabethan playwrights.
4. We studied the sculpture of Rodin in my Art History course.
5. The Canadian and Mexican nations are two nations on the North American continent.
6. I am taking an American history course as well as Chemistry I.
7. The United States bought the Alaskan region from the Russian government.
8. Are you going to take government II in summer school?
9. Must you complete algebra II before you can take a geometry class?
10. In Mrs. Bard’s Geography class this semester, we will focus on African and Asian countries.

**EXERCISE B** For each proper noun, give a corresponding proper adjective. For each proper adjective, give a corresponding proper noun. You may consult a dictionary.

*Example 1.* Turkey ____________ *Turkish*

11. Texas ____________
12. Celt ____________
13. Japan ____________
14. Jewish ____________
15. Scandinavia ____________
Proper Nouns and Adjectives A

**Exercise A** In each sentence below, draw a slanting line through any error in capitalization and write the letter correctly above the error.

**Example 1.** Amy signed up to take Swahili as her elective.

1. I’d prefer to have lunch rather than dinner at Bombay Grill tomorrow.
2. On May 7, 1915, the British passenger ship *Lusitania* sank after being hit by a German torpedo.
3. Do you remember when David Hyde Pierce won the funniest male actor award at the TV guide Awards?
4. After attending acting 101, Aaron became even more outgoing than he had been in the first place.
5. Even though she says she wants to try something new, Kara orders enchiladas every time she goes to a Mexican Restaurant.

**Exercise B** For each proper noun, give a corresponding common noun. For each common noun, give a corresponding proper noun.

**Example 1.** continent

1. Norway
2. singer
3. Physics II
4. building
5. Houston Comets

**Examples**
- Hal K. Moss, M.D.
- Lebanon
- February
- Australia
- the Koran
- the Enterprise
- French
- Cornish
- South American
- European
- American history
- Geometry I
- art class
- German
Proper Nouns and Adjectives B

13e. Capitalize proper nouns.

**EXAMPLES** Ms. Alice Arkeleta Twenty-third Street Mars Bureau of the Interior
Zoroastrianism Mayflower Hotel Purple Heart Banana Republic

13f. Capitalize proper adjectives.

**EXAMPLES** Canadian Socratic Israeli Marxist

13g. Do not capitalize the names of school subjects, except course names followed by numerals and languages.

**EXAMPLES** Auto Mechanics I English literature government Russian

**EXERCISE A** In the items below, write a C next to each common noun and a P next to each proper noun.

**Example**  \[P\]  1. Hillcrest Lane

1. highway
2. New York City
3. French Literature 305
4. Avenue F
5. general

**EXERCISE B** In each sentence below, draw a slanting line through any error in capitalization and write the letter correctly above the error.

**Example** 1. Though Kleenex is a Brand Name, many people use this word when referring to any facial tissues.

6. The author of the controversial Magazine article was Pat Frost, m.d.
7. Earth is the fifth largest planet in the Solar System, and it is the third farthest away from the sun.
8. An architectural masterpiece that includes elements of Greek and Roman design, St. Paul’s cathedral stands in London, England.
9. Many Churches observe Ash Wednesday by using ashes of palms burned after the previous year’s Palm Sunday service.
10. Because his Poems mimic human thought, the works of the American poet John Ashbery often do not have a logical beginning, middle, or end.
Titles Used with People

13h. Capitalize titles.

(1) Capitalize a person’s title when the title comes before the person’s name.

Generally, a title used alone or following a person’s name is not capitalized, especially if the title is preceded by a, an, or the. However, a title used alone in direct address is usually capitalized.

EXAMPLES
- Captain Nemo
- Dr. Lo
- Ms. Kohari
- the colonel

How are you, Lieutenant? What did the lieutenant say?

(2) Capitalize a word showing a family relationship when the word is used before or in place of a person’s name, unless the word follows a possessive noun or pronoun.

EXAMPLES
- That’s Mom.
- That’s my mom.
- Aunt Toski
- Una’s aunt Toski

Exercise A Two choices appear in parentheses in each of the following sentences. Circle the choice that has correct capitalization.

Example 1. We have to wait only fifteen more minutes until (Uncle Marshall’s, uncle Marshall’s) plane arrives from Minneapolis!

1. After a tense campaign, the Latin Club finally elected its next (President, president).
2. What day of the week will (Dr. Karnik, dr. Karnik) be taking another look at Catherine’s sprained ankle?
3. If you want an opinion about crime in this town, just ask (Constable Taylor, constable taylor).
4. Serena’s (Sister Amy, sister Amy) used to be a conductor of the Seattle Girls’ Choir.
5. Our next-door neighbor was the (Mayor, mayor) of Des Moines over twenty years ago.

Exercise B In each sentence below, draw a slanting line through any error in capitalization and write the letter correctly above the error.

Example 1. My Mom’s insisting that I go to the Doctor.

6. The leader of the service this morning will be rabbi Schmidt.
7. If you ever get the chance to watch a trial at the Supreme Court, you will likely be impressed with the Justices and their knowledge of each case.
8. Signs all around town urged voters to reelect judge Perez.
9. Do you think that one of the former Presidential candidates will visit our city?
10. Marta’s Brother Marcus says he owes his interest in chemistry to professor Frazee.
EXERCISE A  In the items below, place a check mark next to each title with correct capitalization.

Examples   1. A Separate Peace

_______ 2. Yankee Thunder: the Legendary Life of Davy Crockett

_______ 1. “Golden Door: A Nation Of Immigrants”

_______ 2. Who's The Boss?

_______ 3. The Return of the Native

_______ 4. “Section Four: Sound Effects”

_______ 5. Hagar the Horrible

EXERCISE B  In each sentence below, draw a slanting line through any error in capitalization and write the letter correctly above the error.

Example  1. Lynne recommended that I buy a CD called Ten Year night by Lucy Kaplansky.

6. Have you ever seen the TV show the Dukes Of Hazzard?

7. The ending of Where The Red Fern Grows is too sad for Rita to read more than once.

8. My mother’s favorite song on her shine CD is “Letters To Katharine.”

9. Today’s Mother Goose & Grimm Comic Strip features the dog gnawing on its owner’s shoes.

10. At Shelly’s house we played Asteroids hyper 64 for twenty minutes, then went outside and took a walk.

11. The April issue of Reader’s digest contains an article by Connie Chung.

12. She saw James Stewart in the play harvey at the Lillian Beaumont Theater.

13. Aunt Helen gave me a copy of the book Pride And Prejudice.

14. Have you seen the play evita, the story of Eva Peron?

15. Your assignment for next week is to read “Chapter 18: The Power Of The People.”
MECHANICS
EXERCISE A
In the items below, place a check mark next to each word group with correct capitalization.

Examples 1. The Principles Of Aikido

2. To Kill a Mockingbird

1. “Chapter 2: Lawns and Gardens”

2. my uncle Ken

3. Tokyo extreme Racer

4. Death of a Salesman

5. New Hampshire’s Governor

EXERCISE B
In each sentence below, draw a slanting line through any error in capitalization and write the letter correctly above the error.

Example 1. How do you pronounce the word live in Lyle Lovett’s album Live In Texas?

6. “Casey at the bat” may be the most famous baseball poem ever written.

7. Jerome enjoyed the Columbia Symphony Orchestra’s version of Aaron Copland’s Appalachian spring.

8. Do you think we could talk uncle Jerry into renting A League Of Their Own with us tonight?

9. Even though it is short, The Gettysburg address effectively describes president Lincoln’s vision of American democracy.

10. I would love to get the chance to see the Broadway play The lion King, and then compare it to the movie.
EXERCISE In each sentence below, draw a slanting line through any error in capitalization and write the letter correctly above the error.

Example 1. “A Tragedy Revealed: a Heroine’s Last Days” tells the story of Anne Frank.

1. James Whistler’s oil painting Miss Cicely Alexander: harmony In Gray and Green is realistic and striking.
2. Who do you think will become the next Governor of Minnesota?
3. The group of young Soldiers addressed colonel Ezba with a great deal of respect.
4. How many recipes have you cut out of this issue of Cooking light magazine, grandmother?
5. Car Wheels on A Gravel Road by Lucinda Williams is a CD that aunt Shelby listens to constantly.
6. The Professor who teaches Jake’s genetics class recommended that the students read the book jurassic Park.
7. Playing forcefully, the violin soloist amazed the audience with her performance in the production of Vivaldi’s the four seasons.
8. What time will aunt mary and uncle theo be coming to dinner this Friday?
9. I find Walt Whitman’s poem “o captain! my captain!” rather inspiring.
10. Whenever she gets the chance, Stacy’s Aunt Thera reads the New York Times.
Review A: Capitalization

**EXERCISE A**  In each group of words below, draw a slanting line through any error in capitalization and write the letter correctly above the error.

**Example 1.** delivering the San Francisco *chronicle* in Berkeley

1. queen elizabeth II of great britain
2. the capital of missouri, jefferson city
3. 327 east seventy-second street, new york, new york
4. a Summer vacation in the mountains
5. the largest newspaper in the state of alabama

**EXERCISE B**  In each sentence below, draw a slanting line through any error in capitalization and write the letter correctly above the error.

**Example 1.** On our trip to Washington, D.C., we saw the Lincoln *memorial*.

6. Of all of Harrison Ford’s movies, I like *Raiders of The Lost Ark* the best.
7. Which song begins with the words “o beautiful, for spacious skies”?
8. You will be a fine member of the staff of Carnegie hospital, doctor.
9. The Golden Gate bridge is in San Francisco.
10. Drive West on Route 66.
11. Many texans cheer for the football team at the University of Texas.
12. Next winter we will visit my Grandmother in South Carolina.
14. Nova Scotia and New Brunswick are separated by the bay of fundy.
15. Brazil covers nearly half of the south american continent.
16. The United States celebrates its independence from england on the fourth of july.
17. The planet mercury is closer to the sun than is our own planet, earth.
18. Ernest hemingway wrote a book titled *the old man and the sea*.
19. The irish poet william butler yeats wrote “the wild swans at coole.”
20. First-year students at houston high school must take algebra I.
Review B: Capitalization

**Exercise A** In each group of words below, draw a slanting line through any error in capitalization and write the letter correctly above the error.

**Example 1.** a new Huffy Bicycle

1. new hampshire’s largest city, manchester
2. the Western side of Pyramid lake
3. a member of the united states congress
4. the miami herald, a large city newspaper
5. 803 south Fifteenth avenue, Wishtree, arkansas

**Exercise B** In each sentence below, draw a slanting line through any error in capitalization and write the letter correctly above the error.

**Example 1.** the first time i saw a lion was at the San Diego zoo.

6. Which Shakespeare character said “all the world’s a stage”?  
7. The poem begins “once upon a midnight dreary . . .”  
8. In my art history class i saw a print of one of Dürer’s etchings.  
9. Toronto is the Canadian city closest to Niagara falls.  
10. Wittenberg university is in the state of Ohio.  
11. The german flag has three stripes—a red one, a gold one, and a black one.  
12. In what year or years did Jack Nicholson win an academy award?  
13. Last Summer I went swimming in Lake Erie.  
14. farmers in the midwest grow most of the nation’s wheat.  
15. The Vikings were scandinavian explorers and adventurers.  
16. Did you see the movie planet of the apes?  
17. Mia and i enjoyed the french movie the return of martin guerre.  
18. sophomores at harrington high school must take world history I.  
19. When did you purchase your boat, The Sandpiper, captain?  
20. College students really enjoy the dartmouth winter carnival.
Example 1. Where did mom set my copy of Great Expectations?

1. Are you referring to the amy Shook who is a computer programmer in san Francisco?
2. One of my favorite CDs of all time is Sarah McLachlan’s surfacing.
3. The tourist stood in front of a map on the wall at grand central station.
4. When you get to the day-care center called here we grow, ask for the director whose name is melissa mallett.
5. According to legend, those who kiss the famous blarney stone located near cork, ireland, will gain the ability to persuade others.
6. When their older sister graduated with two master’s degrees, Beth and sally congratulated her by sending her a letter addressed to ellen Sharp, m.a., M.B.A.
7. What did aunt Tamisha think of the 1999 version of a Midsummer Night’s Dream?
8. The reverend Michael Hunn, a chaplain at kent high school, coaches baseball.
9. The photography in a River Runs Through It made Maria’s Mother want to visit Montana.
10. One of the history teachers from my sister’s Middle School came in yesterday and showed us slides from his trip to santiago, the capital city of chile.
11. Our friend katie brown dreamt that she bought a tiny monkey and named him pepe.
12. Marcus Aurelius, who became Emperor of rome in A.D. 161, is associated with the Golden Age of rome.
14. After your Mom turns left, look for the sign that reads, “Isabel Price, d.d.s.”
15. Was the USS nimitz named for the World War II U.S. admiral chester nimitz?
17. Julie loved her tour of the alhambra, a palace in granada, Spain.
18. Sharla’s Mom is an English teacher at the local Middle School.
19. Missy’s Uncle Bruce says that he always enjoys reading The New Yorker.
20. Dorothy jeakins won an oscar for her costume designs in Joan of arc.
End Marks

An *end mark* is a mark of punctuation placed at the end of a sentence.

14a. Use a period at the end of a statement (or declarative sentence).

**EXAMPLE**  The manatee is also called a sea cow.

14b. Use a question mark at the end of a question (an interrogative sentence).

**EXAMPLE**  Have you ever seen a manatee?

14c. Use an exclamation point at the end of an exclamation (an exclamatory sentence).

**EXAMPLE**  That’s amazing!

14d. Use a period or an exclamation point at the end of a request or a command (an imperative sentence).

**EXAMPLES**  Please read this book about manatees [a request]
                                 Give me that book right now! [a command]

**EXERCISE**  In the following sentences, add periods, question marks, and exclamation points where they are needed.

**Example 1.** Look at this amazing photograph!

1. Do you know where Sanibel Island is
2. Sometimes you can see manatees off the coast
3. Did you know they are endangered
4. Please give me that book about endangered species
5. What wonderful photos it contains
6. I’d like to learn more about endangered species
7. Will you teach me what you’ve learned
8. What an exciting book this is
9. I have learned a lot about animals from this book
10. Can you recommend some other good books
EXERCISE A  Insert periods where appropriate in the following sentences.

Example 1. I read a biography of C. S. Lewis.
1. Mrs Walsh is the principal of Westdale Elementary School.
2. Have you met Dr Richards?
3. Zechariah Hoyt, Jr, wrote the prize-winning essay on ocelots.
4. Mr and Mrs Bertinot are joining us for dinner tonight.
5. Mr A D Mannion will be playing drums with the band tonight.

EXERCISE B  On the line provided, write the abbreviation or acronym for the word or phrase.

Example 1. Federal Bureau of Investigation

1. Federal Bureau of Investigation
2. ounce
3. pound
4. yard
5. National Aeronautics and Space Administration
6. Public Broadcasting Service
7. teaspoon
8. centimeter
9. Central Intelligence Agency
10. Individual Retirement Account
11. feet

Abbreviations

Many abbreviations are followed by a period.

EXAMPLES  Joel H. Fairweather  M. E. Gadski  Ms  Jr  Ph.D  N.Y.  Ark  Co  Inc  Corp  A.M  P.M  B.C  A.D  Ave  St  Rd

An acronym is a word formed from the first (or first few) letters of a series of words.

EXAMPLES  MADD  ZIP  OPEC  CAD  DOS  RAM

Abbreviations for government agencies and some widely used abbreviations are written as acronyms.

EXAMPLES  FBI  CD  NFL  ABC

Abbreviations for units of measure are usually written without periods. However, you should use a period with the abbreviation in. (for inch or inches) to distinguish it from the word in.

EXAMPLES  km  ml  ft  tsp
End Marks and Abbreviations

**14a.** Use a period at the end of a statement (or declarative sentence).

**14b.** Use a question mark at the end of a question (an interrogative sentence).

**14c.** Use an exclamation point at the end of an exclamation (an exclamatory sentence).

**14d.** Use a period or an exclamation point at the end of a request or a command (an imperative sentence).

**EXAMPLES**

I'd like to go...
Will you be going?
Hurry!
Come with me.

**14e.** Many abbreviations are followed by a period.

**EXAMPLES**

J.
R.
Ewing
Rev.
Nebr.
PM.
St.
Ltd.
HUD
CIA
lb

**EXERCISE A**  In each of the following sentences, add periods, question marks, and exclamation points where needed.

**Example 1.** Did you see Mrs. Hanson in the hallway?

1. What a wonderful day this is
2. Watch out for that hole, Mr Willis
3. The meeting is at 2:00 this afternoon
4. Is Dr Winston in today
5. James Koenecke, Sr, is speaking to our class
6. Have you read anything by F Scott Fitzgerald
7. How magnificent the dove's wings are
8. Did Mrs Evans once work for the FBI
9. The plane is about to take off, so hurry up
10. Our class did research on the life of John F Kennedy, Jr

**EXERCISE B**  Add periods, question marks, and exclamation points where they are needed in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Did you speak with Walter Griffey, Jr.

11. Will Mr and Mrs Walton be coming to the play
12. Watch out for that car
13. Are we going to hear Ms Sills sing again
14. They were advised to speak with a specialist in internal medicine
15. What lovely roses Mrs Greene grows
### EXERCISE A

In the following sentences, insert commas where they are needed.

**Example 1.** Tony worked at a mint so that he could learn how money is made, where it is stored, and how the new counterfeit-proofing measures work.

1. He examined studied and took notes on the history of paper money.
2. On U.S. bills are portraits of Washington Lincoln and Hamilton.
3. I read a well-written interesting article about the designs on the corners of bills.
4. At the mint, Tony watched the complicated intricate processes of taking bills off the assembly line and packing the money.
5. He doesn’t know who determines when money is too old to use where it goes or how it is replaced.

### EXERCISE B

In the following paragraph, insert commas where they are needed.

**Example [1]** My French teacher got to hear, speak, and learn some French this summer.

Commas with Compound Sentences

14h. Use a comma before a coordinating conjunction (and, but, for, nor, or, so, or yet) when it joins independent clauses in a compound sentence.

**EXAMPLES**

The children must go to bed early, or they will be tired in the morning.

The sky was dark and cloudy, but the sun was still out.

When the independent clauses are very short, the comma before and, but, or or is sometimes omitted.

**EXAMPLES**

I’m ready but Paul isn’t.

**Exercise A** In the following sentences, insert commas where they are needed.

**Example** 1. I’m interested in sound, so I recently read several books about it.

1. The books were informative but I learned even more in my science class.

2. Big speakers called woofers make low sounds and small speakers called tweeters make high sounds.

3. Sound comes from something moving yet you can’t always see the movement.

4. Air carries vibrations to your ears and then you hear sounds.

5. Most hearing-impaired people can hear some sounds and they can feel the vibrations.

**Exercise B** In the following sentences, insert commas where they are needed.

**Example** 1. I thought I left my jacket on the porch, but it’s not there.

6. I wrote a short book about butterflies and Joshua drew the illustrations.

7. If possible, Salim will meet Beula on Tuesday or he will meet her on Friday.

8. Field hockey is an exciting team sport but soccer is my all-time favorite sport.

9. I couldn’t make it to the scout meeting so I called the troop leader to tell him.

10. I submitted my best paintings and drawings to the annual art contest but another student in my class won first prize.
Commas with Interrupters A

Use commas to set off an expression that interrupts a sentence.

(1) Use commas to set off nonessential participial phrases and nonessential subordinate clauses. Do not set off essential (or restrictive) phrases or clauses.

**EXAMPLES**

My aunt, _having been in school for five years_, is now an architect. [nonessential phrase]

Those years _that she spent in school_ have prepared her well. [essential clause]

(2) Use commas to set off nonessential appositives and nonessential appositive phrases.

**EXAMPLES**

My best friend, _Ramona Suarez_, came here from Mexico. [nonessential]

My brother _Samuel_ is the oldest of my brothers. [essential]

**EXERCISE**

In the sentences below, identify each underlined phrase or clause by writing above it _E_ for essential or _NE_ for nonessential. Insert commas where they are needed.

**Example 1.** Our nation, _made up mostly of immigrants and their descendants_, is one of the largest in the world.

1. The United States’ unique mix of ideas and cultures _which come from all over the world_ has helped to make this nation diverse and interesting.

2. The contributions _made by immigrants_ have included inventions and business ideas.

3. One group _that has contributed a great deal_ is Hispanic Americans.

4. Hispanic Americans _many of whom are bilingual_ have roots in various countries.

5. This group _one of the fastest-growing minorities_ has enriched this nation.

6. Many Mexican Americans _answering the United States’ call for migrant workers_ arrived several decades ago.

7. These workers _who were paid poorly_ strengthened the U.S. economy.

8. Unions _that they later formed_ helped them earn better wages.

9. Studying diversity _which one can find in abundance in the United States_ is helpful in understanding sociological trends within a country.

10. Many Americans _who are bilingual_ are able to get better-paying jobs than those who speak only one language.
Commas with Interrupters B

14i. Use commas to set off an expression that interrupts a sentence.

(3) Use commas to set off words of direct address.

EXAM PLES When did you get here, Aiyana? That notebook, Jeff, is mine.

(4) Use commas to set off parenthetical expressions.

A parenthetical expression is a remark that adds information or shows a relationship between ideas.

EXAM PLES That vase, I believe, dates from the twelfth century. On the other hand, it may not be as old as I think.

EXERCISE Add commas where necessary in the following sentences.

Example 1. This tree, in my opinion, is the most beautiful in the yard.

1. Dr. Phillips should I make an appointment with you next week?

2. The race therefore was equally challenging to all the contestants.

3. Are you going to join us for tea Mrs. Collins?

4. The rowers of course were exhausted after the three-hour race.

5. Small dogs for example can be great pets for the elderly.

6. The students generally speaking enjoy a great deal of variety in the lesson plans.

7. Have you read this article yet Janet?

8. Mrs. Wyatt is this painting yours?

9. Those antiques by the way are mostly forgeries.

10. The mayor on the other hand disagreed with the committee’s decision.
Commas with Introductory Elements

14j. Use a comma after certain introductory elements.

(1) Use a comma to set off a mild exclamation such as *well, oh, or why* at the beginning of a sentence. Other introductory words, such as *yes and no*, are also set off with commas.

**EXAMPLES**

*Oh*, I see. *Yes*, she has that book.

(2) Use a comma after an introductory phrase or clause.

**EXAMPLES**

*At the bend in the road*, turn right. [two prepositional phrases]
*Signaling carefully*, she changed lanes. [participial phrase]
*To water the garden*, use the sprinkler. [infinitive phrase]
*When the artists painted*, they followed several rules. [adverb clause]

**EXERCISE A** In the following sentences, insert commas where they are needed. If a sentence is already correct, write *C* to the left of the item number.

**Example 1.** On the shores of the Nile, a great civilization was born.

1. No the Egyptians were not just farmers.
2. Concerned with the afterlife Egyptian rulers built great tombs for themselves.
3. Built for monarchs and nobles many great stone tombs contained supplies for use in the afterlife.
4. While he was alive the king had his picture painted.
5. On the wall of his tomb a picture shows the king hunting.
6. Well it shows how the king once hunted.
7. When I saw the jewels I thought the kings were rich.
8. Why they believed they could take jewels to the next life.
9. Based on things found in tombs the assumption can be made that they believed they could take almost everything!
10. In Egypt great riches have been found in these tombs.

**EXERCISE B** In the following paragraph, insert commas where they are needed.

**Example** [1] During the years of the Middle Ages, beekeeping was an important part of village life.

[11] Known as the beeward the village beekeeper kept the hives. [12] Before sugar was readily available the only sweetener people had was honey. [13] By supplying beeswax the beewards also met another key need of that time—they provided a raw material for making wax candles.

[14] For most people in those days cheaper candles were made from tallow. [15] Extracted from animal fat tallow was also used to make soap.
Using Commas

**14f.** Use commas to separate items in a series.

**14g.** Use commas to separate two or more adjectives preceding a noun.

**14h.** Use a comma before a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, for, nor, or, so, or yet*) when it joins independent clauses in a compound sentence.

**14i.** Use commas to set off an expression that interrupts a sentence.

**14j.** Use a comma after certain introductory elements.

**EXERCISE** Insert commas where they are needed in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Mrs. Rogers, by the way, will be the substitute teacher next week.

1. We brought sandwiches, chips and drinks to the picnic.
2. The cold, humid weather took everyone by surprise.
3. I studied all week for the test yet I didn’t feel prepared.
4. Oh I should mention that we finished the project last night.
5. The jurors on the other hand did not understand the testimony.
6. The coach made a list of drills, posted them on the bulletin board and asked her team members to practice the drills daily.
7. John joined the baseball team, Marta joined the soccer team and Juanita joined the basketball team.
8. It was a long, slow climb to the top of the mountain but we made it.
9. Keeping an eye out for danger, the squirrel nibbled on sunflower seeds.
10. My best friend, who is from Tacoma, is the first violinist in our band.
Conventional Uses of Commas

**14k.** Use commas in certain conventional situations.

(1) Use commas to separate items in dates and addresses.

**EXAMPLES**

- On December 17, 1903, in Kitty Hawk, North Carolina, modern aviation was born.
- The aviator’s address is 12 Sky Lane, Rocketville, IN 46208.

(2) Use a comma after the salutation of a personal letter and after the closing of any letter.

**EXAMPLES**

- Dear Andrés,
- Yours truly,

**EXERCISE** The following letter is missing commas. Insert commas where they are needed.

**Example 1.** The next class field trip will take place on Tuesday, March 20, 2009.

18 Varnum Street

Charlottesville VA 22901

January 29 2009

Dear Angela

I was delighted to read your last letter, and I’m happy to know that you are doing well.

Things are going well here in good old Charlottesville Virginia and I miss you.

Last month on Friday December 16, our class went to the National Air and Space Museum in Washington D.C. On the way we stopped in Manassas Virginia for a snack and a stretch break.

At the museum, we saw an exhibit on the history of flight, and I learned about the first member of the Caterpillar Club, Harold Harris. He bailed out of a plane at McCook Field Dayton Ohio and became the first member of a club that is made up of people saved by a parachute! The exhibit was all so interesting.

I remember you asked me for Mrs. DeLillo’s address. She is at Sunnybrook Nursing Home Greystone Road Blacksburg VA 24060. She went there sometime in November 2008. I guess you know that she is scheduled for surgery on Tuesday February 7. I know she would be happy to hear from you. You could tell her about your vacation in Paris France. Her birthday is February 23 1933. Did you know that she was born in Biloxi Mississippi? I hope to hear from you soon.

Your friend

Yoko
Comma Review A

14f. Use commas to separate items in a series.
14g. Use commas to separate two or more adjectives preceding a noun.
14h. Use a comma before a coordinating conjunction (and, but, for, nor, or, so, or yet) when it joins independent clauses in a compound sentence.
14i. Use commas to set off an expression that interrupts a sentence.
14j. Use a comma after certain introductory elements.
14k. Use commas in certain conventional situations.

Exercise  Insert commas where they are needed in the following sentences.

Example 1. The younger, more delicate kittens, on the other hand, will be adopted out to families who already have at least one cat.

1. The costly fragile items will be moved first.
2. In a box under the coffee table you will find the books that you requested.
3. Well I’m not sure I would go on that trip if I were you.
4. The audience members by the way have never seen a musical production like this one.
5. Dr. Gravatz are you ready for your next patient?
6. The singers learned the music memorized the words and rehearsed the songs daily.
7. We asked how to solve the problem how to indicate the answer and where to print the results.
8. Joanna Killeen was born on November 10 1961.
9. Jeffrey Hellmer a world-class pianist studied in Rochester New York.
10. Barney doesn’t play trombone nor does he play trumpet.
Comma Review B

Use commas to separate items in a series.

Use commas to separate two or more adjectives preceding a noun.

Use a comma before a coordinating conjunction (and, but, for, nor, or, so, or yet) when it joins independent clauses in a compound sentence.

Use commas to set off an expression that interrupts a sentence.

Use a comma after certain introductory elements.

Use commas in certain conventional situations.

EXERCISE  Insert commas where they are needed in the following sentences.

Example 1.  We know jays, for example, visit our feeder, but we can’t identify the other birds.
1. The amusement park had roller coasters, carousels and pony rides.
2. I’m not sure if I would like this music so I will make a decision later.
3. I went to see the opera Madama Butterfly but I didn’t understand everything.
4. The book you’re reading by the way is by my favorite author.
5. Craig moved to 3145 Palmer Avenue, Knoxville, Tennessee.
6. Marcos did you hear my question?
7. Having stayed up most of the night the boys were very tired in the morning.
8. We planted the seeds, watered them daily and watched them grow.
10. Katerina on the other hand is a skilled graceful skater.
11. We will be in Lima, Ohio for one day and then we go on to New York.
12. Is it true Vinnie that you’ve already finished your research paper?
13. I looked all over the living room, dining room and kitchen for the cat’s toy.
14. I’m leaving so why don’t you leave with me?
15. Jason don’t forget to reserve the room.
16. Trisha and Karen are in the same classes for English, Spanish and math.
17. It was a slim green leather volume.
18. Dear Kathryn
19. While you clear the table I’ll start washing the dishes.
20. I’ll always remember June 10, 2008 as the day we moved into our new house.
Semicolons A

14l. Use a semicolon between independent clauses in a sentence when they are not joined by and, but, for, nor, or, so, or yet.

Example 1. Cotton is grown in the South; it is cultivated for its fibers.

14m. Use a semicolon between independent clauses that are joined by a conjunctive adverb or a transitional expression.

Example 2. Cotton did not do well when planted in the same fields each year; consequently, crop rotation was eventually instituted.

14n. A semicolon (rather than a comma) may be needed to separate independent clauses joined by a coordinating conjunction when the clauses contain commas.

Example 3. Cotton is a low, bushy plant, by the way; and its fibers, which are attached to the seeds, are contained in a boll.

EXERCISE In the following sentences, add semicolons where they are needed.

Example 1. In home economics we have been studying fabrics; wool is one of my favorites.

1. Wool is a great fabric for cold weather; it keeps me warm even when it gets wet.

2. My wool sweater is soft, warm, and comfortable; it was hand-knit in Norway.

3. Wool must be cut from the sheep, carded, spun, and dyed; nevertheless, the result is worth the effort.

4. I like to wear wool for skating, sledding, and hiking; however, my sister, who is allergic to wool, never wears it at all.

5. I also like to wear rayon and other synthetic materials; therefore, I buy many different types of fabrics.

6. Nylon is a strong material; however, I always seem to get runs in my nylon hose.

7. Some people prefer to wear cotton; my father thinks it’s the most comfortable material.

8. I like denim; in fact, several of my jackets are made of denim.

9. I have bought wool sweaters for my brother, my mom, and my grandfather; and my grandmother, a lady with excellent taste, once sent me a wool vest for my birthday.

10. I have learned a lot about fabrics; I will be able to make informed decisions about what kinds of material to buy.
Semicolons B

**14L.** Use a semicolon between independent clauses in a sentence when they are not joined by _and, but, for, nor, or, so, or yet._

**EXAMPLE** We left the park at dusk; it was too dark to look for the lost ball.

**14m.** Use a semicolon between independent clauses that are joined by a conjunctive adverb or a transitional expression.

**EXAMPLE** Joe loaded the camera incorrectly; as a result, one roll of film was ruined.

**14n.** A semicolon (rather than a comma) may be needed to separate independent clauses joined by a coordinating conjunction when the clauses contain commas.

**EXAMPLE** The debate team includes Jorge, Cindy, and Vladimir; and Martin, Cindy’s brother, is an alternate.

**Exercise** In the following sentences, add semicolons where they are needed.

**Example 1.** Last night was a big night; I got an award for basketball.

1. The sports banquet began an hour late; the delay was due to the storm.
2. Some roads were flooded; consequently, people had to detour.
3. Sanjay was in charge of the program; his expression showed concern.
4. Marielle, the coordinator; was eager to begin the speeches, awards presentations, and banquet but the guest speaker, who was flying in from Chicago, had not arrived.
5. The guest, our sponsor; and Coach Zeff were late; all three were to present awards.
6. Umeko’s dad had planned to leave early; nevertheless, he agreed to lead a discussion.
7. Spring storms can cause a lot of destruction; indeed, homes have been washed away.
8. Finally, our guest of honor arrived; he was soaked but smiling.
9. The applause was deafening; it sounded like a roar of thunder!
10. After the speeches, Ms. Weinberg brought out the awards; the coach presented them to all the participants in athletic programs.
Colons

14o. Use a colon before a list of items, especially after expressions like as follows or the following.

**Example** Please report to me on the following days: Monday, Tuesday, and Friday.

14p. Use a colon before a statement that explains or clarifies a preceding statement.

**Example** I agree with what Mrs. Chan said: “Tell the truth and you will be happy.”

14q. Use a colon before a long, formal statement or quotation.

**Example** It was left to me to state the conclusion: “It is clear from what we have heard here tonight that this pipeline should never be built. Our lives and the lives of our children and of their children for generations to come depend on preserving the supply of clean water.”

14r. Use a colon in certain conventional situations.

1. Use a colon between the hour and the minute.

**Examples** 11:05 A.M. 8:30 P.M.

2. Use a colon after the salutation of a business letter.

**Examples** Dear Ms. Acevedo: To Whom It May Concern:

3. Use a colon between chapter and verse in Biblical references and between titles and subtitles.

**Examples** John 3:16 Psalms 3:5 Light: Medicine of the Future

**Exercise** In the following sentences, add colons where they are needed.

**Example** 1. We are reading *The Environment: Whose Responsibility?*

1. Our teacher introduced Mr. Burkhardt: “It is my honor and my pleasure to introduce Mr. Steve Burkhardt. He is a close friend, a mentor, and an accomplished scientist. Please welcome him.”

2. Mr. Burkhardt told us something important: We must save the elephants.

3. He also told me the following items are valued by some people: elephant meat, elephant tusks, elephant hides, and elephant hair.

4. I read this fact: The elephant is on the world’s endangered species list.

5. Is the elephant mentioned in Genesis 1:24?

6. My concerns are as follows: The herds are disappearing, illegal killing is continuing, and the rural people of Africa still need these elephants to survive.


8. We will listen to a lecture at 8:30 P.M.

9. My father always taught me this: Respect life in every form.

10. We will learn more about elephants in tomorrow’s lecture, which begins at 9:00 A.M.
Review A: End Marks and Abbreviations

**Exercise** Add periods, question marks, and exclamation points where they are needed in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** What a wonderful poem you’ve written, Dr. Wesley!

1. Was the letter addressed to 3212 Willis Drive
2. I received a package from St Louis this morning
3. Are you meeting with Ms Wilkinson this afternoon
4. How beautiful that song was
5. Did you hear the speech by T J Townsend
6. William McLean, Jr, is my guitar teacher
7. We’ll see you for lunch tomorrow
8. Please send the money order as soon as possible
9. Are Mr and Mrs Gutierrez coming to the celebration
10. My aunt just took a research job at Plastic Innovations, Inc
11. My package was mailed from Boston last Friday
12. The CIA offered Mr Lemoine a job in data security
13. What an amazing film that was
14. Did Dr Cameron write this article about spiders
15. Watch out for that motorcycle
16. Save the postcard from Memphis for the scrapbook
17. Robert Corley, Sr, will be the new advisor for our school’s college-bound program
18. Was the order mailed to Worthy Collections, Ltd
19. How precious that baby looks today
20. Is Mr Cambridge still scheduled for 2:45 this afternoon
EXERCISE  Insert commas where they are needed in the following sentences.

Example 1.  I have aunts, uncles, and cousins in Phoenix, Arizona.

1. We stayed up too late last night so we were unable to wake up at 6:00 A.M.
2. The small shy puppy walked slowly into the room.
3. My mother usually packs oranges, apples, or peaches with our lunches.
4. We copied our notes over, made study cards, and called out questions to each other.
5. After getting busy signals for nearly an hour, the customer gave up trying to call.
6. Looking in every place he could think of, the young boy continued to search for his baseball glove.
7. Our family moved from Tempe, Arizona to San Diego, California.
8. I asked the salesclerk which computer I should buy, which printer was best, and which monitor would be most practical.
9. The coach was not upset about the loss nor was he discouraged.
10. Siamack is a composer of classical music and Shekoufeh is a jazz pianist.
11. Should we stay home and clean, go shopping for clothes, or mow the lawn?
13. Yes, Janelle says that she enjoys the long, warm summers in Pensacola, Florida.
14. Kendra will be visiting us this summer, I believe.
15. The children were quite tired, for they had played kickball for several hours.
16. We sent my aunt’s gift to 302 Main Street, Port Allen, Louisiana.
17. The author brainstormed, made an outline, and then wrote her essay.
18. After we put the dishes away, Irena showed us photographs from her trip to Los Angeles, California.
19. I went walking in the dark, cold, moonless night.
20. My best friend from kindergarten, Joanna, still lives in my neighborhood.
Review C: Semicolons and Colons

EXERCISE Insert semicolons and colons where they are needed in the following sentences.

Example 1. The speaker hasn’t arrived; therefore, the meeting will be postponed until 8:00 P.M.

1. Indira wanted to become an engineer nevertheless, she continued to study literature.
2. Terrence, the captain, flew the plane and Robert, the first officer, contacted the control tower for landing instructions.
3. The pastor explained Zechariah 9:9 to our study group.
4. Our teacher grew up in Wyoming however, she studied in Montana.
5. My grandfather’s rule of thumb was this: Treat others fairly, honestly, and respectfully.
6. The movie doesn’t start until 3:30 P.M. nevertheless, it’s a good idea to arrive early.
7. María is the best tennis player in our class in fact, she is the best in our entire school.
8. We read scary stories for half the night as a result, we were too frightened to sleep.
9. At 8:00 P.M., the guests will arrive we should get ready to greet them.
10. Carmen hopes to become a veterinarian consequently, she is studying hard in science class.
11. The clouds are beginning to move off to the east perhaps the afternoon will be sunny.
12. For a pleasant train ride, remember to bring the following items: a good book, some healthful snacks, and a small pillow.
13. Nakai is a serious swimmer you can find him at the pool almost every morning.
14. The mayor made her priorities quite clear: “I will not rest until this city’s traffic problems have improved. I will not stop for breath until we have doubled the size of our police department. I will not let up until our schools are no longer in crisis.”
15. The letter began, “Dear Ms. Kimball Thank you for your prompt response to our inquiry.”
16. The book is titled *Great Danes A Complete Breed Profile* it contains helpful information on nutrition, training, and temperament.
17. Already the drought has affected three states Texas, Oklahoma, and Kansas.
18. Justin lined up the ingredients for his salad lettuce, radishes, tomatoes, and onion.
19. Edwina is driven by a great dream. She hopes to one day pilot a space shuttle.
20. Lunch will be served at 1:00 the menu includes chicken enchiladas, Spanish rice, and fajitas.
EXERCISE

Correct the following paragraphs, adding periods, question marks, exclamation points, commas, semicolons, and colons where they are needed.

Example

[1] When our history class visited Gettysburg, Pennsylvania, we gained a new understanding of the Civil War.

[1] Have you ever visited Gettysburg, Pennsylvania? This place is the scene of one of the greatest battles of the Civil War consequently, many people have heard of Gettysburg. [3] Defending their beliefs and their honor the soldiers of the North and the South fought one of the bloodiest battles in history there. [4] They fought for their generals, their fellow soldiers, and their way of life. [5] Visiting the battlefield today one is struck by the calm peaceful atmosphere however, on the three days of July 1, 2, and 3, 1863 it was different. [6] What a scene of suffering it was! [7] On this beautiful expanse of green soldiers fought, were wounded, and gave their lives.

[8] General Robert E. Lee who was known as a great military strategist seems to have failed at Gettysburg. [9] He positioned Pickett’s brigade across an open field from the Union Army. [10] The brigade was defenseless and the Union Army positioned on a hill with many trees had its cannons ready. [11] Marching bravely across that field most of Pickett’s fifteen thousand troops fell.

[12] Some people blame this loss on two commanders General J E B Stuart who was in charge of the cavalry and General Longstreet who was Lee’s second in command. [13] Involved in skirmishes for supplies General Stuart and the cavalry did not reach Gettysburg on time. [14] Because the cavalry was needed to back up the foot soldiers this failure resulted in a great loss. [15] Others blame the defeat on General Longstreet they say he was indecisive and ineffective.

[16] People continue to study and re-create this battle to this day indeed it is one of the most interesting battles of the war. [17] Some people say that scholars are still fighting the Civil War and that no one is the winner yet. Will it ever end?

[18] If you are interested you can visit Gettysburg. [19] For information about this historic site you can write to Gettysburg National Military Park Gettysburg PA 17325 [20] Go there someday. It will be well worth the trip.
for CHAPTER 15: PUNCTUATION  

Underlining (Italics) A

15a. Use underlining (italics) for titles and subtitles of books, plays, periodicals, works of art, films, television series, and long musical compositions and recordings.

Underline (italicize) an article at the beginning of a title only if it is officially part of the title.

**EXAMPLES**
- *The Little Prince* [book]
- *Hamlet* [play]
- *Reader’s Digest* [periodical]
- *Mona Lisa* [work of art]
- *Cars* [film]
- *Dateline* [television series]
- *The Nutcracker Suite* [long musical composition]

**EXERCISE** In each of the following sentences, underline the word or word group that should be italicized.

**Example 1.** We watched the video *Bambi* with my little sister and her friends.

1. Have you read the latest issue of *Sports Illustrated*?
2. Our class just finished acting out a scene from *Romeo and Juliet*.
3. I have read *The Pearl* by John Steinbeck.
4. One of my favorite paintings is *Christina’s World*.
5. Did you read that story in the *Chicago Tribune*?
6. Copland’s composition *Appalachian Spring* has become a classic.
7. Is *Newsweek* the most popular weekly newsmagazine?
8. I borrowed a copy of the *Dickens* classic *A Tale of Two Cities*.
9. *Mister Rogers’ Neighborhood* is a children’s series on PBS.
10. Do you know what the myth of Prometheus has to do with *Frankenstein*, Mary Shelley’s famous book?
11. Is there a film version of *The Hobbit*?
12. Picasso’s painting *Guernica* is a powerful antiwar statement.
13. Did you see the article about me in the *Ann Arbor News*?
14. My favorite old television show is *Gilligan’s Island*.
15. The final scene of the opera *La Bohème* made Mimi cry.
16. Darryl’s subscription to *Boys’ Life* has expired.
17. The Drama Club is presenting Arthur Miller’s play *The Crucible*.
18. The Humphrey Bogart film *Casablanca* also features Ingrid Bergman.
19. Is Alice’s Adventures in Wonderland your favorite book?
20. Has this week’s *Time* magazine arrived yet?
In the following sentences, underline each word, word group, letter, and number that should be italicized.

Example 1. Do you know the history of the word career?

1. Parts of the Titanic were found by the underwater craft Alvin.
2. Jane has never had trouble spelling the word ambidextrous.
3. Is it correct to write one l or two in the word traveling?
4. Do you use the word very too often when you write?
5. The English-speaking woman had trouble pronouncing the rr sound in Spanish.
6. The number 14 is lucky for me.
7. The Stourbridge Lion is the name of a train that was built in England.
8. Henry’s u’s sometimes look like v’s.
9. In 1830, the locomotive Tom Thumb raced a horse. Do you know which one won?
10. Katy pointed out the difference between the words emigrate and immigrate.
11. Columbus’s three ships were the Niña, the Pinta, and the Santa Maria.
12. Charles Lindbergh crossed the Atlantic in the plane the Spirit of St. Louis.
13. How many i’s are in the name Illinois?
14. From what language does the word veranda originally come?
15. This spring we are going to ride the train the City of New Orleans.
16. Is the number 17 a prime number?
17. If I had a spaceship, I’d call it the Starseeker.
18. How many times does the word blend appear in the recipe?
19. The fishing boat the Andrea Gail was lost at sea in 1991.
20. How old is the word uranium?
Underlining (Italics) C

15a. Use underlining (italics) for titles and subtitles of books, plays, periodicals, works of art, films, television series, and long musical compositions and recordings.

**EXAMPLES**  *Star Trek: Voyager*  *Toy Story*

15b. Use underlining (italics) for names of ships, trains, aircraft, and spacecraft.

**EXAMPLES**  *Graf Zeppelin*  *Lusitania*

15c. Use underlining (italics) for words, letters, and numerals referred to as such.

**EXAMPLE**  Some people consider the number 13 unlucky.

**EXERCISE A** In the following sentences, underline each word, word group, letter, and number that should be italicized.

**Example 1.** Last weekend Henry read Steinbeck’s novel The Pearl.
1. The teacher asked, “Who has read the novel A Day No Pigs Would Die?”
2. In 1620, the Mayflower sailed for America.
3. The word ostracism has an interesting history.
4. After springing leaks, the ship Speedwell had to return to England.
5. The word occurrence has two r’s and three c’s.
6. Do you know who flies aboard Air Force One?
7. Today, we learned about the airship Hindenburg.
8. Is that a 5 or a 6? If it’s a 6, then your answer is correct.
9. The New York Sun was started by Benjamin H. Day.
10. Jamie wrote an essay about the samurai in the book The Sign of the Chrysanthemum.

**EXERCISE B** In the following sentences, underline each word, word group, letter, and number that should be italicized.

**Example 1.** The Smiths subscribe to *National Geographic*.
11. Kevin is a devout fan of the original *Star Trek* television series.
12. Tamika has a part in the play *Antony and Cleopatra*.
13. The number 20 has two 10’s.
14. The art class studied a replica of *The Thinker*, a famous sculpture by Rodin.
15. Please define the words itinerary, transitory, and ephemeral.
for CHAPTER 15: PUNCTUATION  pages 388–390

Quotation Marks A

Use quotation marks to enclose a direct quotation—a person’s exact words.

A direct quotation generally begins with a capital letter.

When the expression identifying the speaker interrupts a quoted sentence, the second part of the quotation begins with a lowercase letter.

A direct quotation is set off from the rest of the sentence by a comma, a question mark, or an exclamation point, but not by a period.

A period or a comma is placed inside the closing quotation marks.

A question mark or an exclamation point is placed inside the closing quotation marks when the quotation itself is a question or an exclamation. Otherwise, it is placed outside.

EXAMPLES

“Where,” asked Charles, “can I find a pen like that?”

Then Rosa said, “What a great backpack that is!”

Did you hear him say, “This is not my country”?

EXERCISE A  In the following sentences, add quotation marks where they are needed. Then, triple underline any letters that should be capitalized but are not.

Example 1. Joel said, “what a beautiful night it is!”

1. Pang asked, is that the crescent moon?

2. I think it’s the first quarter, I replied.

3. The moon will be full on March 22, he added.

4. I asked, how do you know the date?

5. He said, the phases of the moon are shown on my calendar.

EXERCISE B  In the following sentences, add punctuation marks where they are needed. Then, triple underline any letters that should be capitalized but are not.

Example 1. “Today is Friday,” said Miss LaSpina, “it’s time to check our experiments.”

6. Look at mine Wyatt said it’s beginning to grow a new leaf

7. That said Miss LaSpina is looking great

8. What happened to mine asked Robert did it get enough light

9. I’m not sure said Velma that I gave it enough water.

10. Did you just say, “I’m a big fan of reptiles and arachnids”
Quotation Marks B

**EXERCISE A**  In the following dialogue, add punctuation marks where they are needed. Also, insert a paragraph symbol (¶) where each new paragraph should begin, and put a slash mark through any letter that is capitalized but should not be.

**Example [1]**

I hope, "said Meagan, "That we don’t get lost.

[1] The trail guide said Watch for the blue markers. [2] Where can we find them Kristy asked. [3] Usually, you will find them on trees, he replied, But sometimes they are on rocks. [4] It depends on the terrain. [5] Just don’t go very far without having one in view. [6] Can you show us asked David What one looks like [7] Yes said the guide. There is a blue marker on the right-hand post of that sign over there. [8] If, during your hike, you can’t find where the next marker is, retrace your steps to the previous marker. Then, try to find the trail again. [9] Are there any questions [10] Yes, I have one, replied Ángel. Do we have to go

**EXERCISE B**  In the following sentences, add quotation marks where they are needed.

**Example 1.**  The students in Mr. Robling’s class read Edgar Allan Poe’s poem “The Raven.”

11. My brother can play the song Greensleeves on the guitar.

12. Piri Thomas wrote the short story Amigo Brothers.


14. The students couldn’t help laughing as they read the poem Jabberwocky.

15. Ernest Hemingway’s short story A Day’s Wait has a surprise ending.
**Quotation Marks C**

15j. When you write dialogue (conversation), begin a new paragraph each time the speaker changes.

15k. When a quotation consists of several sentences, place quotation marks only at the beginning and at the end of the whole quotation.

15l. Use quotation marks to enclose titles and subtitles of short works such as short stories, poems, essays, articles, songs, episodes of television series, and chapters and other parts of books.

**EXAMPLES**

**“Daddy”**

**“Channel Firing” [poems]**

Doug said, “I learned a lot in history class yesterday. Mrs. Lane really knows how to make history interesting.”

“I learned a lot, too,” replied Janet.

**EXERCISE A**

In the following dialogue, add punctuation marks where they are needed. Also, insert a paragraph symbol (¶) where each new paragraph should begin, and triple underline any letters that should be capitalized but are not.


**EXERCISE B**

In the following sentences, add quotation marks where they are needed.

Example 1. Shel Silverstein wrote a poem called “In Search of Cinderella.”


12. Gaspar Sanz wrote a beautiful song called Canarios. Have you heard it?

13. For homework, please read the poem I am of the Earth.

14. The poem is in a chapter titled This Old Earth.

15. Rosa named her essay Hawthorne and Puritanism.
**Quotation Marks D**

**15m.** Use single quotation marks to enclose a quotation within a quotation or a title of a short work within a quotation.

**EXAMPLES**

“Why were you late turning in your report?” Tamisha asked.

Meredith answered, “I don’t know. I had listened to various versions of ‘The Highwayman.’ I was even looking forward to writing the report. But then, all of a sudden, it was due the next day, and I hadn’t written it.”

“Did you say, ‘I was even looking forward to it’?” asked Tamisha.

“Yes,” replied Meredith. “I enjoy writing.”

**EXERCISE** In the following sentences, add quotation marks where they are needed.

**Example 1.** Anna said, “Thank you for including me in your article ‘Young Musicians to Keep Watching.’”

1. Steve blurted out, “My favorite song of all time is Sittin’ on the Dock of the Bay.”

2. “Did you see last night’s episode The Klingons Return?” asked Tammy.

3. “Yes, I do read poetry,” replied Ellen, “and Langston Hughes is my favorite poet. I especially like his poem Harlem.”

4. Eddy said, “You might be interested in knowing that I sent my essay The Best Music of the Millennium to a magazine publisher.”

5. “Do you know which character said, Uneasy lies the head that wears the crown?” asked Robert.

6. “We heard Mr. Johnson singing the song My Girl while mowing his lawn,” said Gina.

7. “Did Mrs. Kay say, There will be no homework tonight?” asked Theresa.


9. “Please read the poem Mama is a Sunrise tonight,” said Mr. Clark.

10. “Which character said,” asked Lee, “To be or not to be?”
EXERCISE A For each of the following sentences, add punctuation marks where they are needed.

1. I believe that Dr. Morris said Finish reading the novel tonight replied Rebecca.
2. Have you Jill asked seen my notebook?
3. The doctor replied Take two of these tablets once a day. You should feel better in a week or so.
4. I like to see it lap the miles is a famous first line in poetry, Mrs. Gomez remarked.
5. Who said The play’s the thing? asked Jerry.

EXERCISE B In the following dialogue, add punctuation marks where they are needed. Also, insert a paragraph symbol (¶) where each new paragraph should begin.

[6] Yes replied Peter she did say that she wants us to study Poe. [7] I have notes from the lecture on Poe’s use of rhythm in the poem The Raven said Tamara. [8] Jeff responded That’s good. I was absent that day. [9] We also need to study Hawthorne. I bet she’ll ask us about the symbolism in the story The Minister’s Black Veil said Gail. [10] Okay, here’s the plan remarked Tim. Gather all of your notes, and we’ll meet in the library at 6:00 P.M. to study.
Apostrophes A

15n. To form the possessive case of a singular noun, add an apostrophe and an s.

A proper noun ending in s may take only an apostrophe to form the possessive case if the addition of ’s would make the name awkward to pronounce.

EXAMPLES a day’s pay James’s bookbag Odysseus’s journey

15o. To form the possessive case of a plural noun ending in s, add only the apostrophe.

To form the possessive of a plural noun that does not end in s, add an apostrophe and an s.

EXAMPLES the Smiths’ house the students’ lockers men’s clothing people’s rights

EXERCISE Form either the singular possessive or the plural possessive of each of the following items by adding an apostrophe or an apostrophe and an s where needed. Write your answers on the lines provided.

Example boy’s mittens

1. boy mittens (singular possessive)
2. teachers books (plural possessive)
3. Davis desk (singular possessive)
4. teenagers magazines (plural possessive)
5. tree branches (singular possessive)
6. Pattersons dog (plural possessive)
7. girls lunches (plural possessive)
8. mice cheese (plural possessive)
9. cities lights (plural possessive)
10. cars engines (plural possessive)
11. chair legs (singular possessive)
12. CD marketability (singular possessive)
13. foxes homes (plural possessive)
14. restaurants atmosphere (plural possessive)
15. Lewis invention (singular possessive)
16. day wait (singular possessive)
17. hood ornament (singular possessive)
18. Hercules strength (singular possessive)
19. Jill house (singular possessive)
20. bands songs (plural possessive)
Apostrophes B

15p. Do not use an apostrophe with possessive personal pronouns.

EXAMPLES Is that theirs or ours? Bring me my book.

15q. To form the possessive case of some indefinite pronouns, add an apostrophe and an s.

EXAMPLES somebody’s boots everyone’s chance

Exercise  Add apostrophes where necessary in each of the following items. Place each apostrophe in an upside-down caret mark to show exactly where the apostrophe should be. If a sentence is already correct, write C to the left of the item number.

Example  1. Someone’s book was left on the table.

1. I left my book at home. Will you let me borrow yours?
2. Anybodys guess is as good as mine.
3. I have my sandwich right here. Where is yours?
4. Are you saying that this is nobodys chair?
5. John’s performance was good, but hers was a little better.
6. I need a wallet for this next magic trick; anyones wallet will do.
7. My book cover is pristine, but yours looks as if it has been dragged behind a car.
8. Somebodys track shoes were left on the patio last night.
9. Although my science project is good, yours is better.
10. Is this newspaper theirs or ours?
Apostrophes C

15n. To form the possessive case of a singular noun, add an apostrophe and an s.

Examples
- Emilio's father
- a week's time

15o. To form the possessive case of a plural noun ending in s, add only the apostrophe.

Examples
- the players' goals
- the Joneses' car

15p. Do not use an apostrophe with possessive personal pronouns.

Examples
- our jobs
- his schedule

15q. To form the possessive case of some indefinite pronouns, add an apostrophe and an s.

Examples
- nobody's notebook
- anyone's breakfast

Exercise A
Form both the singular possessive and the plural possessive of each of the following items by adding an apostrophe or an apostrophe and an s where needed. Write your answers on the lines provided.

Example: book's; books'

1. raft
2. monkey
3. teacher
4. Jackson
5. tooth
6. goose
7. student
8. baby
9. giraffe
10. boat
11. bird
12. mayor
13. country
14. chair
15. hand
16. horse
17. calf
18. helicopter
19. window
20. garage

Exercise B
Add apostrophes where necessary in each of the following items. If a sentence is already correct, write C to the left of the item number.

Example: 1. Someone's bicycle will do as well as yours.

21. Nobody's test score was perfect.
22. Although his story was well written, hers was better.
23. Somebody's shoes were left in the rain.
24. Ms. Spencer was impressed by everybody's enthusiasm.
25. No one's skills will be able to replace hers.
Apostrophes D

**EXERCISE A** Rewrite each of the following groups of words as a contraction.

**Example 1.** she will _______ she’ll

1. should not ______________________ 6. she had ______________________
2. he is ______________________ 7. were not ______________________
3. will not ______________________ 8. I have ______________________
4. they are ______________________ 9. who is ______________________
5. it is ______________________ 10. you are ______________________

**EXERCISE B** Study the underlined word in each sentence below. If the word is incorrect, cross it out and write the correct form above it. If the word is already correct, write C above it.

**Example 1.** The prize is rightfully there’s.

11. Joel is not sure who’s hat that is.
12. Was it your grandmother who knit your sweater?
13. Theirs the diner I was telling you about.
14. Who’s in charge of the dues?
15. I fed the stray cat, but I didn’t know it’s name.
16. He was wondering whether your his friend or not.
17. The best entry in the contest was theirs.
18. Look outside to see whether its raining.
19. Was it they’re dog that was missing?
20. They’re not going to the dance on Saturday.
**Apostrophes**

15s. Use an apostrophe and an s to form the plurals of letters, numerals, and symbols, and of words referred to as words.

**EXAMPLES**

- The word has two r’s in it.
- Enrico’s T’s looked like 7’s.
- Rap music became popular in the 1980’s.
- Sharon uses too many and’s to join ideas in her writing.

**EXERCISE** In each of the following sentences, add apostrophes where they are needed. Place each apostrophe in an upside-down caret mark to show exactly where the apostrophe should be.

1. There are three Sam’s in my class.
2. When &s appear in company names, you should write &s instead of ands.
3. When you are proofreading, look for all the very, nice, and good’s, and try to replace them.
4. The 1940’s was an era of big bands and dance music.
5. He said that only 7’s and 5’s were in his telephone number.
6. I always think there are two c’s in vacuum, but there is only one.
7. Does the child know his ABC’s yet?
8. The teacher told them to mind their p’s and q’s.
9. Do many newspaper writers begin sentences with Or’s and But’s?
10. He adds extra loops to the tops and bottoms of his 3’s.
11. Sitcoms were very popular on television during the 1950’s.
12. Mr. Ramirez asked the student to stop giving him maybe’s.
13. Cancelled can be spelled with two l’s or one.
14. He sometimes uses +’s when he should be writing and’s.
15. Look for sos in your writing, and ask yourself whether you should be writing therefore’s or other words instead.
16. Television miniseries became popular during the 1970’s.
17. Can you count to 100 by 2’s?
18. Many compromises were made between the North and the South during the 1840’s and 1850’s.
19. Young children sometimes confuse 6’s and 9’s.
20. Always cross your t’s and dot your i’s.
EXERCISE  Rewrite each of the following sentences, inserting apostrophes where necessary.

Example 1.  Katys father said its a good day to travel.  

1.  Whos going to rescue that little girls kitten?  

2.  Didnt Sam say that you must be ready to go on a moments notice?  

3.  Last months meeting didnt go as well as wed planned.  

4.  Both cars tires should be replaced. Im surprised that neither of the cars has had a blowout yet.  

5.  Whose books are these? Arent these books theirs?  

6.  More often than not, the teachers lounge is a place for working, not for lounging.  


8.  The cars visor helps protect the dashboard from the suns heat.  

9.  The dentist exclaimed, “Your teeths enamel isnt indestructible!”  

10.  The boys box of markers wasnt on the table where theyd left it.  

Apostrophes F

15n. To form the possessive case of a singular noun, add an apostrophe and an s.

15o. To form the possessive case of a plural noun ending in s, add only the apostrophe.

15p. Do not use an apostrophe with possessive personal pronouns.

15q. To form the possessive case of some indefinite pronouns, add an apostrophe and an s.

15r. To form a contraction, use an apostrophe to show where letters or numerals have been omitted.

15s. Use an apostrophe and an s to form the plurals of letters, numerals, and symbols, and of words referred to as words.
Hyphens

15t. Use a hyphen to divide a word at the end of a line.

EXAMPLE He found the information he needed in the encyclopedia.

15u. Use a hyphen with compound numbers from twenty-one to ninety-nine and with fractions used as modifiers.

EXAMPLES thirty-six tickets one-fourth cup of flour twenty-second row

15v. Use a hyphen with the prefixes all–, ex–, great–, and self– and with the suffixes –elect and –free and with all prefixes before a proper noun or proper adjective.

EXAMPLES all-important self-starter fat-free meso-American

15w. Hyphenate a compound adjective when it precedes the noun it modifies unless one of the modifiers ends in –ly.

EXAMPLES a world-famous athlete a fully formed sentence

Exercise Draw vertical lines to indicate all the places each item can be correctly divided at the end of a line. If an item cannot be divided, draw no lines.

Example 1. great-grandmother

1. open
2. brother-in-law
3. educate
4. strayed
5. fast-moving film
6. fascinating
7. looked
8. twelve-year-old
9. usually
10. forget-me-not
11. fifty-seven varieties
12. elephant
13. movie
14. self-improvement tape
15. two-thirds majority
16. cat
17. pre-Columbian culture
18. sugar-free snack
19. pencil
20. bandwidth
Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes

15x. Use parentheses to enclose material that is added to a sentence but is not considered of major importance.

**EXAMPLE** My brother is in the youngest group (ages five and six) in soccer.

15y. Use brackets to enclose an explanation or added information within quoted or parenthetical material.

**EXAMPLE** Professor Margulies told us, “His [Sigmund Freud’s] theory of the id, ego, and superego was a starting point for many subsequent psychoanalytical theories.”

15z. Use a dash to indicate an abrupt break in thought or speech.

**EXAMPLE** We’re going to—you’ll never guess—a small island in the Pacific.

**EXERCISE** Rewrite each of the following sentences on the lines provided, adding parentheses, dashes, and brackets where necessary.

Example 1. Ralph Waldo Emerson 1803–1882 was a transcendentalist.

Ralph Waldo Emerson (1803–1882) was a transcendentalist.

1. That building excuse me, the one on Fifth Street needs to be renovated.

2. Theodore Roosevelt 1858–1919 was the twenty-sixth president of the United States.

3. The florin pronounced flôr’in is the name of a gold coin that was used in medieval Florence.

4. Tiffany began, “At the end of the novel, the main character but I don’t want to ruin the surprise.”

5. Dr. Brown said, “Plato Greek philosopher 427?–347 B.C. was one of history’s greatest thinkers.”
EXERCISE  Rewrite the following sentences, adding quotation marks, underlining for italics, and other punctuation marks where they are needed. Be sure to correct any errors in capitalization.

Example 1. What Henry asked Is the definition of the word clandestine

1. Todd asked can you explain the answer to the fourth problem?

2. They often confuse the words affect and effect said Diana.

3. Pedro my sister added Went to the all-state competition in Concord.

4. Have you read asked Daryll the article The Undersea War, which is about the sinking of the Lusitania?

5. I saw that sculpture at the museum said Kathie it was next to Stuart Davis’s painting Swing Landscape.

6. When you read Native Son asked Troy did you know how it would end?

7. Did Jeb say watch Frontline tomorrow night Zoe asked.

8. I saw that article about Apollo 17 in Smithsonian magazine said Mamie.

9. Is the r doubled in the word occurring Phil and Aki asked we can’t seem to remember.

10. Lucía, please read the short story Rip Van Winkle for homework said Mrs. James.
Review B: Apostrophes

**Exercise**  Rewrite the following sentences, adding apostrophes where they are needed. Be sure to correct any mistakes in the use of possessive pronouns.

**Example 1.** I didn't think you'd be able to finish the Johnsons lawn so soon. Who's lawn mower did you use?

I didn't think you'd be able to finish the Johnsons' lawn so soon. Whose lawn mower did you use?

1. Let's plan a trip to the mountains in 03. __________________________

2. Where's the dogs bowl? Henry's mom said that she couldn't find it. __________________________

3. I've got a plan to finish my paper by ten. I can use Davis's computer to conduct my research. __________________________

4. There's the woman who's sons showed me their pool. __________________________

5. Jane said that she can't fix his cars transmission tonight; she needs to fix her's first. __________________________

6. Don't use too many *really* when you're speaking in Ms. Fuentes class. __________________________

7. Everyone's face lit up when the teacher announced the results of this years fundraiser. __________________________

8. I don't know who's coming to my mother-in-law's house next week. __________________________

9. No one is quite sure whether the two girls' cat is still in the tree. __________________________

10. He isn't sure who owns those bikes, but he's sure they aren't their's. __________________________
EXERCISE  Rewrite each of the following sentences on the lines provided, adding parentheses, dashes, brackets, and hyphens where necessary.

Example 1. The small town sheriff Andy Taylor he was portrayed by Andy Griffith was a popular television character for many years. The small-town sheriff Andy Taylor (he was portrayed by Andy Griffith) was a popular television character for many years.

1. The well known film director Alfred Hitchcock 1899–1980 made many popular movies. ____

2. The burning question who would be blamed for the crime? was the talk of the town for almost twenty two days. ________________________________

3. The word extrinsic ek strin’sik means “not inherent.” ________________________________

4. Mrs. Miller continued, “He Sir Winston Churchill 1874–1965 had a great impact on world history.” ________________________________

5. “Gary, please wash the dog oh, and the cat, too before your great aunt Edna gets here. She’s allergic to animal dander,” said his mother. ________________________________

6. Mrs. Shaw she’s my history instructor told me about the hard fought Battle of Marathon. ________________________________

7. Henry began, “The answer to riddle thirty eight is but, wait, I’ll let you solve it for yourself.” ________________________________

8. “Amelia Earhart 1898–1937,” said the professor, “was a pioneer in aviation.” ________________________________

9. Highwaymen people on horseback who robbed travelers were quite common in centuries past. ________________________________

10. Guam gwäm is an island on the Pacific Ocean. ________________________________
Review D: All Marks of Punctuation

**EXERCISE**  Rewrite the following record of a class discussion, correcting punctuation and capitalization where needed. Be sure to insert a paragraph symbol (¶) where each new paragraph should begin.

**Example**  [1] What do you think Mrs. Caldwell will talk about today asked Juanita. [2] I dont know responded Jill. Why dont you suggest a topic


[9] Mrs. Caldwell began Yes, it might be said to have begun with Betty Friedans book The Feminine Mystique. In the book, she writes but, wait, well save that for another time.

[10] Anyway, the word feminist was revived, and new emphasis was placed on receiving equal pay for equal work.
**Exercise**  Cross out each misspelled word in the sentences below. Then, above the word, write it correctly. If a sentence contains no error, write C after the sentence. Use a dictionary if you need it.

**Example 1.** With her wise decision, Nilda proved she has great strenght of character.

1. Germaine decided to write about South America insted of about factory strikes.
2. After he bilt his cabin in the woods, Henry David Thoreau tried to live a simple life.
3. That is eazy for an acrobat who is strong and flexible.
4. The fire cheif came to the school to review our fire emergency procedures.
5. Many wimen today have careers that their mothers would not have imagined.
6. At the last minit, the cavalry rode in and defended the fort.
7. The hotel simply could not accommodate any more guests for the holiday weekend.
8. Hidden above the ceeling in an old London townhouse was a dress covered with precious gems that had once belonged to a queen.
9. “Your reputation precedes you, sir,” said the major to the young officer.
10. After my first day skiing, there wasn’t a muscle in my body that wasn’t sor.
11. The wagon train leaders may have had to gess which route was the safest.
12. When Charlene was in the mountins, she saw a cougar.
13. Tho flavored yogurt tastes good, it has more calories than plain yogurt has.
14. Over seven thousand women soldiers from the United States were in Vietnam during the war.
15. Lawrence of Arabia would tair across the desert sand, his robe whipping in the wind.
16. After a long airplane ride, you will probably be tired.
17. My mother wants to live in the contry, but Dad prefers city life.
18. A coff is the body’s way of clearing your lungs.
19. There is one more hour until the end of the year.
20. Four large juices will probly be enough for the group of friends.
EXERCISE A  Cross out the misspelled word in each sentence below. Then, above the crossed-out word, write the word correctly.

Example 1. All the streets in this nieghborhood are named after U.S. presidents.

1. The nurse applied an elastic bandage to releive the pressure on the knee.
2. A viel of secrecy surrounded the plans for the ice carnival.
3. Some people practice deciet because they don’t have much self-confidence.
4. The United States has spent about three billion dollars on foriegn aid this year.
5. A small peice of rock fell to the ground.
6. Sitting Bull was a Sioux cheif who united his people in a struggle for survival.
7. Feild mice eat grain, so farmers consider them pests.
8. Neither LaToya nor Shanique could find the reciept.
9. Each teacher nominated a student for the Outstanding Acheivement award.
10. The truck driver skillfully backed his rig into the recieving dock.

EXERCISE B  The following paragraphs contain words with missing letters. Add the letters ie or ei to complete each word correctly.

Example [1] How much does a cutter w ____ ght?

A cutter is a type of horse-drawn sl____ ght. In the 1800s in America, the cutter was an effic____ nt means of travel across f____lds and roads in snowy weather. The cutter is lightw____ght and open in design, usually seating two people. Some cutters feature a second, removable seat for two additional fr____nds or family members.

Once travel by automobile was ach____ved, cutters gradually became less common. Today some people bel____ve cutters to be a fun alternative to the automobile. Some owners use th____r cutters to give old-fashioned cutter rides. They rec____ve additional income by selling tickets for rides in the cutter. You can probably imagine a cutter with bells jingling on the horse’s r____ns during winter festivities.
In English, the only word ending in –sede is supersede. The only words ending in –ceed are exceed, proceed, and succeed. Most other words with this sound end in –cede.

**EXAMPLES** conceed, interceed, preced, recede

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, underline the word in parentheses that is spelled correctly.

**Example 1.** I (conceed, concede) that you are right.
1. The new sales strategy (superseeds, supersedes) the old one.
2. Some people wonder if any state will ever again (seceed, secede) from the union.
3. Nate (conceded, conceded) the winning point to Zeina.
4. A flash of lightning (preceeds, precedes) a crash of thunder.
5. Looking at his grandfather, Noel wondered if his own hairline would someday (recede, recede).
6. Some people say that to (succeed, succede) in life means to be happy with yourself.
7. After pausing to answer a question, Bettina (proceeded, proseeded) with her speech.
8. “You have (exceeded, exceeded) my highest expectations,” Ms. Khuu said to me.
9. Your guidance counselor can (intercede, interceed) on your behalf.
10. I have (succeeded, sucseded) in earning the money I need for the trip!

**EXERCISE B** Most of the sentences below contain a misspelled word ending in –cede, –ceed, or –sede. Cross out any word that is misspelled. Then, above the crossed out word, write the word correctly. If the word ending in –cede, –ceed, or –sede is spelled correctly, write C above it.

**Example 1.** We will now proceed to the playing field.
11. After the flood waters reseded, we could play again on the banks of the river.
12. “If you want to succeed at the kickball game, listen to the rules,” said Esteban.
14. If there is a dispute, I will interceed to resolve it.
15. The number of players on one team cannot exsede seven.
16. The assignment of a player to the position of kicker presedes all else.
17. No player is allowed to intercede when the kicker has the ball.
18. If you interrupt the kicker, you conceed a point to the opposing team.
19. The amount of time a ball is in play must exceed sixty seconds, or it is a “dead ball.”
20. When the teams have taken their places, we’ll prosede.
EXERCISE A  For each item below, add the prefix given to form a new word. Write the new word on the lines provided.

Example  1. mis + spell = ____________ misspell

1. mis + understand =
2. pre + wash =
3. im + possible =
4. over + cook =
5. in + appropriate =
6. over + run =
7. dis + cover =
8. il + legible =
9. un + natural =
10. re + new =

EXERCISE B  On the line provided, write the word given in parentheses, adding the prefix given.

Example  1. Somsay carefully ____________ the glass figurines. (re + arranged)

11. At eight o’clock each morning, Somsay ____________ the store’s front door. (un + locks)
12. Somsay then ____________ the list of tasks that the manager has left him. (re + views)
13. Today he must ____________ the display in the front window. (dis + assemble)
14. After he ____________ the old items, he will arrange a new display. (re + moves)
15. The new display will ____________ upon the old one. (im + prove)
16. To ____________ accuracy, he counts the cash for the register twice. (en + sure)
17. He arranges several turquoise rings in a ____________ in a small glass case. (semi + circle)
18. Several pairs of earrings have been ____________, and he rearranges them. (mis + matched)
19. During his morning break, Somsay ____________ a sandwich to eat. (un + wraps)
20. He ____________ the can of juice in the refrigerator, preferring water instead. (dis + regards)
for CHAPTER 16: SPELLING page 417

Suffixes A

16e. When adding the suffix –ly or –ness to a word, do not change the spelling of the word itself.

**Examples**
- careful + ly = carefully
- calm + ness = calmness

**Exceptions**
For words that end in y and have more than one syllable, change the y to i before adding –ly or –ness.
- merry + ly = merrily
- busy + ness = business

---

**EXERCISE A**
For each item below, add the suffix given to form a new word. Write the new word on the lines provided.

**Examples**
1. natural + ly = naturally
2. silly + ness = silliness
3. quick + ly =
4. open + ness =
5. rare + ly =
6. cheery + ly =
7. gritty + ness =

**EXERCISE B**
Most of the following sentences contain a misspelled word ending in –ly or –ness. Cross out each misspelled word. Then, above it, write the word correctly. If a sentence contains no error, write C after the sentence.

**Example 1.** The weary traveler resolutely put one foot before the other.

6. Was this trek through the desert an act of pure crazyness, the traveler wondered.
7. The vastness of the desert was almost overwhelming.
8. The barreness of the land was evident in the brownish tinge of the few surviving plants.
9. The sun shone hotty from above, evaporating all traces of moisture.
10. The driness of the soil prohibited seeds from germinating.
11. Prickly thorns protruded from various kinds of cactuses.
12. The lone human traveler sought to ease his dizzyness with a few sips of precious water.
13. Lizards eyed the human intruder with waryness.
14. A far-off speck on the horizon gradualy became clear as he approached it.
15. He could barly contain his happiness as he recognized the green of an oasis.
Suffixes B

16f. Drop the final silent e before adding a suffix beginning with a vowel.

Examples
age + ing = aging
freeze + able = freezable

Exceptions
Keep the final silent e in a word ending in ce or ge before adding a suffix beginning with a or o (as in traceable) and in the words dyeing and mileage.

16g. Keep the final silent e before adding a suffix beginning with a consonant.

Examples
place + ment = placement
face + less = faceless

Exceptions
ninth, truly, awful, argument, judgment, wholly

Exercise A
For each item below, add the suffix given to form a new word. Write the new word on the lines provided.

Examples 1. move + able = movable
2. awe + ful = awful
1. grace + ful =
2. salvage + able =
3. dye + ing =
4. engage + ment =
5. saxophone + ist =

Exercise B
Most of the following sentences contain a misspelled word. Cross out each misspelled word. Then, above it, write the word correctly. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1. I listened in fascination to Natalie’s narration of the events.
6. Natalie and her friends had gone scuba diving in clear, warm water.
7. They had gone only about ninety feet out from the shoreline.
8. Underwater, they watched a graceful manta ray swim by.
9. They examined a lovely, multicolored coral reef and other underwater sea life.
11. Natalie immediately launched an investigation of the mysterious white cloud.
12. Trained divers, Natalie and her friends knew they should approach carefully.
13. Moving closer, they saw that the “white cloud” was a mass of clear, floating objects.
14. The round, clear shapes became recognizable; they were jellyfish!
15. Natalie and her friends immediately swam quickly in the opposite direction.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice
EXERCISE A  On each blank, write the word formed by joining the word and the prefix given in parentheses.

Example 1. My grandparents are opening a new _______ on State Street. (busy + ness)

1. Grandpa helped install a __________ belt in the warehouse. (convey + or)
2. The __________ is caused by the open warehouse doors. (breezy + ness)
3. Grandma and Grandpa are __________ about their plans for the future. (joy + ful)
4. Those trucks are __________ the first shipments of merchandise. (carry + ing)
5. They approach the entire endeavor with great __________. (enjoy + ment)

EXERCISE B  Most of the following sentences contain a misspelled word. Cross out each misspelled word. Then, above it, write the word correctly. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1. Kylie arrived at the stables early; tardyness was not tolerated.

6. Kylie easily found the grooming supplies in the tack room.
7. She was paying for these horseback riding lessons herself.
8. So far, she had enjoied every lesson with Cowboy, her assigned horse.
9. Without hurrying, she combed Cowboy’s coat with the currycombs.
10. When she bent to pick Cowboy’s hoof, she sayed firmly, “Hoof!”
11. Cowboy lifted his foot dutyfully.
12. After picking dirt and gravel from the hooves, Kylie layed a blanket across Cowboy’s back.
13. She carryed the saddle and bridle into the stall and put them on Cowboy as well.
14. When she finally rode Cowboy outdoors, she felt as though she were fliing.
15. Cowboy obeyed every command.

Suffixes C

16h. For words ending in y preceded by a consonant, change the y to i before any suffix that does not begin with i.

EXAMPLES  fancy + ful = fanciful  scurry + ing = scurrying

16i. For words ending in y preceded by a vowel, keep the y when adding a suffix.

EXAMPLES  play + ing = playing  deploy + able = deployable

EXCEPTIONS  day + ly = daily  pay + ed = paid
lay + ed = laid  say + ed = said
**Suffixes D**

16j. Double the final consonant before adding a suffix beginning with a vowel if the word (1) has only one syllable or has the accent on the last syllable and (2) ends in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel.

**EXAMPLES**
- bat + ed = batted
- run + er = runner
- begin + ing = beginning

Otherwise, the final consonant is usually not doubled before a suffix beginning with a vowel.

**EXAMPLES**
- pitch + er = pitcher
- cheer + ed = cheered
- open + ing = opening

**EXERCISE A** For each item below, add the suffix given to form a new word. Write the new word on the lines provided.

**Examples**
1. trot + ed = **trotted**
2. sweep + ing = **sweeping**

1. inform + ed = ____________
2. slam + ing = ____________
3. tap + ed = ____________
4. contort + ing = ____________
5. program + er = ____________
6. stun + ing = ____________
7. special + ist = ____________
8. forgot + en = ____________
9. horticultural + ist = ____________
10. step + ed = ____________

**EXERCISE B** In each of the following sets of expressions, one expression contains a spelling error. On the line provided, write the letter of the expression containing the error. Then, write the expression correctly.

**Example**
1. a. reliving the memories   b. sitting in the sun   c. diging a ditch
   c. digging a ditch

11. a. startting to go   b. humming a tune   c. relaxed by the lake

12. a. weeded the lawn   b. resubmitted the paper   c. plotted against them

13. a. dropped the ball   b. draining the pool   c. his thining hairline

14. a. stopping traffic   b. prefered customers   c. renewable prescription

15. a. forbidden fruit   b. a dimmer switch for the lights   c. centered on the page
for CHAPTER 16: SPELLING pages 414–417

Spelling Rules Review A

16a. Write ie when the sound is long e, except after c.

16b. Write ei when the sound is not long e, especially when the sound is long a.

16c. In English, the only word ending in –sede is supersede. The only words ending in –ceed are exceed, proceed, and succeed. Most other words with this sound end in –cede.

16d. When adding a prefix to a word, do not change the spelling of the word itself.

16e. When adding the suffix –ly or –ness to a word, do not change the spelling of the word itself.

EXAMPLES  field, weigh, concede, unnatural, joyfully, darkness

EXERCISE A In each of the following sentences, underline the word in parentheses that is spelled correctly.

Example 1. Do you (believe, beleive) in miracles?

1. The childcare worker’s (kindlyness, kindliness) was soothing to the young child.

2. I am absolutely certain that I will (succeed, succede) at my goals.

3. That line of reasoning is (ilogical, ilogical).

4. The (cheif, chief) of police met with the mayor.

5. The (wetness, wettness) of the weather prevented us from going outside.

EXERCISE B Most of the following sentences contain a misspelled word. Cross out any misspelled word. Then, above it, write the word correctly. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1. Roberto will install the new ceiling fan.

6. The opposing team does not have enough players present; they will forfiet the game.

7. The lake has receeded several feet from the high-water mark.

8. The hikers carried thier own equipment for the week-long trek.

9. The ferociously barking dog unerved Esther.

10. I suffered shortness of breath after rushing across campus.

11. The wrist corsage that Tina is wearing is lovly.

12. Why don’t we work on our science homework together?

13. This shipment excedes the weight limit and must be unloaded.

14. The toughness of the meat discouraged me from eating all of it.

15. Farid casualy said hello to Phoebe.
EXERCISE A  For each item below, form a new word by joining the word and the prefix given.
Example 1. easy + ly = __________
1. spine + less = ______________
2. pine + ing = ______________
3. courage + ous = ______________
4. pollute + ant = ______________
5. begin + er = ______________

EXERCISE B  Most of the following sentences contain a misspelled word. Cross out any misspelled word. Then, above it, write the word correctly. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.
Example 1. Charles mended the lining of his formal suit coat.
6. One runner dropped out of the race because of a sprained ankle.
7. Several students are sharing a table during lunch.
8. The camp counselors planned numerous activities for the campers’ amusement.
9. The chicken flapped its wings but did not fly.
10. Dad is frying fish; I already fryed the potatoes.
11. The eighth-graders are preparing for the Eighth-Grade Picnic.
12. What is the scariest movie you’ve ever seen?
13. Please use ink to fill out this application for employment.
14. I submited one of my poems to a poetry contest.
15. Carefully, I ensured that the poster was centered on the bulletin board.

Spelling Rules Review B
16. Drop the final silent e before adding a suffix beginning with a vowel.
16g. Keep the final silent e before adding a suffix beginning with a consonant.
16h. For words ending in y preceded by a consonant, change the y to i before any suffix that does not begin with i.
16i. For words ending in y preceded by a vowel, keep the y when adding a suffix.
16j. Double the final consonant before adding a suffix beginning with a vowel if the word (1) has only one syllable or has the accent on the last syllable and (2) ends in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel.
EXAMPLES removal, awesome, dutiful, payer, scrubbing
Plurals A

To form the plurals of most nouns in English, add s.

For nouns ending in s, x, z, ch, or sh, add es.

SINGULAR: shoe, bow, Alcott, mix, lunch, Martinez
PLURAL: shoes, bows, Alcotts, mixes, lunches, Martinezes

For nouns ending in y preceded by a vowel, add s.

SINGULAR: tray, boy, Farley, cherry, copy
PLURAL: trays, boys, Farleys, cherries, copies

EXCEPTIONS: For proper nouns, add s.
Kennedy—Kennedys

Exercise A

Spell the plural form of each of the following words. Write on the line provided.

Example 1. history ________ histories

1. ash ____________________________ 6. infirmary ____________________________
2. bunny __________________________ 7. Perry ____________________________
3. Murry __________________________ 8. cranberry __________________________
4. refrigerator _____________________ 9. grass ____________________________
5. box _____________________________ 10. locker __________________________

Exercise B

Cross out each misspelled word in the following sentences. Then, above the misspelled word, write the word correctly. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1. Several of these statues were made by local sculptores.

11. Our city is one of those citys that proudly display the artwork of their citizens.
12. At school, art classes are usually packed with eager learners.
13. The Rodriguezes enlisted the help of a high school student.
14. The student painted colorful murals on their restaurant walles.
15. Judges at the courthouse decorated the hallways with prints by local photographers.
16. A few boxs of pottery were requested by the owners of a bank building.
17. They created elegant displayes in both the front and the side lobbies.
18. Even youngsteres are encouraged to contribute to the local art scene.
19. The kids painted their own paving tiles using small brushes and waterproof paints.
20. The tiles were used as borderes around the flowerbeds at their school.
Plurals B

For some nouns ending in *f* or *fe*, add *s*. For others, change the *f* or *fe* to *v* and add *es*.

**SINGULAR**
- staff
- giraffe
- wolf
- leaf

**PLURAL**
- staffs
- giraffes
- wolves
- leaves

For nouns ending in *o* preceded by a vowel, add *s*.

**SINGULAR**
- patio
- cameo
- potato

**PLURAL**
- patios
- cameos
- potatoes

**EXCEPTIONS**
- For musical terms and proper nouns, add *s*.
  - concerto—concertos
  - Sakamoto—Sakamotos

**EXERCISE A**

Spell the plural form of each of the following words. Write on the line provided.

**Example 1**.
commando ____________

1. tomato ________________
2. alto ________________
3. shelf ________________
4. mosquito _____________
5. gaffe _________________
6. studio __________________
7. reef __________________
8. soprano _________________
9. Scorpio ________________
10. tariff __________________

**EXERCISE B**

Cross out each misspelled word in the following sentences. Then, above the misspelled word, write the word correctly. If a sentence is already correct, write *C* after it.

**Example 1**.
Rooves on houses in my neighborhood were damaged in the hailstorm.

11. The electronics store has stereoes on sale this week.
12. These igloos are made of packed snow.
13. Rocky cliffs towered above the tiny, sandy beach.
14. The major movie studioes are releasing some great new movies!
15. Mom selected one of the carving knifes for slicing the ham.
16. Carefully, Stephen painted the torpedos that were part of the model ship.
17. Most of the wives voted to include men in their homemakers’ group.
18. Jamaal likes people who don’t take themselves too seriously.
19. Carlito manages four chefs at an Italian restaurant.
20. Which of these pianoes needs tuning?
Plurals C

Some nouns have irregular plural forms.

For most compound nouns, form the plural of the last word in the compound.

For compound nouns in which one of the words is modified by the other word or words, form the plural of the word modified.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>child</th>
<th>shipwreck</th>
<th>sister-in-law</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td>children</td>
<td>shipwrecks</td>
<td>sisters-in-law</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct form of the plural in parentheses.

Example 1. Most of the old movie (drive-ins, drives-in) are closed now.

1. Overnight we caught two (mouses, mice) in the traps.

2. I’ll add two more (spoonfuls, spoonsful) of confectioners’ sugar to the frosting.


4. The (thirteen-year-olds, thirteen-years-old) must pay the adult admission price.

5. (Womans, Women) enjoyed that film more than men did.

6. Both lighthouses on the island sounded their (foghorn, foghorns).

7. Piranha have sharp (teeth, tooths) with which they devour their prey.

8. From the hardware bin, I pulled out two (handfuls, handsful) of nails.

9. Please hang your wet coats on one of the (coats rack, coat racks).

10. We need a photo of all the class (vices-president, vice-presidents) for the yearbook.

EXERCISE B  Each sentence below contains a spelling error. Draw a line through each error, and write the correctly spelled word above it.

Example 1. There are three blank videotapes in the cabinet.

11. My foots ached after the exhausting hiking trip.

12. There are so many teethbrushes to choose from at this grocery store!

13. How many people will attend the spring conference for editor in chiefs?

14. The waiter says there are two soup of the days; they both sound good.

15. Did you see the large, active flock of gooses at the park?
Plurals D

16u. For some nouns, the singular and the plural forms are the same.

**Examples**  Japanese, sheep, aircraft

16v. For numerals, letters, symbols, and words used as words, add an apostrophe and s.

**Examples**  9’s, A’s, %’s, hello’s

**Exercise**  On each line provided, write the plural form of the word, numeral, letter, or symbol given in parentheses.

**Examples**

1. How many **B’s** have you gotten in math this semester? (B)
2. Both male and female **reindeer** have antlers. (reindeer)

1. The full-color book contained photographs of various ____________ (spacecraft)
2. I typed a line of ____________ to separate two sections of my e-mail message. (*)
3. I practiced my oral presentation, trying to stop using so many ____________. (um)
4. Sandy writes ____________ with a curly flourish. (2)
5. Ms. Matson could not discern whether Alejandro had written ____________ or zeros. (O)
6. He put the salmon in a basket with the other ____________ he had caught. (salmon)
7. “In your formal writing,” wrote Mr. Polaski, “Do not use ____________.” (&)  
8. Some people believe that ____________ are lucky. (7)
9. I used a function on the computer to find all the ____________ in my paper. (very)
10. Hannah writes ____________ before apartment numbers in addresses. (#)
11. “How many ____________ are in the word?” asked the game show host. (e)
12. My phone number contains four ____________. (3)
13. Simon is fascinated with ____________, and he plans to become a pilot. (aircraft)
14. The culture of the ____________ is both ancient and intriguing. (Chinese)
15. The cartoonist wrote three ____________ in the speech bubble. (?)
16. Did any of the gymnasts score ____________ at the competition? (10)
17. I heard a few ____________ as I climbed across people’s feet to get to my seat. (ouch)
18. My friend Irma pronounces her ____________ differently than I do. (r)
19. There are only two red ____________ on my test! (X)
20. Several ____________ cautiously approached the water hole. (moose)
EXERCISE A  Each of the following sentences contains an error in writing a number. Cross out each error. Then, above the error, write the number correctly.

Example 1.  Our school has an enrollment of over two thousand students.

1. There are four-hundred and fifty people in our class this year.
2. 300 students were in last year’s graduating class.
3. The girl who spoke at graduation was 1st in the class academically.
4. There were 1,000 people in attendance at the ceremony.
5. My cousin’s school has fewer than one hundred and seventy-five students.

EXERCISE B  Most of the following sentences contain an error in writing a number. Cross out each error. Then, above the error, write the number correctly. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1.  An adult llama is about four feet tall at the shoulder.

6. In South America, many people’s 1st choice among pack animals is the llama.
7. A llama can carry a load weighing up to 60 kilos.
8. An adult llama usually weighs around 113 kilos.
9. Another pack animal, the Bactrian camel, measures about 7 feet at the top of its two humps.
10. 30 miles of travel in a day is not uncommon for this camel, which lives in Central Asia.
11. The one-humped camel, called the Arabian camel, stands about seven feet tall at the shoulder.
12. The Arabian camel can carry a rider while traveling at up to 10 miles per hour.
13. 18 hours of travel at this speed would be possible.
14. The Arabian camel was imported to Australia around one hundred and fifty years ago.
15. Today, about 25,000 camels roam wild in the Australian outback.
Plurals and Numbers

Some nouns have irregular plural forms.

For most compound nouns, form the plural of the last word in the compound.

For compound nouns in which one of the words is modified by the other word or words, form the plural of the word modified.

For some nouns, the singular and the plural forms are the same.

For numerals, letters, symbols, and words used as words, add an apostrophe and s.

Spell out a number that begins a sentence.

In a sentence, spell out numbers that can be written in one or two words. Use numerals for other numbers.

Spell out numbers used to indicate order.

EXAMPLES: children, push-ups, sisters-in-law, deer, 5's, C's, &'s, and's

Fifty people attended the late movie, but one hundred attended the first showing.

**EXERCISE A** On the lines provided, spell the plural form of each of the following words, numerals, letters, and symbols.

Example 1. *hello* ___________ *hello's*

1. goose ________________ 6. very ________________
2. $ ____________________ 7. $ ____________________
3. aircraft _______________ 8. maid of honor _______________
4. 14 ____________________ 9. Sioux ________________
5. bucketful ______________ 10. eighth-grader ______________

**EXERCISE B** Most of the following sentences contain an error in writing a number. Cross out each error. Then, above the error, write the number correctly. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1. The cafeteria needs one hundred and twenty-five more hamburger buns.

11. I’ll take the 2nd menu option, Salisbury steak.

12. 47 students voted for more vegetarian menu options.

13. The head cook promised to offer five or six vegetarian dishes during the next two weeks.

14. All four hundred and fifty students said they would eat French fries at least once a week.

15. Only 25 students said they would eat tofu at least once a week.
EXERCISE A Underline the word or word group in parentheses that correctly completes each sentence.

Example 1. I am (all together, altogether) pleased with the results of my experiment.
1. When the school bus driver applied her air (brake, break), she heard a hissing noise.
2. Will you (accept, except) my sincere apology?
3. The bride wanted yellow flowers on the (altar, alter) on her wedding day.
4. My hockey gear is finally (all together, altogether), and we can go now.
5. In ancient times, a person would (break, brake) bread with others to show trust and friendship.
6. After crashing into Frank on my skateboard, I asked, “Are you (all right, alright)?”
7. My (advice, advise) is that you wear protective gloves when using bleach.
8. To separate an egg, you (break, brake) the egg in the center and spill the white into a cup.
9. Did Coach Crowe (advice, advise) the players to drink water during the game?
10. The (affects, effects) of the fire were catastrophic.

EXERCISE B Most of the following sentences contain an error in word usage. Cross out each error, and write the correct word above it. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1. If we alter the sleeves, this shirt will fit you.
alter
11. A tuxedo jacket with tails creates a very formal affect.
alter
12. On the wall of the tuxedo store hung a portrait of a bride and groom standing before an alter.
13. I like all of these tuxedos accept the pale blue one.
14. The type of cummerbund you choose effects the overall look of the tuxedo.
15. Will my black dress shoes look all right with a gray tuxedo?
16. The store clerk advised me to rent shoes in the same color as the tuxedo.
17. Thea and I will accept your and Keisha’s offer to share a ride to the dance.
18. Thea has all ready gotten her Dad’s permission.
19. It will be nice to arrive altogether instead of one by one.
20. Thea and Keisha will be altogether impressed when they see us in our tuxedos.
Words Often Confused B

Review the Words Often Confused covered on pages 426–428 of your textbook for information on the correct spelling and usage of the following terms.

- capital, capitol
- complement, compliment
- choose, chose
- consul, council, counsel
- clothes, cloths
- councilor, counselor
- coarse, course

**Exercise A**

Underline the word in parentheses that correctly completes each sentence.

**Example 1.** A pale shade of blue will *(complement, compliment)* your eye color.

1. The dome on the *(capital, capitol)* was painted black instead of gold during World War II.
2. When I came to the fork in the path, I *(choose, chose)* the path on the left.
3. The *(coarse, course)* pink sand sparkled against the dark blue water.
4. Jonathon waxed the sports car using clean, soft *(clothes, cloths)*.
5. The *(capital, capitol)* of Bulgaria is the ancient city of Sofia.
6. Columbus plotted a *(coarse, course)* west across the Atlantic.
7. My favorite *(coarse, course)* in history taught me about the ancient Greeks.
8. Becca often *(complements, compliments)* her friends on their best qualities.
9. Several of the *(councilors, counselors)* were late to the important council meeting.
10. My guidance *(counselor, counselor)* helped me find an English tutor.

**Exercise B**

Using the list at the top of this page, write a word that sensibly completes each sentence.

**Example 1.** Dr. Patras wrapped the wound with sterile white ______________.

11. A dinner will be held for the German ______________ and other government personnel.
12. If you follow through with this ______________ of action, you should succeed.
13. Lawyers are sometimes called ______________ because they give legal advice.
14. Which city is the ______________ of your state?
15. The city parks planning ______________ will meet tomorrow.
16. Each team captain will ______________ his or her team members.
17. Martin works as a janitor in the ______________.
18. I can’t wear any of these ______________ because they are all wrinkled.
19. ______________ language is a turn-off to most of my friends.
20. The school nurse can give you valuable ______________ regarding sports injuries.
**Exercise**

Underline the word in parentheses that correctly completes the meaning of each sentence below.

**Example 1.** The caterer served carrot cake for (desert, dessert).

1. “There’s no changing the (passed, past),” the aging general said with a sigh.

2. The smallest horse (passed, past) the others in the last few seconds of the Kentucky Derby.

3. At the reception, Rod was (formally, formerly) introduced to the mayor.

4. We can study at your house, or you can come over (hear, here).

5. Most house paint used to have (lead, led) in it, but then scientists discovered that the metal could poison people.

6. Every time I (lose, loose) my glasses, I get so annoyed with myself.

7. When it’s nighttime in the (desert, dessert), the air temperature can drop forty degrees.

8. The Tungs (formerly, formally) lived in Tampa, but now they live in Albuquerque.

9. During times of peace our memories of (passed, past) wars sometimes grow dim.

10. Animals that live in the (dessert, desert) need protection from intense heat and cold.

11. Climbing out of the lake, the dog shook water from (its, it’s) thick coat.

12. Mr. Castillo was (formerly, formally) a professional basketball player, and now he’s our coach.

13. The stallion (led, lead) the mares through the rushing stream.

14. Check to make sure that your seat belt is not too (lose, loose).

15. I would never (desert, dessert) a friend who needed my help or moral support.

16. Morton couldn’t (hear, here) the park ranger’s shouts over the roar of the waterfall.

17. Don’t go near a dog or wild animal if (its, it’s) foaming at the mouth.

18. In our country’s (past, passed) there have been many challenges.

19. One cheerleader, Andrea, will (lead, led) all of the cheers during this game.

20. Our family hardly ever eats (dessert, dessert) after dinner.
EXERCISE A  Underline the word in parentheses that correctly completes each sentence below.

Example 1. I can see a great distance across the (plain, plane).

1. Since the breakup of the Soviet Union, (peace, piece) has replaced the cold war.
2. Whitney has strong (principals, principles); he won’t gossip.
3. The children were so (quiet, quite) that Ms. Robles wondered what they were doing.
4. Ramona uses sheets of (stationary, stationery) that have her initials embossed at the top.
5. You’ll find the Boy Scout uniforms on those racks over (their, there, they’re).
6. The security guard had (shone, shown) us what to do in an emergency.
7. I can’t believe you have grown taller (than, then) your father!
8. Ms. Nguyen, our (principal, principle), knows most of us by name.
9. Enrico has never flown in a (plain, plane), but he will do so on Saturday.
10. Randy was (quite, quiet) secretive about his plans for the party.

EXERCISE B  On the blank in each of the following sentences, write a word to complete the sentence correctly. Choose a word from the list at the top of this page.

Example 1. I used a compass to measure the angles of the ___________.

11. Some wars have been fought on the basis of ____________ such as freedom.
12. We placed a ____________ of old carpet in Rex’s doghouse.
13. If you become lost, remain ____________ rather than wandering aimlessly.
15. Marguerite’s eyes ____________ with happiness.
16. Should I wear a ____________ sweater, or should I wear something fancier?
17. I was ____________ sincere when I said I would not play basketball this year.
18. Stretch your muscles and ____________ begin your workout.
19. The Zellers said I could stay at ____________ house while Mom is out of town.
20. Your ____________ duties are clearing the tables and wiping the counters.
Words Often Confused E

Review the Words Often Confused covered on pages 433–435 of your textbook for information on the correct spelling and usage of the following terms.

\[\text{threw, through} \quad \text{weak, week} \quad \text{who's, whose}\]
\[\text{to, too, two} \quad \text{weather, whether} \quad \text{your, you're}\]

**EXERCISE A** Underline the word in parentheses that correctly completes each sentence below.

**Example 1.** We were (to, too, two) late; the bus had already departed.
1. Frankie Jean couldn’t decide (whether, weather) to watch the scary movie.
2. Mai-Lei wrapped a colorful sash around her (waist, waste).
3. Your muscles may be (weak, week) now, but they’ll become stronger as you work out.
4. (Who’s, Whose) the vice president of the United States?
5. Vivian wondered (whether, weather) it would rain this weekend.
6. “(Your, You’re) kidding, right?” I said to Thanh.
7. Domingo accidentally (threw, through) away Karma’s phone number.
8. Are you hungry enough (to, too, two) split a large pizza with me?
9. The (whether, weather) is perfect for playing volleyball on the beach.
10. I wasn’t sure (who’s, whose) science book it was, so I gave it to Mr. Reddick.

**EXERCISE B** Most of the following sentences contain an error in word usage. Cross out each error, and write the correct word above it. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

**Example 1.** In the 1800’s, many women wore corsets to create a tiny waist.

11. Your invited to a masquerade party.
12. Dress so that no one will know whose inside your costume.
13. I’ve been designing my costume for a weak.
14. If the whether is nice, we will dance and eat outdoors.
15. My parents will be there through the entire evening.
16. The party will be next week on Friday night.
17. If you need a ride too my house, just call me.
18. Please RSVP so that we don’t waste food by buying too much.
19. If your not sure about a costume, ask me for ideas.
20. I have too extra costumes that I can lend to people.
**EXERCISE A**  In each sentence below, add the letters needed to spell the words correctly.

**Example 1.** I have confidence that your plan will suc **ceed**.

1. The anc ______ nt bones told the scientist a story.
2. The waves re ______ de as the tide goes out.
3. Mr. Valdez is a good n ______ ghbor; he’s friendly and considerate.
4. The homecoming float broke loose on the hill and began to exc ______ d the speed limit.
5. Laverne felt that she had ach ______ ved independence when her mother let her do the family grocery shopping.

**EXERCISE B**  For each item below, write a new word as indicated.

**Examples 1.** beauty + ful = **beautiful**

2. plural of A = **A’s**

6. plural of 5 = 

7. un + likely = 

8. plural of donkey = 

9. silly + ness = 

10. set + ing = 

11. plural of goose = 

12. trouble + some = 

13. plural of kitty = 

14. mis + place = 

15. seam + less = 

16. plural of brother-in-law = 

17. dye + ing = 

18. plural of beach = 

19. race + ed = 

20. plural of piano = 

---

**Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice**
EXERCISE Underline the word or word group in parentheses that correctly completes the meaning of each sentence below.

Example 1. The players are (all ready, already) for the game.
1. The quarterback’s argument did not (affect, effect) the referee’s decision.
2. Roy enjoys playing all sports (accept, except) golf.
3. Each year, a state-wide track meet is held in the (capital, capitol).
4. Coach Novinger will (complement, compliment) a player who deserves it.
5. For several days before the big game, none of the players ate (desert, dessert).
6. If the volleyball is low on air, (its, it’s) of no use to us.
7. The Fighting Muskrats are determined not to (loose, lose) to the Laughing Hyenas.
8. Since Angela (passed, past) all her classes, she can play in the next game.
9. Our school (principal, principle) attends all of the home games.
10. The fans in the bleachers grew (quiet, quite) as Debra prepared for a free throw.
11. We will jog three miles; (than, then), we will practice lay-ups.
12. Coach Rogers told us to go to the tennis courts, and she will meet us (their, there, they’re).
13. Because of the rain, I don’t know (weather, whether) the golfers will be able to play.
14. “Who is (your, you’re) best server?” asked a volleyball player on the other team.
15. During practice Coach often shouts, “Keep moving! Don’t (waist, waste) your time!”
16. Carlos’s pitches are (to, too, two) fast for most batters to hit.
17. (Who’s, Whose) going to fill in for the injured player?
18. Going into the game, I felt a sense of (peace, piece) about the outcome.
20. The school (consul, council, counsel) has agreed to create a soccer field beside the gym.
EXERCISE  Underline the correct word or number in parentheses to complete each of the sentences below.

Example 1. Mount Everest’s peak is over (29,000, twenty-nine thousand) feet high.

1. Winston Churchill (led, lead) the British through World War II.
2. Two (armies, armys) met on the battlefield.
3. There will be a (breif, brief) intermission after the second act of the play.
4. If I (break, brake) last year’s record, I will be the fastest swimmer in the county.
5. (Eleven, 11) chefs graduated from the Chinese cooking school last week.
6. The artist has skillfully captured the glow of sunlight on (sheafs, sheaves) of wheat.
7. Ms. Raign suggested I use fewer (reallys, really’s) in my writing.
8. Some scientists (believe, beleive) that the earth’s atmosphere is getting warmer because of pollution.
9. Doug’s (carefullness, carefulness) with dangerous tools is commendable.
10. There were (5,000, five thousand) people at the Italian festival last night.
11. (Twenty thousand, 20,000) years ago, there were people living on the American continents.
12. After December 2000, we (proceeded, proceded) to the twenty-first century.
13. New York City is the most populous city in the state of New York, but Albany is the (capitol, capital).
14. After the marathon, I massaged my aching (feet, feets).
15. A horse’s (hieght, height) is measured in hands rather than in inches and feet.
16. There are more than (600, six hundred) islands in the Micronesian chain.
17. Sometimes we have cheese and fruit for (dessert, desert).
18. (Whether, Weather) the senator is reelected is up to the voters of our state.
19. “I will not (concede, conceed) defeat,” declared the losing candidate.
20. Why does medicine usually taste (aweful, awful)?
EXERCISE A  For each item below, write a new word as indicated.

Example 1. plural of thirteen-year-old = thirteen-year-olds

1. cry + ing =
2. re + view =
3. plural of father-in-law =
4. save + ing =
5. plural of hello =
6. plural of tooth =
7. semi + circle =
8. plural of $ =
9. state + ment =
10. plural of & =
11. plural of jetty =
12. plural of knife =
13. plural of @ =
14. mis + fortune =
15. begin + ing =
16. cheery + ly =
17. plural of r =
18. plural of couch =
19. plural of tomato =
20. begin + er =

EXERCISE B  Underline the correct item in parentheses to complete each of the sentences below.

Example 1. (550, Five hundred fifty) houses were without electricity during the storm.

21. The library allows patrons to check out up to (fifteen, 15) books at one time.
22. Lance finished the hundred-yard dash in (third, 3rd) place.
23. This history book covers the past (1,500, one thousand and five hundred) years of history.
24. (24, Twenty-four) cats and dogs await adoption at the pet shelter.
25. May I trade this dollar for (4, four) quarters?
EXERCISE  Identify each of the following word groups by writing on the line provided F if the word group is a sentence fragment, R if it is a run-on sentence, or S if it is a complete sentence.

Example  F 1. Last Friday, after the final bell had rung.
   1. Finally finished the project we had been working on for months.
   2. Shouldn’t Aunt Lucia have called the house by now?
   3. Whenever I see a full moon, my thoughts.
   4. The fog obscured the skyscrapers, a soft rain began to fall.
   5. Never had she seen so many chickens in one place!
   6. Exactly what he had wanted to happen.
   7. Quickly he ran to the fence, the horses had escaped during the night.
   8. In the middle of the night, as the howling increased, the children shivering in their beds.
   9. Do you want the fish, or would you rather have one of the pasta dishes?
  10. The telephone number to call in the event of an emergency.
   11. Holding the old book under a strong light, she could see some faint writing.
   12. Before we paint, we have a lot of preparation to do, we will have to remove all the books from the shelves.
   13. Don’t forget to buy some dropcloths at the hardware store!
   14. All the dry ingredients, including flour, sugar, salt, baking powder, and baking soda.
   15. Let the bread dough rise for an hour, form it into loaves.
   16. Do you think you will enjoy either rock climbing or caving?
   17. Whether we will meet them at the theater or give them a ride in our car.
   18. When his mother returned from her errands, he borrowed the car.
   19. The accident, although frightening, was not bad, no one was hurt.
   20. We were too tired to eat much dinner, we went straight to sleep.
Sentence Fragments and Run-on Sentences B

**EXERCISE** On the short lines provided, identify each numbered word group as a sentence fragment (F), a run-on sentence (R), or a complete sentence (S). Then, on the long lines provided, rewrite any sentence fragments or run-ons to create complete sentences.

**Example**  
1. People in the United States can expect fireworks on the Fourth of July many other nations also have independence celebrations.  
   
   **People in the United States can expect fireworks on the Fourth of July.**  
   **Many other nations also have independence celebrations.**

   1. The oldest independence day celebration is on August 1 in Switzerland.

   2. Before that date there were three separate Swiss states they decided to form a union.

   3. Elephants wearing bright blankets in India’s independence day parades.

   4. The United States gained its independence from England, Mexico won its independence from Spain.

   5. Imagine the celebrations in Mexico City each year its population is huge.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, underline the verb in parentheses that agrees in number with its subject.

Example 1. Either Corinna or Michael (has, have) a slide projector.
1. One of these dogs (is, are) not very well trained.
2. Every hallway in our school (look, looks) different.
3. Neither Chris nor his brother Carl (play, plays) football.
4. Unfortunately, the bouquet of flowers (have, has) wilted already.
5. Although my brother and I (are, is) the same age, he is taller than I am.
6. (Do, Does) the lights in this room seem dim to you?
7. Our cats and our dog (sleeps, sleep) on the same blanket.
8. All of the colors in that painting (appear, appears) muted to me.
9. Everyone checked out a novel; none of the biographies (were, was) chosen.
10. (Are, Is) forty-two or forty-three the correct answer?

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, cross out any verb that does not agree with its subject and write the correct form of the verb above the incorrect form. If the sentence is correct, write C after it.

Example 1. Either a mouse or some moths has eaten a hole in my favorite jacket.

11. My brother, along with his friends Neil and Mick, play clarinet in the band.
12. Not a single one of the eggs in the carton were broken.
13. If the choir practice three more times this week, the concert will go smoothly.
14. Haven’t Nathan or Christina turned in the paper yet?
15. The coaches for the team hasn’t made a decision about the starting lineup.
16. Flour, along with a little yeast, olive oil, water, and salt, is the main ingredient in pizza dough.
17. Either ice-skating or sledding are fun on a cold winter’s day.
18. In that classroom, neither the door nor the windows open easily.
19. A horse and wagon were the only mode of transportation at that time.
20. Either my grandmother or my mother’s sisters cooks the holiday dinner.
**Exercise A**  In each of the following sentences, decide whether the underlined verb agrees in number with its subject. If the verb form is incorrect, write the correct form above it. If the verb is correct, write C above it.

**Example 1.** Each of us have brought lunch from home today.

1. The reflection of the moon on the waves is beautiful.
2. She occasionally eat chicken, but fish is her favorite choice.
3. Neither my science class nor my math class have difficult homework.
4. Has either of you boys written to your grandfather lately?
5. Both my brother and Frank, his best friend since the first grade, thinks that movie is great.
6. Does Al and his teammates expect to win the game tomorrow?
7. Justine, along with Katie and Rose, go to the same camp every summer.
8. Some pieces of the jigsaw puzzle was missing.
9. Randall and Maria, his sister, are certainly the fastest runners in the school.
10. In addition to a pencil, graph paper, and a ruler, what else are needed for this problem?

**Exercise B**  In each of the following sentences, circle the subject of the underlined verb. Then, if the verb does not agree in number with its subject, write the correct form of the verb above the incorrect form. If the verb already agrees with its subject, write C above it.

**Example 1.** The teacher is concerned because no one in the class have studied.

11. Do everyone in the class understand the material?
12. Several of the students have asked for additional help.
13. Either Oscar’s father or one of his uncles have offered to drive us to the movies.
14. The band play when the team runs onto the field.
15. The most interesting exhibit in that museum are the rocks and minerals.
16. Sam agreed that the rocks and minerals was really fascinating.
17. Where will you go to school when your family move?
18. She won’t be able to join us unless someone give her a ride.
19. I think you’ve made a mistake; fifty-seven cents is the wrong change.
20. He couldn’t wear the suit because the pants was too short.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, circle the antecedent of the pronoun in parentheses. Then, underline the pronoun in parentheses that agrees with the antecedent.

Example 1. Every child should wear (their, his or her) hat outside today.
1. One of my brothers has forgotten (their, his) hat and gloves.
2. The questionnaire asked the public (their, its) opinions about the candidates.
3. My family is from Sioux Falls, South Dakota; can you find (them, it) on a map?
4. One of the birds had broken (its, his) wing.
5. If anyone is interested in chess, (they, he or she) is welcome to join our club.
6. Van, Matthew, and Erik woke up early on the morning of (his, their) big exam.
7. I’ve lost my sunglasses again; do you know where I left (them, it)?
8. He used molasses in the recipe simply because he likes (its, their) taste.
9. My sister is taking economics this semester because her degree program requires (them, it).
10. Someone on the girls’ basketball team spilled shampoo all over (themselves, herself).

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, cross out any pronoun that does not agree with its antecedent. Then, write the correct pronoun above it. If the sentence is correct, write C after it.

Example 1. I didn’t take gymnastics because they was offered at the same time as earth science was.
11. Ad astra per aspera is the motto of Kansas; it means “to the stars through hardships.”
12. Many people are familiar with E. E. Cummings’s poetry because of their unusual punctuation and capitalization.
13. Denise and Emil were not happy about his and her grades on the essay test.
14. His mother bought him some nice slacks, but he refused to wear it to the awards banquet.
15. The strength of the United States lies in their people.
16. Measure three tablespoons of milk and add them to the mixture.
17. Neither of the girls remembered to bring their notebook to class.
18. The islands that make up the state of Hawaii are well known for their natural beauty.
19. I didn’t watch the news last night because I fell asleep before they came on.
20. Thomas and Clive, you should congratulate yourself for a job well done.
EXERCISE  In each of the following sentences, circle the antecedent of the pronoun in parentheses. Then, underline the pronoun in parentheses that agrees with the antecedent.

Example 1. Until she studied (them, it), she thought she didn’t like physics.
1. Each of the horses is stabled in (their, its) own stall.
2. Max, who wanted to go to the mountains, will not be able to borrow (their, his) father’s car this weekend.
3. If your binoculars are more powerful than mine are, please let me use (it, them).
4. Everyone who plans to go to the concerts should bring five dollars for (their, his or her) ticket.
5. The team does warm-up exercises for fifteen minutes before each of (its, their) games.
6. I don’t believe that either Simone or Mary colors (their, her) hair.
7. One of the paperback books is missing some of (their, its) pages.
8. The crowd showed (their, its) appreciation by cheering and clapping.
9. Ask Ana or Maria what (her, their) middle name is.
10. Both Ivan and Zeke agree (his, their) biology exam was harder than they thought it would be.
11. You can locate a country or a city in the atlas by looking in (their, its) index.
12. Neither Carlos nor Ulises likes to buy (their, his) lunch in the cafeteria.
13. The cat picked up (its, his or her) kittens, one by one, and carried them to the basket.
14. Anyone who is interested in photography should give Mr. Knight (their, his or her) name.
15. My mother and father went out to dinner on (his and her, their) anniversary.
16. Some of the apples are rotten, aren’t (it, they)?
17. Everyone in this room needs to remind (themselves, himself or herself) about the need for silence during the test.
18. Do you know of anyone who lost (their, his or her) wallet on the bus?
19. Some of my friends like to do (his or her, their) science projects at the last minute, but I can’t work that way.
20. Sometimes we work together on a problem in class, but this time each of us has to get the answer by (ourselves, himself or herself).
 Verb Forms A

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

**Example 1.** Have you ever (sang, sung) in a choir before?

1. Some pages (tore, torn) when I dropped the book.
2. Before she had (written, wrote) two pages, all the electricity in the school went off.
3. You should have (spoke, spoken) to your counselor about the course schedule.
4. Last weekend, my brother and I (flew, flown) alone to Topeka to visit our grandparents.
5. Sharon, with some help from her father, has (built, built) a doghouse for Treasure, her golden retriever.
6. Although he had never (drew, drawn) much before, he was clearly talented.
7. Some of the peaches had (fell, fallen) off the trees, but plenty were left to pick.
8. Overnight, the rain had (froze, frozen) into a thin sheet of ice on all the roads.
9. My great-grandmother (brung, brought) these dishes with her when she came to America.
10. Did you (break, broke) your collarbone when you fell off the fence?

**Exercise B** In each of the following sentences, choose the correct verb in parentheses.

**Example 1.** Please (sit, set) the packages on that chair.

11. None of the dogs learned how to (sit, set) during obedience class.
12. When the sun (rises, raises), we will be able to see the island.
13. As I was (lying, laying) down for a nap, the doorbell rang.
14. Who is responsible for (rising, raising) the flag every morning?
15. My glasses were (setting, sitting) on the table the last time I saw them.
16. Weak from her long illness, she could barely (raise, rise) her head off the pillow.
17. The father (lay, laid) his baby girl in the crib, tiptoed out of the room, and shut the door quietly.
18. She (sat, set) the dishes on the counter and wiped off the table.
19. They must have (laid, lain) in the sun too long; they both look a little sunburned.
20. Kristin and Thad had already (raised, risen) from their seats and were starting toward the door.
Verb Forms A

EXERCISE A  On the lines provided, write the correct past or past participle form of the verb given.

Example 1.  be  Before last summer, I had never ________ to our community’s animal care center.
1.  go  I didn’t know when I __________ there that they needed volunteers.
2.  shake  Mr. Blumenthal ______________ my hand when I said I wanted to help.
3.  take  I had __________ care of neighborhood pets before, but the center’s iguanas presented a new challenge.
4.  teach  The trained caretakers ______________ me how to prepare vegetables for the rabbits.
5.  keep  One day I __________ a baby llama until its mother was found.
6.  bring  Several people ______________ in young squirrels that needed care.
7.  break  A mallard duck that had __________ its wing stayed with us until it could fly.
8.  swim  A turtle found in the parking lot ______________ away when we released it at the lake.
9.  want  Our guest monkey always ______________ to be held.
10.  put  My friend Andy Mendoza has __________ in his application to help at the center next summer.

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, identify the voice of the verb by writing above it A if the verb is in the active voice or P if the verb is in the passive voice.

Example 1.  These flowers were brought by one of my friends.
11.  Reginald doesn’t remember the name of that actor.
12.  That garden was planted by our class last spring.
13.  On Tuesdays, the museum doesn’t open until noon.
14.  Unfortunately, the roof of the barn had been torn off.
15.  Several techniques were demonstrated during this afternoon’s art class.
16.  Natalie began the application.
17.  The dogs chased the mail truck for blocks.
18.  All of the food at the birthday party was prepared by my mother and my aunt.
19.  The choir had been practicing for weeks for the holiday concert.
20.  Claire will have read over two hundred books by May.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct pronoun in parentheses.

Example 1. Akim read Susan, Josh, and (I, me) the inscription inside his ring.

1. Without (he, him) as the troop leader, we were less enthusiastic about the campout.
2. The safari guide showed (we, us) how to take better photographs.
3. The batter with the best hitting record could be (he, him).
4. Lucinda and (she, her) already bought tickets to see Phantom of the Opera.
5. It is (we, us) who recommend the Caesar salad.
6. The reporter asked Nan and (they, them) if the exhibit was more fun than a movie.
7. Yann and (we, us) saw three toads by the gutter spout last night.
8. The airplane to Lima, Peru, did not wait for the officer and (she, her).
9. It was baseball announcer Harry Caray (who, whom) was known for shouting “Holy Cow!” after a big play.
10. (We, Us) skaters have practiced at the ice rink every day.

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, cross out any incorrect pronoun and write the correct pronoun above it. If a sentence is correct, write C above it.

Example 1. He and me are the only returning team members this year.

11. Vincent’s sisters and him visited their cousins in New Mexico last summer.
12. As the plane rolled away from the gate, Raul could see his mother waving at his brother and he.
13. Only one of we girls wants to play a percussion instrument.
14. Who should we call about the broken fire hydrant?
15. The student who won first place in the debate tournament is him.
16. Tell Melinda and her about the comedian you saw last night.
17. This is a reminder for whomever is the last person to leave the room.
18. Us biology students have a lot of homework.
19. Did you bring extra sandwiches for Michelle and I?
20. Peter told Dan and I about his plans for the summer vacation.
EXERCISE  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct pronoun in parentheses.

Example 1. My best friends, (her, she) and Ruth, are coming with us to the movies.

1. (Who, Whom) should have shut the windows before it rained?

2. Please remind (we, us) new members about the meeting.

3. Four of the students in my class, Alice, Terrell, David, and (her, she), entered essays in the contest.

4. I told (he, him) about the program.

5. The girl who raised the most money during the fund-raising drive was (her, she).

6. My mother has invited some of her relatives—my aunt Kera and my two cousins, Jim and (she, her)—to go to the play with us.

7. I bought (him, he) and Jack an ice-cream cone.

8. When Jean calls, ask her to bring her notes with (her, she).

9. If we don’t reach Gabe and (he, him) tonight, we can tell them tomorrow at school.

10. Did either Yvonne or (her, she) need a ride to the rehearsal?

11. Caroline and (me, I) were planning a picnic, but it rained.

12. If you see Nina or Saul today, please don’t tell (he or she, him or her) the secret.

13. Were the boys who painted the fence for your father (they, them)?

14. (Her, She) and her sister always get up early on weekends.

15. Do you have any last-minute advice for Edgar and (I, me)?

16. The teacher you’ve liked the best so far is (who, whom)?

17. The person who left that mess in the kitchen was either my niece or (him, he).

18. By (who, whom) was this poem written?

19. Choose Frances and (I, me) to be in your project group.

20. Sit next to Marty and (he, him); they’ve saved a place for you.
EXERCISE In each of the following sentences, underline the correct form of the adjective or adverb in parentheses.

Example 1. Both of my sisters are (tallest, taller) than I am.

1. Did you do (better, gooder) on the test than you expected?

2. The children walked (farther, farthest) today than they ever have before.

3. This is some of the (interestingest, most interesting) music I’ve ever heard.

4. I know I will follow directions (most carefully, more carefully) the next time.

5. Is the backyard (shadier, more shadier) than the front yard?

6. Of all the essays, his was by far the (more impressive, most impressive).

7. He didn’t look well yesterday, but I hope he’s feeling (weller, better) today.

8. Which one of the seven designs did you like (better, best)?

9. Everyone was (happier, more happier) when spring arrived at last.

10. She dances (more gracefully, gracefuller) than most dancers her age.

11. Tuesday was the (worse, worst) day I’ve had in a long, long time.

12. The Caesar salad Rick’s mom made was the (more tasty, tastiest) I’ve ever eaten.

13. Which of these two dresses looks (gooder, better) on me?

14. That theater has the (less expensive, least expensive) tickets in the whole city.

15. The students finished this set of problems (more quickly, more quicker) than they had finished the previous set.

16. Which one of your dogs—Minnie or Moe—is (most obedient, more obedient)?

17. The final problem on the test took (much, more) time than any of the others.

18. We go to the park (more often, often) than we used to.

19. You put (little, less) peanut butter on this sandwich than you put on the other one.

20. I enjoyed that movie (more, most) than the other one we saw.
EXERCISE  On the lines provided, write the correct positive, comparative, or superlative form of the italicized adjective or adverb.

Example 1. desirable  Plant breeders develop vegetables with more desirable traits.

1. large  The snail on land is the African snail.
2. tiny  Newborn opossums are much smaller than a teaspoon.
3. good  A recycling center operator might know the easiest way to avoid wasting resources.
4. old  Historians say that the dice are from India and Iraq.
5. famous  The Messiah is probably George Frideric Handel’s greatest work.
6. frequently  Hummingbirds beat their wings faster than any other bird.
7. complex  Please choose the easiest jigsaw puzzle out of the three. We enjoy a challenge!
8. available  During the late 1800s work outside the home became more common to women than ever before.
9. gracefully  Ballet dancers are likely to move more gracefully than people without formal training.
10. dry  The driest weather periods on record are referred to as droughts.
11. well  Doesn’t she feel any better than she did yesterday?
12. lonely  The little boy felt less lonely in his new neighborhood, far away from his old friends.
13. horrible  Sharon left the supply closet in the art room in the dirtiest condition it has ever been in, Sarah.
14. much  Did you spend more time on your homework last night?
15. soon  The flight arrived earlier than expected.
16. important  Please get off the phone; I’m expecting the most important call of my life!
17. quickly  After the sun came out, the temperature rose quickly.
18. little  The least of all the puppies nestled close to its mother.
19. bad  The weather today is much worse than it was yesterday.
20. far  We don’t have to walk much farther to catch the bus.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, draw a line through any unnecessary words or parts of words to correct a double comparison or double negative.

Example 1. We couldn’t barely see over the heads of the people in front of us.

1. Cole is much more taller than his brother.
2. He can’t never make up his mind.
3. Ten kilometers is the most farthest I’ve run at one time.
4. Without a doubt, that was the worstest movie I’ve ever seen.
5. The construction noise was so loud that she couldn’t hardly hear the radio.
6. No, thank you, I don’t want no rice or potatoes with my meal.
7. We don’t never have enough time to finish our work in class.
8. I hope I wake up more earlier tomorrow than I did today.
9. Of all the birds in my yard, the cardinal is my most favorite.
10. She didn’t have no money to pay for her ticket.

EXERCISE B  On the line provided, rewrite each of the following sentences to correct the double comparison or double negative.

Example 1. We can’t paint no more murals until this wall dries. We can’t paint any more murals until this wall dries.

11. If you keep eating brownies, there won’t be no more to take on the trip. We can’t paint any more murals until this wall dries.

12. Any band will perform more better with a little practice. We can’t paint any more murals until this wall dries.

13. New Hampshire is much more smaller than Alaska. We can’t paint any more murals until this wall dries.

14. There wasn’t hardly anybody at the bus stop this morning. We can’t paint any more murals until this wall dries.

15. The new principals don’t allow nobody without a pass in the hallway. We can’t paint any more murals until this wall dries.
EXERCISE  On the lines provided, rewrite each of the following sentences to correct any dangling or misplaced modifiers. You may have to add or rearrange words to make the meaning of a sentence clear.

**Example 1.** The child held onto the cat who had her hair tied in pigtails. **The child, who had her hair tied in pigtails, held onto the cat.**

1. Reaching the station with only a few minutes to spare, the conductor hurried the girl into the waiting train. ________________________________  ________________________________

2. Chirping and flapping their little wings, the boys admired the baby birds. ________________________________

3. When planning a hike in rugged country, a compass and a map of the area are necessary. ________________________________

4. The boy from Finland fixed the old porch rail that stayed with my family last summer. ________________________________

5. To get the most out of school and my other activities, learning to manage my time was important. ________________________________

6. While riding the bus to school last week, an accident happened right in front of us. ________________________________

7. I heard that a mastodon skeleton had been discovered on the radio today. ________________________________

8. The high winds scared us that were bending the trees nearly to the ground. ________________________________

9. Weary but satisfied with our day’s work, the shade of the trees was welcome. ________________________________

10. Running down the hill near our house, my knee was hurt. ________________________________
**EXERCISE** On the lines provided, rewrite each of the following sentences to correct any dangling or misplaced modifiers. You may have to add or rearrange words to make the meaning of a sentence clear.

**Example 1.** Determined to win, four medals were awarded to the track team. **Determined to win, the track team was awarded for medals.**

1. Traditional Navajo houses are distinctive, which are made of logs and earth. __________

2. The Switzerland poster shows how spectacular the mountains are in my room. __________

3. Antoine gave a pendant to his grandmother engraved with family names. __________

4. Belonging to one of the Aleman twins, we will remember to return this jacket. __________

5. Tired from the long bus ride home, the city-limit sign was cheered by the students. __________

6. James Watt created the term *horsepower*, who invented a new kind of steam engine. __________

7. Uncle John found a raccoon in his garage that was sleeping. __________

8. Eager and confident, news of the first triumph was no surprise to the coach. __________

9. Richard the Lion-Hearted left his kingdom to fight in the Crusades, whose brother was Prince John. __________

10. Tanya and Guy almost finished the practice quiz at the same time. __________
EXERCISE A  For each of the following sentences, determine whether the underlined word or word group is correct according to standard, formal English usage. If the word or word group is not standard, formal usage, write the correct usage above it. If the word or word group is correct, write C above it.

Example 1. I learned some important lessons when I busted my wrist.

1. One morning I noticed a kitten setting high in a tree. 
2. I should of gone on about my business.
3. Instead, I acted like the situation required emergency action.
4. Since I ain’t afraid of heights, I grabbed our ladder.
5. That there kitten was clearly frightened as I approached.
6. I decided to try and stand on the top step of the ladder.
7. Them warning labels are there for a purpose.
8. Do you know how it feels to lay injured on the ground?
9. The kitten managed to climb down very well by itself.
10. Don’t climb a ladder without you have someone to hold it steady

EXERCISE B  On the lines provided, rewrite each of the following sentences, correcting any errors in standard, formal English usage.

Example 1. My mother she don’t like dirty shoes in the house. __________ 

11. How come I had to wait a hour for you?
12. When he wasn’t excepted into the summer program, he was sort of embarrassed.
13. The reason I don’t have a jacket is because I looked all over the house, but it was nowheres.
14. The teacher who use to learn us math moved to Milwaukee.
15. They were suppose to read the book theirselves and than kind of tell how it effected them.
EXERCISE A  For each of the following sentences, determine whether the underlined word or word group is correct according to standard, formal English usage. If the word or word group is not standard usage, write the correct usage above it. If the word or word group is correct, write C above it.

Example 1. Don’t she know that the bell rings at 8:00 A.M.?

1. I have less pairs of shoes than my sister has.
2. They had a private discussion between the three of themselves.
3. You hadn’t ought to of left the windows open last night.
4. Please bring these books when you go to the library this afternoon.
5. Unfortunately, it’s closed on Monday afternoons.
6. These kind of sweater is too warm for our climate.
7. He was real excited about the research project.
8. My aunt Nelda feels bad today.
9. Everyone accept Jerome is coming on the field trip.
10. Their wasn’t any spaghetti left by the time I ate lunch.

EXERCISE B  On the lines provided, rewrite each of the following sentences, correcting any errors in standard, formal English usage.

Example 1. I all ready know who’s shoes them are. I already know whose shoes those are.

11. He dances real good, don’t he?
12. We should of been able to find some seats together somewheres in the theater.
13. The reason you can’t scarcely see through the windshield is because its covered with mud.
14. This here book has less pages then the one your reading.
15. He told me that he learned hiself to ride a bike when he was five years old.
Capitalization A

EXERCISE A In each of the following sentences, circle any letter that should be capitalized.

Example 1. Did you call Mrs. Simpson about the article in the New York Times?
1. Are Belgium and Luxembourg also members of NATO?
2. Merrill Longham, D.V.M., is a large-animal veterinarian; he grew up on a ranch somewhere in the west.
3. I don’t know what the statue on the top of the U.S. Capitol building represents.
4. The constellation Ursa Major, or the big bear, is known to many people as the Big Dipper.
5. The German airship Hindenburg exploded as it was docking in Lakehurst, New Jersey, on May 6, 1937.
6. Elizabeth II, Queen of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, succeeded her father, King George VI, in 1952.
7. The Rocky Mountains form the Continental Divide, which separates rivers that flow west to the Pacific Ocean from rivers that flow east to the Atlantic Ocean.
8. Although the capital city of South Dakota is Pierre, its largest city is Sioux Falls.
9. I think she lives at 4422 Avenue B, which is near the intersection of Wise Street and the Flint Parkway.
10. In 1830, in a famous race between Peter Cooper’s steam locomotive Tom Thumb and a horse, the horse won.

EXERCISE B In each of the following sentences, circle any letter that should be capitalized but is not, and draw a slash (/) through any letter that is capitalized but should not be.

Example 1. You can cash this check at any branch of the First National Bank.
11. The Official Language of Iran is Persian, also called Farsi, a language written in Arabic script.
12. The Taj Mahal, at Agra in northern India, must be one of the World’s most beautiful buildings.
13. He has memorized several poems by Robert Frost, but his favorite is the Poem that begins, “whose woods these are I think I know.”
14. The photography club will meet on the first Wednesday of every Month, except for December.
15. This semester my Electives include art history and journalism I.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, circle any letter that should be capitalized but is not.

Example 1. I think Peterson’s drugstore is on tenth street.

1. The winner of the newbery medal in 1999 was louis sachar’s novel *holes*.
2. Most u.s. currency is printed at the bureau of engraving and printing in washington.
3. Our school’s team is called the callaway cardinals, our colors are red and white, and our mascot is a cardinal named cal.
4. When the new hayfield high school opened, crowding at mt. vernon high school was relieved.
5. She shook dr. michaelman’s hand and said, “it’s nice to meet you.”
6. That restaurant serves many kinds of asian dishes, but I especially like one of their thai noodle dishes.
7. I wonder what earth looks like from the moon.
8. He lives on forty-third street, just north of the university of texas campus.
9. My family doesn’t watch much tv, but we subscribe to several magazines, including *national geographic* and *time*.
10. On labor day, many afl-cio members gather for a parade and a picnic.

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, circle any letter that should be capitalized but is not, and draw a slash (/) through any letter that should be lowercase but is not. If the capitalization in a sentence is correct, write C after the sentence.

Example 1. The current country borders of north America are certainly not what they have always been.

11. Before 1803, the huge area called the louisiana territory belonged to span and france.
12. The area stretched from the mississippi river to the rocky mountains; its northern border was canada, and it extended all the way south to mexico.
13. American farmers who lived west of the appalachian mountains depended on the mississippi river to ship their produce to the gulf of mexico.
14. President Jefferson, who did not wish to see france increase its influence on the north American continent, authorized the purchase of florida and new orleans.
15. His envoys agreed to buy the whole territory from the French emperor, Napoleon I, for about fifteen million dollars.
Commases A

**Exercise**  In each of the following sentences, draw a caret (^) where any missing commas should be inserted.

**Example 1.** During the month before the contest the math team will meet every Tuesday, Wednesday, and Friday.

1. Before you begin to write your first draft make an outline of your paper.
2. My brother and John, one of our cousins on our mother's side, are in the same class.
3. Send the completed application form to 442 Winston Ave. Sherwood MI 40007.
4. In that building are the offices of Kelly Donohue Jr. M.D. and his father Kelly Donohue Sr. D.D.S.
5. In the middle of the night a loud clap of thunder rattled the windows.
6. On Monday May 10 we have our final exam in social studies.
8. On Tuesday after school the Drama Club will meet in the auditorium.
9. Ms. Masterton may I please use the telephone on your desk?
10. Laughing and shouting the children ran onto the playground.
11. Yes I think I would enjoy watching the parade from your apartment.
12. Rob, Betty, and Suzanne have been chosen to represent the class on the student council.
13. The banner across the hallway is really impressive, but the posters look great, too.
14. Although no rain had been forecast, a thunderstorm ruined our picnic.
15. My family has two dogs, three cats, a parrot, and some goldfish.
16. You can wash the lettuce for the salad, and Calvin can slice the bread.
17. When the telephone rang before dawn I sprang out of bed.
18. In the fall of 2007 we drove from Texas to Oregon camping at national parks along the way.
19. I've had this old stuffed bear since I think I was three or four years old.
20. The hikers filled their water bottles strapped on their packs and set off into the woods.
**EXERCISE A**  In each of the following sentences, draw a caret (^) to show where any missing commas should be inserted. If a sentence is correct, write C above it.

**Example 1.** At elevations higher than a mile, most people begin to feel the effects of reduced oxygen.

1. At high altitudes tired sleepy people may also get *soroche* which means “mountain sickness.”
2. However the Quechua Indians of the Andes have special body characteristics.
3. A very high mountain range in South America the Andes has a top altitude of 22,835 ft.
4. The Quechua do not live on the highest peaks but they do make their homes at altitudes of more than two miles above sea level.
5. Imagine how terribly out of breath most people would feel at that altitude!
6. How do the Quechua Indians manage to survive in an atmosphere with less oxygen?
7. Studies show the Quechua have larger chests lung capacities and hearts than other people.
8. Because this Indian group has a higher breathing rate they can take in enough oxygen.
9. On the other hand their heartbeat is slower than that of sea-level inhabitants.
10. Could it be that an extra-large amount of blood is pumped with each heartbeat?

**EXERCISE B**  In each of the following sentences, draw a caret (^) to show where any missing commas should be inserted and draw a slash (/) through any unnecessary commas.

**Example 1.** The meetings, are on Tuesday, March 14, and Wednesday, March 29.

11. “Zack” Michael asked “do you want to meet, at my house on Saturday morning?”
12. Noel Sandy and Tricia, have dogs but Kim, and Phil have cats.
13. Renata would you please, help me sort the recycling?
14. Put bottles, and jars, into this bin aluminum cans into that box and steel cans, into that box.
15. On September 19 2009 at 4:00 P.M. we will play our first, big game of the season.
16. If Amanda calls, while I’m in the shower, please tell her, I’ll be there in twenty minutes.
17. He was after all one of my closest, friends.
18. Tired but happy after a long day in the sun the children fell asleep, in the car, on the way home.
19. She was born, in Evanston Illinois but both of her brothers, were born in Des Moines Iowa.
20. Martin along with three other students in his class was inducted, into the honor society, last year.
Semicolons and Colons

Exercise In each of the following sentences, underline each word or number that should be followed by a colon, and draw a caret mark (^) to show where a semicolon should be inserted instead of a comma.

Examples 1. For the project, you will need the following supplies poster board, felt-tip pens, index cards, and a glue stick.
2. Busloads of students arrived at the theater at 12:00, unfortunately, the movie had started at 11:30.

1. Many people try to follow a version of the golden rule Treat others the way you want to be treated.
2. This camping equipment should be considered necessary a tent, a sleeping bag, a flashlight, and a first-aid kit.
3. The costume requires the following materials six yards of muslin, a large spool of thread, a 26-inch zipper, and two yards of inch-wide elastic.
4. Good sportsmanship is important to our coach, she says that poor losers and poor winners are both poor sports.
5. Their travel plans included stops in the following cities Milan and Venice, Italy, Munich, Germany, and Strasbourg and Paris, France.
6. Subway trains depart from this station every five minutes except between midnight and 6:00 A.M., there are only four trains every hour during that period.
7. My research paper is very ambitious, I plan to title it “The New Deal, Government Programs During the Great Depression.”
8. My mother asked me to put away the clean clothes, which are lying on the bed, write a letter to my uncle, who is on a ship somewhere in the Mediterranean, and, after giving the dog a bath, clean out the garage.
9. At our school, we don’t have to eat in the cafeteria, if we prefer, we can eat outside at the picnic tables or under the trees.
10. We counted all these signs between our house and the highway twenty-five stop signs, fifty street signs, sixteen billboards, three yield signs, two one-way street signs, and I don’t know how many speed-limit signs.


EXERCISE A  Rewrite each of the following sentences, adding capital letters, quotation marks, and other punctuation where needed.

Example 1.  Mom, asked Alice, may I go to the movies with Erica and Mark tonight?

"Mom," asked Alice, "may I go to the movies with Erica and Mark tonight?"

1.  I don’t know answered Doug I’ve never seen anything like that before _____________________

2.  Peering into the aquarium, Doug added wow just look at the colors on its fins _______________

3.  Could you tell us what kind of fish that is Cal asked the store manager we’d also like to know how much it costs ________________________________

4.  You’ll have to buy a pair of fish, boys the manager replied and a pair costs seventy-five dollars _______________________________

5.  Seventy-five dollars exclaimed Doug and Cal together that’s a lot of money for two fish _______________________________

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, draw a caret (^) to show where a hyphen should be inserted and underline any word that should be italicized.

Example 1.  On her desk was a well-worn copy of Wuthering Heights.

6.  Listen to the radio for the most up to date weather forecast.

7.  We will read one of Shakespeare’s plays this year, either The Tempest or A Midsummer Night’s Dream.

8.  I had only an hour and forty five minutes to finish my research about the Titanic.

9.  Priscilla’s father designed the set for the Puccini opera La Bohème.

10.  He described the well known book as his magnum opus, which my great grandmother told me means “masterpiece.”
EXERCISE A  On the lines provided, rewrite each of the following sentences, inserting quotation marks and other punctuation as necessary and correcting the capitalization.

Example 1. What does your brother think of the new high school? Asked Naomi

“What does your brother think of the new high school?” asked Naomi.

1. He likes the lockers and the band, Hai said, but he misses some of his friends. 

2. Do you think he misses me? Naomi asked bluntly.

3. Gee, I don’t know, said Hai. You can always call him and ask him yourself.

4. No, I’ll just ask him when I see him in the hallway one day soon, she responded.

5. Wow, does that mean your family moved closer to the new school, too? asked Hai.

EXERCISE B  On the lines provided, rewrite each of the following sentences, underlining any words that should be italicized, and inserting hyphens, dashes, parentheses, and brackets where necessary.

Example 1. During the fire drill, please pay attention—the elevators will not work.

During the fire drill, please pay attention—the elevators will not work.

6. During President Roosevelt’s third term in office (1941–1945), the U.S. entered World War II.

7. Did you say I’m sorry to interrupt that you were going to the post office?

8. Our town’s weekly newspaper is called the Metropolitan Mirror.

9. None of us have finished the book yet, although our papers are due in mid October.

10. To some people, figures in the paintings of El Greco (his real name was Domenikos Theotokopoulos, 1541–1614) look elongated and distorted.
Apostrophes

**Exercise**  In each of the following sentences, draw a caret (^) to show where any missing apostrophes should be inserted.

**Example 1.** They’re not going to reach into all those hives and remove the bees, honey, are they?

1. That yellow umbrella left in the women’s department is hers.
2. All of that club’s officers gathered in the courtyard for a yearbook picture.
3. Check your alarm clock; if it’s not working, take ours.
4. Coach Smith’s observation was that you have a runner’s natural ability.
5. Don’t follow advice that you wouldn’t give to a good friend.
6. After a good night’s sleep, I’ll feel much better.
7. He doesn’t use any punctuation marks except !’s.
8. The team will meet on the practice field at four o’clock.
9. Nadine and Natasha’s father’s name is Nick.
10. If you’ll wait until those shoes go on sale, you’ll really get your money’s worth.
11. The Martinez’s yard is big enough for Mr. Martinez’s Great Dane, Woof.
12. The sheep’s pen, near the barn, is where you’ll find the lambs.
13. This morning we’ll meet with the *Morning Stars* reporter, Greg Gibson, who covers school events.
14. Who’s willing to volunteer for this club’s car wash on Saturday?
15. Someone’s coat and wallet were left in the auditorium after Thursday’s performance.
16. My oldest brother’s bicycle’s handlebars are too high for me.
17. During the late 1990s, I attended a preschool near my grandmother’s house in Abilene.
18. I can’t tell whether these letters are T’s or J’s, can you?
19. This morning’s assembly in the gym will be short; we’ll begin by introducing the school’s interim principal.
20. She’s been appointed to take Dr. Garcia’s place until a permanent replacement can be found.
All Marks of Punctuation Review

**Exercise** Revise the following letter, inserting necessary end marks, commas, semicolons, colons, apostrophes, hyphens, dashes, parentheses, and quotation marks. Underline any words that should be italicized.

**Example** [1] Raul’s letter of application for the internship was mailed on Friday, April 12.

[1] 211 South Thirty-fifth St
[2] Northumberland KS 52333
[4] Dr Wilma B Porter
Northumberland Public Library
[5] 557 North Main Ave
Northumberland, KS 52335
[6] Dear Dr Porter
[7] When I was at the library last week I saw a flyer advertising library internships for students
[8] The school librarian Mr Dan Simpson encouraged me to apply
[9] I have worked in our schools library for three years now since I began sixth grade [10] In our library I reshelve books straighten shelves and help students locate books [11] Mr Simpson says that I am a dependable responsible and good natured worker
[12] Of course I am also an avid reader some weeks I read as many as ten books and have had a library card for ten years [13] Some of my favorite books are the following The Adventures of Tom Sawyer and any other book by Mark Twain C S Lewiss Chronicles of Narnia especially The Magicians Nephew and anything by Isaac Asimov
[14] During the summer I can work four hours a day from 10 00 A.M. to 2 00 P.M. [15] Will those hours be enough for an internship [16] My house is only a ten minute walk from the library so I will always be on time
[17] I hope you will consider me for an internship I would really like to work at the library.
[18] My application is enclosed and my telephone number is 555-5301 if you need additional information [19] Thank you for your help
[20] Sincerely

Raul Cantutt
Spelling A

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, underline any misspelled word and write the word correctly above the misspelled word. If all the words in a sentence are correct, write C above the sentence.

**Example 1.** The athlete began a long-term training program.

1. The astronaut became furious.
2. If you complete this circuit, you may receive a shock.
3. I found these supplies in an old-fashioned stationary store.
4. My father saw water stains on several of the ceiling tiles downstairs.
5. In a tree in that field, Shelly saw the tiniest bird she had ever seen.
6. Although Manny is a little forgetful sometimes, he is always a good friend.
7. The parade could not proceed until the police had cleared the intersection.
8. The courageous sailors stayed with their damaged ship.
9. When he transferred out of our class, he needed the counselor’s approval.
10. Although we studied hard, that test was truly awful.

**EXERCISE B** On the lines provided, write the plural form of each of the following words.

**Example 1.** success ____________

11. opera ______________
12. waltz ______________
13. knife ______________
14. hero ______________
15. mouse ______________
16. eight-grader __________
17. six ______________
18. dairy ______________
19. matinee ______________
20. kimono ______________
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, two words are underlined. If either word is misspelled, write the correct spelling above it. If both words are spelled correctly, write C at the end of the sentence.

Example 1. Little Hawk made noticeable progress in his efforts to track foxes.

1. Luckily, wash hung outside will continue to dry even in freezing temperatures.
2. Some industrious gymnasts maintain a daily exercise routine of eight hours.
3. Before submitting your short story, ask one of your friends to proofread it carefully.
4. I don’t know whether van Gogh painted daisies, but my neighbor has a print of the artist’s painting of sunflowers.
5. Are there fewer than forty potatoes in a score?
6. If the ground rules are disobeyed, the game will be forbidden.
7. The thieves stole the radios that students were assembling in electronics class.
8. My flute teacher says that a beginner often feels dizzy.
9. Soon we’ll have to build new shelves for all the trophies we’re winning!
10. Lewis and Clark heard the echoes of the horses’ hooves.

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, underline any misspelled word and write the word correctly above it. If all the words in a sentence are correct, write C at the end of the sentence.

Example 1. No, I don’t think he’s conceited.

11. My grandmother enjoys playing dominos with the neighborhood children.
12. The sheriffs from three counties held a news conference when they captured the thieves.
13. Did the people in that region use oxes or horses to pull their wagons?
15. Only twelve students showed up in response to the announcement.
16. When we were in Canada last fall, we saw at least nine moose and countless deer.
17. The Gomezes have a new litter of puppies.
18. On one of their journeys, they explored these valleys.
19. Last winter was so cold that we were able to build igloos in the backyard.
20. The team members were a little embarrassed when they conceded defeat.
**Words Often Confused**

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, underline the correct word in parentheses.

**Example 1.** Thunderstorms moved *(threw, through)* the area ahead of the cold front.

1. An expert grammarian, Ms. Marcos knows the *(principle, principal)* parts of any verb.
2. The new mayor was *(formerly, formally)* a member of the school board.
3. It is common knowledge that the Puritans preferred *(plane, plain)* clothing.
4. Move any of the benches that are not *(stationary, stationery)*.
5. *(Who’s, Whose)* hilarious cartoon is displayed on the bulletin board in the hall?
6. Our usual program will not be *(shone, shown)* tonight due to this special report.
7. Our cat Max prefers the company of *(quite, quiet)* adults to that of rowdy children.
8. New prescription drugs must be tested to verify how they will *(affect, effect)* people.
9. Professor Luchesi offers his expert *(advice, advise)* to first-year music students.
10. Our new *(counselor, councilor)* says next year’s student schedules are ready.

**EXERCISE B** In each of the following sentences, underline any incorrect word and write the correct word above it. If all the words in a sentence are correct, write C at the end of the sentence.

**Example 1.** That story certainly had an effect on me.

11. My parents had all ready gone to bed by the time we arrived.
12. I wish she would learn how to except a complement.
13. Would you like fruit or ice cream for desert?
14. Oh, no, the dogs have gotten lose again!
15. Of course, we could choose our courses together.
16. When the plain past low overhead, the windows rattled.
17. Our house is no smaller then they’re house is.
18. The largest city in a state is not necessarily it’s capitol.
19. Gabriela was all together tired of listening to well-intentioned advise.
20. Please don’t break the car quiet so fast the next time!
**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, underline each misspelled or misused word and write the correct word above it. If all the words in a sentence are correct, write C at the end of the sentence.

**Example 1.** When the floodwaters receded, the city counsel surveyed the damage.

1. One of our neighbors recognized the thieves from a poster she saw in the grocery store.
2. For my birthday, my parents gave me a set of wrenches for my bicycle.
3. He had already set the table with forks, spoons, and knives.
4. I can’t tell the difference between her 2s and her 5s; do we need 2 or 5 tablespoons of flour?
5. The guest of honors at the banquet were introduced by our principal.
6. We could take her advise and alter our plans to include a side trip to Williamsburg.
7. Each of the winners was formally introduced to the audience.
8. If you loose your key, whose going to let you in?
9. Although the weather was all together unpleasant that day, we enjoyed our visit to the science museum.
10. There are at least 7 misspelled words in you’re essay.
11. After a week’s intensive practice, the sopranos will know their part.
12. We spent only about ninty minutes at the amusement park.
13. Many public libraries have unabridged dictionaries.
14. I really don’t know weather gooses like to eat potatos.
15. First the led in my pencil broke, and than my pen ran out of ink.
16. Her eyes shown with releif and gratitude when the jury brought in it’s verdict.
17. Our mileage would improve if you didn’t always have your foot on the break.
18. A police car preceeded the funeral procession.
19. Unfortunatly, the movie was almost over by the time we finally found the theater.
20. During this time of year, the salmon in that stream are protected.
EXERCISE A  Most of the following sentences contain a subject-verb or pronoun-antecedent agreement error. If a sentence contains an agreement error, underline the incorrect pronoun or verb and write the correct word or words above it. If the sentence is correct, write C after it.

Example 1. One of the world’s oceanographers are interested in animal groups.
1. Born in Japan, Dr. Akira Okubo studies sea animals to learn about its movements.
2. Did Mesa Verde or Grand Teton National Park get their name from the French language?
4. Several of these curry spices are found in India and throughout the world.
5. Several cultures, including the Maya, was beginning to cultivate the cacao tree.
6. A blend of cocoa and vanilla were a favorite flavor among the Aztecs.
7. China and Sweden have switched its traffic policy and ordered vehicles to drive on the right.
8. Neither the ordinary viewer nor the art expert has the ability to explain the Mona Lisa.
9. Everyone in our science class has their own opinion about how to save the Amazon Rain Forest.
10. Two horns and square lips identify the white rhino of Africa.

EXERCISE B  On the lines provided, rewrite the following sentences, correcting any errors in the use of modifiers.

Example 1. The grass is much more greener now than it was last summer. The grass in much greener now than it was last summer.

11. To design a house, knowledge about local building codes, construction techniques, and materials is important.

12. We don’t ever have no homework in this class.

13. Having tripped over a rock on the sidewalk, the bag of groceries fell out of the woman’s arms.

14. His argument was the more simply stated of all.

15. After the rain stopped, a rainbow was seen on his way to the store.
Exercise  On the lines provided, rewrite each of the following sentences, using capital letters and punctuation where needed, and correcting any misspelled or misused words. Underline any words that should be italicized.

Example 1. Annie asked Nora, do you want to borrow my copy of To Kill a Mockingbird?

"Annie," asked Nora, "do you want to borrow my copy of To Kill a Mockingbird?"

1. To apply for my passport I had to bring the following: a certified copy of my birth certificate; a filled out application; and two photographs.

2. One of my parents' signatures was also required since I am under 18 years old.

3. You should of seen the line at the passport office.

4. My mother wrote one check to the U.S. state department and a second check to the U.S. postal service; the second check was for a processing fee.

5. Are you planning to travel soon; asked the clerk; your passport won't be ready for 5 or 6 weeks.

6. No I answered; we're not leaving until let me see; I have the ticket right here; May 25.

7. A woman behind us in line recommended a book called Italy: The Real Guide; she said it's available in any bookstore.

8. My father is taking one flight; my mother and I will go on a different plane.

9. Our flight leaves at 7:00 A.M.; I know I won't be able to sleep the night before and we will arrive in Rome at about 8:30 P.M.; the next night.

10. My mother's uncle and aunt in Italy told us that their planning a big celebration because the family will be altogether again.
EXERCISE  In the following newspaper article, most of the punctuation and capitalization has been left out. The reporter has also made errors in usage and spelling. Revise the article, correcting any errors in agreement, the use of modifiers, punctuation, capitalization, and word spelling or usage. Use proof-reading marks such as those on page 878 of *Elements of Language* to make your corrections.

Example  [1] the redmond valley intermediate school student counsel met on tuesday march 14 at 3:30 P.M.  

[1] the student bodys president theo vavilis reveiwed the agenda for the class representives, which included the following items the school wide fundraiser for the library a landscaping project and the problem of noise in the cafeteria  [2] president vavilis announced that the fundraising committee had decided to hold a car wash at mcintoshs service station on the corner of thirty fourth street and oak street  [3] everyone pass by that corner said president vavilis we should get alot of customers”  [4] one of the 6th grade representatives offered to bring a vaccuum cleaner and theo asked for more volunteres  [5] the car wash will be from 8 00 A.M. until noon saturday march 25  [6] anyone who is interested in helping should put their name on the list  

[7] nancy fredrickson an eighth grader than explained the landscaping plans  [8] the area right outside the front door is a mess she exclaimed students leave trash everywhere  [9] its all together disgusting one of the representatives agreed  [10] some of the parents has offered to build benchs for that area nancy continued and we need donations of the following items landscaping soil lumber small shrubs flower seeds and tools  [11] whose available to help after school next week  

[12] the council spent more of the meeting discusing the noise problem in the cafeteria  [13] every student in the school know that the acoustics in the room is bad  [14] noise echos and bounces off the walls  [15] in addition some students do not seem to know the meaning of the word quiet  [16] on the other hand students look forward to seeing his or her friends during lunch period and no one want to sit threw lunch without saying a single word  

[17] the council finaly decided to ask the cafeteria monitors to remove extremly loud or unruly students so that everyone else could enjoy their lunch in piece.  [18] if these measures dont effect the noise levels said theo well have to come up with some more ideas  [19] mr rauh the student councils sponsor said that he would take the councils suggestion to the principle  [20] having reminded the representatives to report back to they’re classes the meeting was adjourned
Chapter 1: The Sentence, pp. 1–20

Sentences and Sentence Fragments A, p. 1

EXERCISE

1. F
2. S
3. F
4. F
5. S
6. S
7. F
8. S
9. F
10. F
11. S
12. S
13. F
14. F
15. F
16. S
17. F
18. S
19. S
20. F

Sentences and Sentence Fragments B, p. 2

EXERCISE

1. S
2. S
3. F
4. S
5. S
6. F
7. F
8. S
9. F
10. S
11. S
12. P
13. P
14. P
15. S

Sentences and Sentence Fragments C, p. 3

EXERCISE

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

1. V—The two energetic boys and their little sister played happily in their backyard.
2. V—The man with the small dog on a leash lives near me.
3. S—The energetic hikers ran through the trails.
4. S—The group of friends played until it was too dark to see.
5. V—The people near the large oak trees unpacked their picnic basket.
6. V—A small group of sparrows or wrens live in this tree.
7. S—The bright red canary flew rapidly from tree to tree.
8. S—A song bird perched on a high branch of a hackberry tree.
9. V—The smallest squirrel in the group ate the sunflower seeds in the birdfeeder.
10. S—The small brown rabbit hid in the hollow of an old log.

Subjects and Predicates, p. 4

EXERCISE A

1. S
2. P
3. P
4. S
5. S
6. P
7. P
8. S
9. P
10. S

EXERCISE B

11. S
12. P
13. P
14. P
15. S

Simple and Complete Subjects, p. 5

EXERCISE A

1. Traditional Inuit dress includes the parka and mukluks.
2. People in snowy climates wear snowshoes for a variety of purposes.
4. The upper part of this comfortable footwear is often adorned with colorful beads.
5. A simple piece of leather with rawhide lacing was the first kind of shoe.

EXERCISE B

6. Most of the ancient Egyptians went bare-foot.
7. Some kinds of sandals can be laced almost to the knee.
8. Have you ever worn a plastic shoe?
9. At one time, some shoes in Japan were attached to stilts as high as six inches.
10. The Romans shaped shoes to fit the left foot and the right foot.
11. In ancient Rome, shoe style depended on social class.
12. During the 1300s in England, shoes with pointed toes eighteen inches long were popular.

13. The people of some mountainous areas wear shoes with an upturned toe and a high heel.


15. The first shoe factory appeared in Massachusetts in 1760.

**Simple and Complete Predicates, p. 6**

**Exercise**

1. The guitarist **put** new strings on her guitar.
2. The new strings **sounded** much better.
3. She **tuned** her guitar several times.
4. The guitarist **played** the first string with the help of a pitch pipe.
5. She then **tuned** all the strings to the first string.
6. Well-tuned strings are important to the musician.
7. The guitarist **has** a good ear for pitch.
8. She **tried** several chords on her guitar.
9. Then she **made** adjustments to the tuning.
10. The new strings **stretched** a bit.
11. Some strings are lighter than others.
12. Do many guitarists **prefer** the lightest strings?
13. Sometimes the guitarist **uses** a thumb pick.
14. She **plays** the low notes with the thumb pick.
15. The guitarist **often** sings her own lyrics with the chords.
16. She **uses** a capo for some songs.
17. Capos **change** the pitch of the strings.
18. Capos **fit** around the neck of the guitar.
19. With a capo, the musician **plays** in a different key.
20. **Have you ever played** a guitar?

**Verb Phrases, p. 7**

**Exercise**

1. Jillian’s swim team is **practicing** for a meet.
2. Her team will be **competing** next month.
3. Jillian will be **swimming** freestyle.
4. The coach has been **teaching** new drills.
5. Some of the swimmers are **training** for the backstroke competition.
6. Jillian has **competed** in two other meets.
7. She was **practicing** each morning before school.
8. Now she will be **practicing** twice a day.
9. The team members are **feeling** more confident.
10. The coach has helped everyone on the team.
11. Years ago, Jillian **could not** swim a whole lap.
12. Now she can **swim** long distances.
13. Her little sister Rebecca has **joined** the team.
14. Rebecca is **improving** quickly.
15. She can **do** the butterfly stroke already.
16. Next year, Rebecca will **compete** in Jillian’s age group.
17. Jillian and Rebecca have never **raced** one another at a meet.
18. They **do** race for fun quite often.
19. Swimming is **recognized** as a very healthful form of exercise.
20. Rebecca and Jillian are **enjoying** the sport.
Complete and Simple Subjects and Predicates A, p. 8

EXERCISE A
1. Many types of amphibians can be found in the United States.
2. Several kinds of salamanders inhabit forest areas.
3. The largest salamander on land is the Pacific giant salamander.
4. The Pacific giant salamander can grow to nearly one foot in length.
5. A small mouse might be a meal to this salamander.
6. The main predator in a small stream might be this large salamander.
7. A smaller salamander is the Olympic salamander.
8. Logs provide shady spots for the Olympic salamander.
9. To these salamanders, moisture from the forest floor is extremely important.
10. These smaller salamanders live on land but need to be near moisture.

EXERCISE B
11. Many mammals, amphibians, and reptiles live in ancient forests.
12. Animals can make nests in dead trees.
13. Logs in streams and along the forest floor become part of an ancient forest.
14. These logs are beneficial for the soil and for animals.
15. All of the elements of an ancient forest work together.

Complete and Simple Subjects and Predicates B, p. 9

EXERCISE A
1. Use of the Internet is very common.
2. The World Wide Web is an excellent research tool.
3. Different search engines are available to users.
4. The purpose of a search engine is to help users find information.
5. The person looking for information types key words into a search engine.
6. The search engine looks for Web sites containing the key words.
7. The results of the search then appear in a list.
8. The user clicks on any Web site.
9. Very specific key words are sometimes necessary.
10. A search engine can be easy to use and fast.

EXERCISE B
11. A wealth of information is available on the Internet.
12. People can find ZIP Codes on the Internet.
13. Telephone directories are available on the Internet.
15. Can drivers find maps to their destinations?

Compound Subjects, p. 10

EXERCISE A
1. Kelly and I found two kittens.
2. My sister and Kelly named them Pepper and Salty.
3. The cats and our dog get along well.
4. My **classmates** and **neighbors** often come to visit.

5. Jacqui or Danielle will bring a leash for our dog.

6. Will the other **dogs** and my **dog** play together?

7. My sister or I will feed all the dogs.

8. Pepper and Salty sometimes wake up the dogs in the morning.

9. My aunts and uncles all have pets.

10. Parakeets, poodles, and goldfish are my grandmother’s favorite pets.

**Exercise B**

11. The **brothers** and their **father** went to the lake.

12. Ducks, geese, and other **birds** gathered around the lake.

13. Several picnic **tables** and **benches** were lined up on one side of the lake.

14. Are the sandwiches and **drinks** in the ice chest?

15. The **brothers**, their **father**, and several other **tourists** played a game of kickball.

16. Did Glenn or his **father** bring the kickball to the lake?

17. Glenn’s brother and a duck got into a tug of war over a slice of bread.

18. Were the sandwiches, **drinks**, and fresh **fruit** enough to feed everyone?

19. Glenn’s brother and **father** cleared the table after the meal.

20. Glenn, his **brother**, and his **father** had a splendid time at the lake.

**Compound Verbs, p. 11**

**Exercise A**

1. Megan will **learn** viola, **study** music theory, and take **piano lessons**.

2. Her school music teacher gives her lessons and shows her new tunes.

3. Megan **reads** music but **doesn’t** **sight-read** fast.

4. The study of rhythm **requires** patience and **takes** time.

5. A music staff has **five lines** and can look **complex** at first.

6. Notes may sit on the lines or **occupy** the spaces between the lines.

7. The notes correspond to the first seven **letters** of the alphabet and stand for certain tones.

8. Megan reads the note and **bows** the appropriate string.

9. Megan **practices** viola often and **is improving** day by day.

10. Should Megan **practice** for another hour or start her homework now?

**Exercise B**

11. The cattle slipped and **slid** in the muddy creek bed.

12. Will Mara come to the party or stay **home**?

13. Close the hood, **wipe** the oil off your hands, and start the engine again.

14. Carlie shot the final picture on the roll and rewound the film.

15. Did the outfielder **drop** the ball or make the catch?
Compound Subjects and Verbs, p. 12

EXERCISE A
1. CS—According to scientists, too much fat and cholesterol in the diet are harmful.
2. CS—Cheeseburgers and milkshakes contain large amounts of both.
3. CV—Therefore, you should not eat or drink such fatty snacks too often.
4. CS—Did you and your sister have apples or carrot sticks as a snack today?
5. CV—In the future, stop and think about the health effects of your meals.

EXERCISE B
Answers may vary. Sample responses are given.

6. Maples and birches grow well in this area.
7. Sabrina runs and swims every other day.
8. The emu and the kiwi are flightless birds.
9. Kwanita designed and then built a new kind of kite.
10. When were Sandra Day O’Connor and Ruth Bader Ginsburg confirmed to the U.S. Supreme Court?

Subjects and Verbs A, p. 13

EXERCISE A
1. Rogelio and Martin are brothers and best friends.
2. Every morning before school, the two brothers practice tennis.
3. Rogelio and his coach will play tennis this afternoon.
4. After lunch, Martin will go to his science class in the portable building outside.
5. The teacher and some visitors were talking in the loud, busy hallway.
6. At seven this evening, Katya and her best friend will study geometry together.
7. Algebra and geometry can be fun.

Subjects and Verbs B, p. 14

EXERCISE
1. Venus and Mars are Earth’s nearest planetary neighbors.
2. Gilbert will create a short film or write a one-act play.
3. Her three-year-old brother does a silly dance and gives us all a good laugh.
4. Jamal and Tina carried the boxes of books up three flights of stairs.
5. The best movie of the summer created suspense and frightened the audience.
6. Especially during this close game, the team members and the coach must work together.
7. Last weekend, Aunt Sally went to the neighborhood pool and read for hours.
8. When will we see our relatives and exchange the gifts?
9. Both Hannah and Chuck worked hard on the science project.

10. In her spare time, Elena studies art books, finds interesting ideas, and creates new projects.


12. Every evening before dark, the athlete and her coach jog three miles together.

13. Among those with perfect attendance for the year were Joey, Dannika, and Steig.

14. On the hike up the mountain, I stumbled over a log and bruised my knee.

15. Either the baseball team or the softball team should win the state championship this year.

16. To our surprise, neither Mom nor Grandpa particularly liked the salsa.

17. The amateur photographer takes pictures regularly but never develops her own photographs.

18. My neighbor writes short films but usually doesn’t produce them.

19. Will lettuce and tomatoes be crops in our backyard garden this year?

20. During a funny scene, that actor skipped a line and confused the star of the show.

Classifying Sentences by Purpose A, p. 15

Exercise A
1. DEC
2. IMP
3. DEC
4. INT
5. EXC

Exercise B
Answers may vary. Sample responses are given.
6. Did George Catlin paint portraits of many of the Plains Indians?
7. You have seen Catlin’s picture of the Seminole chief Osceola.
8. How handsome and grand Osceola looks in that picture!
9. Did Catlin create more than five hundred pictures showing American Indian life?
10. For more information about Catlin, read this book.

Classifying Sentences by Purpose B, p. 16

Exercise A
1. DEC
2. INT
3. EXC
4. IMP
5. DEC

Exercise B
6. INT; . . . before?
7. DEC; . . . melody.
8. INT; . . . violins?
9. DEC; . . . instrument.
10. EXC; . . . discovered!

Review A: Sentences and Sentence Fragments, p. 17

Exercise
1. F 8. S 15. F
3. F 10. S 17. S
7. S 14. S

Review B: Subjects and Predicates, p. 18

Exercise
1. The party for Victor is tomorrow.
2. The soundtrack of that movie features a song by Celine Dion.
3. Every club in our school is building a float for the parade.
4. The huge mirror in the hall is a valuable antique.
5. Our entire family attended the commencement exercises.
6. In front of the garage lay three bicycles.
7. My younger brother sat in the back seat with the dogs.
8. Is this vacation plan the least expensive?
9. Our neighbor helped us with the clothesline.
10. Will the members of the committee be making the decisions?
11. Our team finally won its first game.
12. With the help of her teammates, the young woman limped off the soccer field.
13. Would any of you listen to this music by Igor Stravinsky?
14. The science teacher gave us an interesting assignment.
15. What a celebration our class had!
16. Does Mr. Wong give you cello lessons?
17. My English teacher gave me a copy of the book Little Women.
18. At the Japanese restaurant, both of us ordered tempura.
19. Neither of these answers is correct.
20. On opening night of the World Series, the ten-year-old girl beamed with excitement.

**Review C: Compound Subjects and Compound Verbs, p. 19**

**EXERCISE A**
1. Wood and paint are useful materials for home repair.
2. Aren’t hammers and nails usually necessary for repair?
3. Plumbers or electricians might help with more serious problems.
4. Saws, chisels, and planes are important tools for woodworking.
5. A chisel or gouge helps a carpenter work with wood.
6. Sanders and planes are tools for leveling wood surfaces.
7. Windows and doors require special care.
8. For many projects, measuring tapes or rulers are useful.
9. The height, width, and depth of the windows are important measurements.
10. The weight and thickness of the doors determine the type of hinges necessary.

**EXERCISE B**
11. Frank examined the house and noticed several problems.
12. To Frank’s dismay, parts of the roof leaked or were damaged.
13. Frank removed the old shingles near the chimney and added new ones.
14. Edwina cleaned the leaves out of the gutters and then repaired the one rusty gutter.
15. Did that same windowpane slip and crack again?
16. Edwina cut some glass, shaped its edges, and then replaced the old pane.
17. Next she bought some fabric and made new curtains.
18. The door in the front hallway squeaked and dragged on the floor.
19. After dinner, Frank cleaned and oiled the hinges.
20. Frank removed the door but hasn’t sanded the bottom of it yet.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice Answer Key
Review D: Classifying Sentences by Purpose, p. 20

EXERCISE

1. INT  8. DEC  15. DEC
2. IMP  9. INT  16. INT
3. DEC 10. IMP  17. DEC
4. INT 11. DEC  18. IMP
5. EXC 12. INT  19. INT
6. DEC 13. IMP  20. DEC
7. EXC 14. EXC
Chapter 2: Parts of Speech
Overview, pp. 21–37

Nouns, p. 21

EXERCISE A

1. (4) Thomas Hooker immigrated to the Massachusetts Bay Colony in 1633 to find religious freedom.

2. (3) Disagreements with the religious leaders of the colony soon developed.

3. (5) Hooker and several followers carved out a new, independent settlement nearby, which eventually became Hartford, Connecticut.

4. (5) He supported the right of the people—not just the members of the church—to vote for their judges.

5. (3) He explained his beliefs in a book published in 1648.

EXERCISE B

6. On the first day, Mr. Armstrong went around and demonstrated how to use the various cameras.

7. Each camera had at least one mysterious button that had to be explained.

8. After this first lesson, the class learned about composition.

9. Mr. Armstrong displayed his best photos, and Dawn was impressed and inspired.

10. The next class was a field trip to the San Diego Zoo.

11. Joey got a great shot of a howler monkey showing its teeth.

12. Dawn, who adores koala bears, was determined to get a picture to put on her wall.

13. Waiting patiently, Dawn finally caught a koala bear that was looking in her direction.

14. Joey wanted to see the photos right away, so his dad dropped off the film at the drugstore.

15. Dawn bought a shiny silver frame for the koala picture that now hangs over her desk.

Compound Nouns, p. 22

Encourage students to consult a current dictionary. Answers may vary slightly depending on the dictionary used.

EXERCISE

1. They were born in New York City and began working as children.

2. Originally, five of the brothers were in show business.

3. Their given names were Leonard, Adolph, Julius, Milton, and Herbert.

4. Thousands of theatergoers, however, knew them as Chico, Harpo, Groucho, Gummo, and Zeppo.

5. Their first successful play on Broadway was I'll Say She Is in 1924.

6. One of their films was a version of their stage play The Cocoanuts, which was written by George S. Kaufman.

7. This film was followed by Animal Crackers, Monkey Business, and Duck Soup.

8. Every film was a whirlwind of hilarity, with nonstop jokes and physical comedy.

9. The three best-known Marx Brothers were Groucho, Chico, and Harpo.

10. Groucho was known for his eyebrows, his moustache, and his constant wisecracks.

11. He often played characters with funny names, such as Rufus T. Firefly in Duck Soup.
12. Chico Marx spoke with an accent, mispronounced words, and excelled as a pianist.
13. Harpo never spoke, so he specialized in sight gags and slapstick.
14. His harp playing was a highlight of every film.
15. The actress Margaret Dumont was often the target of Groucho's jokes.
16. One of the brothers' later films was *A Night in Casablanca*.
17. Warner Brothers, a rival studio, threatened to sue the Marx Brothers because of the film.
18. They felt its name was too similar to another film starring Humphrey Bogart and Ingrid Bergman.
19. Groucho Marx sent the studio a humorous letter.
20. “I'll sue you,” wrote Groucho Marx, “for using the word 'Brothers.'”

**Common and Proper Nouns, p. 23**

**Exercise**

1. The fish in the tank are a variety of colors.
2. Mr. Townsend has the *Detroit Free Press* delivered daily to his house.
3. Of all the people in my class, Amy is probably the funniest person.
4. The calendar over my desk has a picture of a lighthouse in Maine.
5. The first day that the doctor is available is Thursday.
6. The two ships just docked at the port.
7. My brother showed me an article about archaeology in *The New Yorker*.
8. Two of the most memorable characters in the novel *Moby-Dick* by Herman Melville are Ahab, a one-legged whaling captain, and the whale itself.
9. The facial expressions of the actor caused a great deal of laughter.
10. A picture of the actor Denzel Washington was pinned to the bulletin board by thumbtacks.
11. Can Uncle Tim take us to the beach?
12. Guadalupe Street runs along the west side of the University of Texas in Austin.
13. My father and my uncle grew up near the Muskegon River in Big Rapids, Michigan.
14. My grandfather taught for many years at Ferris State University.
15. There are several types of hammers, including the claw hammer, the ball-peen hammer, and the sledgehammer.
16. Please take this copy of the book back to the library.
17. In the backyard of our house, I can still find old arrowheads occasionally.
18. The photography in that film is superb.
19. Will Professor Ondaatje be lecturing later?
20. The Reverend Jane Wilcox will be coming to dinner soon.

**Concrete, Abstract, and Collective Nouns, p. 24**

**Exercise A**

1. Christa read a book about increasing her self-confidence.
2. Please bring me a box of pencils from the closet.
3. Time moves slowly for people caught in a traffic jam.
4. An editorial is an essay, usually in a newspaper, in which the writer expresses his or her opinion.

5. Tito, do you believe his story is the truth?

6. Professor Said is writing a book about art history.

7. Jennifer learned to overcome her fear of dogs.

8. Dr. Melfi is a specialist in the treatment of certain illnesses.

9. My brother, the playwright, is working on a new play.

10. He likes to talk about what he calls the principles of comedy.

EXERCISE B

11. My sister Sandra received a set of drums and a collection of stamps for her tenth birthday.

12. The fleet left the harbor under full steam, followed by a flock of seagulls.

13. The faculty voted to change the requirements for graduation.

14. As the magazine photographer came over the ridge, he saw a herd of water buffalo that stretched to the horizon.

15. The audience applauded so fervently that the band and the chorus returned to the stage for an encore.

Kinds of Nouns, p. 25

EXERCISE A

1. PRO, CON

2. COM, ABS

3. PRO, CON

4. COM, ABS

5. COM, CON

6. PRO, CON

7. COM, ABS

8. COM, CON

9. PRO, CON

10. COM, ABS

11. COMP

12. COLL

13. COMP

14. COMP

15. COLL

16. COMP

17. COMP

18. COMP

19. COLL

20. COLL, COMP

Pronouns and Antecedents, p. 26

EXERCISE Possessive pronouns in items 2, 7, 9, 11, 12, 15, and 19 may be considered adjectives.

1. The gazelles came down to the stream, but they did not drink.

2. Dean and Jim decided to pool their resources and buy a video camera.

3. Debra set up an easel and a palette, and then she began to paint.

4. Don’t play the piano; it needs tuning.

5. Are you going to the library?

6. After seeing three more movies, Paula decided that she liked Harrison Ford after all.

7. The crowd lifted their voices in song as the team took the field.

8. Somebody answer the phone, please.


10. George told Mary that he would love to see the film.

11. On his trip to India, Steve Decker was attacked by a cow.

12. Sandrine signed her name inside the book’s front cover.

13. No one knew who brought the banana bread to the potluck dinner.

14. Carla called out, “The red bass guitar is mine!”
15. The day Dave didn’t use his sunblock, he got badly sunburned.

16. “See that painting on the far wall? Jane knows the woman who painted it.”

17. As the cattle came through the gate, some headed for the barn, but most stayed in the yard.

18. If that is the pen Randy wants, why doesn’t Brad buy it?

19. Steve invited us to his house to watch his favorite show on television.

20. These are the flowers I was talking about; aren’t they beautiful?

**Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns, p. 27**

**Exercise** Possessive pronouns in items 1, 5, and 9 may be considered adjectives.

1. Hari bought the bicycle **himself**, with his own money.

2. As soon as the students decided to write and perform a play, **they** created an outline of the story.

3. After waiting an hour for Jesse to stop talking on the phone, the kids filled the wading pool themselves.

4. Did you leave the cup on the counter?

5. When Mr. and Mrs. Britt sold their house, it was only on the market for a week.

6. I bought the sandwich for you, Al, and the salad for **myself**.

7. “We should not be too hard on ourselves,” the coach told the team. “We worked hard and did the best we could.”

8. Gwen, you need to ask yourself some tough questions about the future.

9. The Wahrmans painted **their** new house themselves.

10. Dr. Connolly, **himself** cooked the main course for us.

**Demonstrative and Relative Pronouns, p. 28**

**Exercise**

1. Last night we watched *The Searchers*, which is my father’s favorite movie.

2. That is the book assigned for class for next week.

3. This is not the sweater that I want to wear.

4. Ms. Garson offered a ride to Dr. Conrad, whose car was being repaired.

5. Dinesh, who is in the chess club, showed me how the pieces on a chessboard move.

6. The sonata, which is usually played on the harpsichord, can also be played on the piano.

7. This is the roll-top desk that my mother refinished.

8. Please tell me the names of those who are willing to work on Saturday.

9. Mr. Cotten, whose book we are reading in English class, is coming to speak to us.

10. That is the ugliest painting that I have ever seen, but this is quite lovely.

11. The apple on the plate was picked yesterday, but those that are on the counter were picked two days ago.

12. My older sister, whose dog is named Padgett, is very fond of all animals.

13. Why don’t we ask Mimi, to whom the package was addressed?

14. This is the best time to speak to Professor Kinbote, who might know the answer to the question.
15. If you follow the directions that Alice gave you, you will find the house with no problem.

16. This is the best-looking pecan pie in the competition, but that tastes better.

17. Are these the kittens that you found under the bridge?

18. These seem to be the shoes that I left in the locker room yesterday.

19. The book, which has two authors, should be filed under the first author’s name.

20. The artist who did the mural in the library probably did this as well.

Indefinite Pronouns and Interrogative Pronouns, p. 29

EXERCISE A

1. Which is the restaurant you would like to try?
2. I found a red jacket! Whose is it?
3. Most of the job was finished by the time Allan arrived.
4. Several of the buildings were damaged by the tornado.
5. Which of the films at the festival did you see?
6. To whom did the broken coffee cup belong?
7. Neither of the dogs was willing to try two types of dog food.
8. What did they think of the last movement of the symphony?
9. Nobody answered the phone when I called.
10. Each car comes with everything a driver could need.

EXERCISE B

Answers may vary slightly. Sample responses are given.

11. someone
12. everyone
13. Both
14. some
15. much
16. Few
17. nobody
18. Most; many
19. anyone
20. All

Kinds of Pronouns, p. 30

EXERCISE

1. Alejandro does not like snow-skiing, but he loves water-skiing.
2. Is that Buckingham Palace?
3. Everyone here has read the book.
4. Who discovered DNA?
5. "We are not amused," said the queen to the ambassador.
6. The new student, who is from Iran, is named Darob.
7. Mr. Kilkerney retired in April, and the school gave him a going-away party.
8. Are these the oldest rocks on earth?
9. Whom did the filmmakers cast in the role of King Arthur?
10. The film, which contains extraordinary special effects, will become a blockbuster.
11. The governor herself spoke to the graduating class.
12. Is something burning?
13. The band members worked hard to buy themselves new uniforms.
14. Did Paul write the short story himself?
15. The teacher assigned each of the students a poem to read aloud in class.
16. Which of the planets is farthest from the sun?
17. Mr. Wu and she left nearly an hour ago.
18. Are the gloves on the desk yours?
19. The only U.S. president who served more than two terms is Franklin D. Roosevelt.
20. Dad went to the mall by himself to shop for holiday gifts.

Adjectives and Articles, p. 31

Exercise A

1. Jenny Lind starred in several operas and gained great renown in European cities.
2. At the absolute height of a brilliant career, she stopped performing in operas.
3. In 1849, the talented diva gave up an operatic career and began planning a concert tour.
4. From 1850 to 1851, Lind gave ninety-three concerts for the American public.
5. This extraordinary performer delighted audiences for fifty-three years.

Exercise B

If you classify possessive pronouns as adjectives, then their in 9, Her in 11, and her in 12 are also correct.

6. These bold explorers were Meriwether Lewis and William Clark.
7. They were to explore the uncharted lands to the west of the Mississippi River.
8. The long and arduous expedition began in St. Louis, Missouri, in 1804.
9. They made their winter camp in what is now North Dakota.
10. During that winter a Shoshone woman, Sacagawea, joined the expedition.
11. Her name translates into the English language as “Bird Woman.”

Demonstrative Adjectives, p. 32

Exercise

1. These stories are the best I’ve ever read.
2. Do you want this CD or that one?
3. That was the song Rashid has been humming all afternoon.
4. Those cats have been resting on the windowsill for two hours.
5. These are the funniest jokes I’ve ever heard!
6. This is the moment all those fans of the singer have been anticipating.
7. Joseph will be recycling those tomorrow, so he put them in the garage.
8. These parts will need to be cleaned before we can use them.
9. Wasn’t that the worst movie you’ve ever seen?
10. Those grapes were tastier than these are.
11. I’ll purchase this, and you can keep that one.
12. That is not what I meant to say.
13. Those comments of yours were right on target.
14. If you’ll put away those toys, I’ll take care of these.
15. Is that all you have to say?
16. That Norman Rockwell painting has always been Tera’s favorite.

17. After reading descriptions of both books, Malcolm has decided to buy this.

18. Would you mind explaining how to solve this equation?

19. I have been needing a new pair of glasses, so I am happy to have these.

20. This photograph of Yvonne’s fifth birthday party makes me laugh.

Proper Adjectives, p. 33

EXERCISE

1. I have a CD of the singer Frank Sinatra performing Cole Porter songs.

2. The French novelist Jules Verne predicted such inventions as the submarine and the television.

3. A Norwegian expedition reached the South Pole a month before a British expedition arrived.

4. Akira Kurosawa, the Japanese filmmaker, directed many entertaining films.

5. Today, the prime minister issued a statement about the Northern Ireland peace talks.

6. I really enjoy the Spanish dish paella; my sister prefers the North African dish couscous.

7. I enjoy Georgia peaches almost as much as I like Michigan cherries.

8. Giuseppe Verdi, the composer of Rigoletto, was one of the leading figures of Italian opera.

9. Did you know that Mordecai Richler, who is a novelist, is Canadian?

10. The most famous British rock-and-roll songwriters may be John Lennon and Paul McCartney.

11. Candy skulls are a tradition during the Mexican holiday called the Day of the Dead.

12. My father, who likes spicy food, enjoys eating Indian curry and Thai green curry.


14. Grandmother Adams was born during the Roosevelt administration.

15. The Inca ruins at Machu Picchu are located high in the Peruvian Andes.

16. Cassie will study Italian architecture at the University of Washington next semester.

17. Nicola’s favorite restaurant in New Orleans often has Cajun music.

18. Uncle Shawn is bringing his specialty, chicken Caesar salad, to the picnic.

19. Joel’s mother told us that the college years pass by in a New York minute.

20. What is Reverend Bowman’s opinion of this Biblical passage?

Noun, Pronoun, or Adjective? p. 34

EXERCISE

1. Some people like their salsa hot.

2. Some prefer salsa that is mild.

3. The rookie hit the baseball over the outfield fence.

4. Did you see the baseball game on television last night?

5. Which way did the dog go?

6. Which of the cats is the oldest?
7. In astronomy class we learned which stars are likely to become supernovas.
8. Antonio plans to study astronomy in college.
10. The morning after the storm, the lighthouse keeper slept in late.
11. That telephone is not working properly.
12. Is that a real duck or a decoy?
13. We heard the tornado warning on the radio.
14. Audra got a job as an intern at the local radio station.
15. Do you have any apples this morning?
16. Ted claimed he had not received any of my messages.
17. Are you happy with your Internet provider?
18. Let's see if we can find the information we need on the Internet.
19. Nicci saw a very enjoyable movie at the film festival.
20. The action film was three weeks behind its schedule.

Review A: Nouns, p. 35

Exercise A
1. COM, ABS
2. COM, ABS
3. PRO, CON

Exercise B
6. Vermont is known as the Green Mountain State.
7. The tour group enjoyed visiting the Alamo in San Antonio, Texas.
8. Did you know that Abraham Lincoln was primarily self-educated?
9. The United States Senate contains two members from each state.
10. South Carolina produces many fruits and vegetables.

Exercise C
11. Australia is an island continent.
12. In 1770, Captain James Cook sailed to the island.
13. Cook claimed it for the British.
14. British convicts were sent there from the beginning of colonization.
15. Much of the continent’s animal life is unique.
16. One animal unique to Australia is the duck-billed platypus.
17. What is the capital city of Australia?
18. The capital of Australia is Canberra.
19. Do most of the people in Australia speak the English language?
20. Yes, English is the primary language spoken in Australia.

Review B: Pronouns, p. 36

Exercise A
1. I have seen this movie three times.
2. Many of my friends helped me search for my missing kitten.
3. Many years passed before his grandparents visited their homeland.
4. Which book do you want to read next?
5. Which of the computer games do you want to play first?

Exercise B
6. Carleen bought four tickets to the concert but then misplaced them.
7. Which of the English kings signed the Magna Carta?
8. Mother thanked Barbara and Tim for their thoughtful note.
9. Can anyone here play the piano?
10. Mark Twain, who was a great writer, once worked on a riverboat.

**EXERCISE C**

11. Why did she miss the soccer banquet?
12. The record album was signed by the singer himself.
13. That is a beautiful cathedral!
14. For Hank’s birthday, which is next Tuesday, Odessa will bake a cake.
15. Someone on the faculty wrote the school song.
16. Ms. Wang reminded herself to order tickets as soon as possible.
17. Most of Shika’s neighbors were extremely friendly.
18. Whom did Selena invite to the dance?
19. Sean washed and dried the dishes and stacked them in the cabinet.
20. The sailors spotted a squid that was thirty feet long.

**Review C: Nouns and Adjectives, p. 37**

**EXERCISE A**

1. The bright banner hung from the underside of the wooden bridge.
2. Our old cat, once energetic, now sleeps all day.
3. The red light on the video camera means that the camera is recording.
4. Dora prefers Chinese soup that is extremely spicy.
5. The quick brown fox jumped over the lazy dog.
6. That book with the blue cover was written by a good friend of ours.
7. Each member of the marching band brought something to sell at the bake sale.
8. Eight boxes of adhesive tape arrived at the central office.
9. The ambitious swimmer hoped to win a gold medal for an Olympic event.
10. The little car is often overshadowed by giant trucks on the highway.

**EXERCISE B**

11. Would you like to go to the movies Wednesday night?
12. Wednesday is the least crowded night at the theater.
13. Thelonious Monk performed playfully on the piano.
14. Ask the piano player if he knows “As Time Goes By.”
15. Please tell the actor that we enjoyed his comedy performance.
16. My brother is writing a comedy for his playwriting class.
17. The chalk broke in two as the teacher wrote on the chalkboard.
18. The children drew a chalk circle on the driveway.
19. The space exhibit was the fair’s most popular attraction.
20. The satellite was lost in space and never heard from again.
Chapter 3: Parts of Speech Overview 
(Verb, Adverb, Preposition, 
Conjunction, Interjection), pp. 38–57

The Verb, p. 38

Exercise A

1. A lady threw bread to the ducks.
2. Several birds flew by.
3. The sky was bright blue.
4. We saw a beautiful sea gull.
5. One of the ducks made a strange noise.
6. She called her ducklings to her.
7. We took a photograph of the ducks and birds.
8. My sister identified the duck.
9. This one is a Muscovy.
10. We learned the names of all the ducks.

Exercise B

11. My father traveled to Easter Island last year.
12. She sliced an onion for the stew.
13. Bring your beach towel with you on the picnic.
14. Is that a sandhill crane?
15. Lyle and Tector walked across the village.
16. Michele is a very good singer.
17. The fox watched the chickens from the other side of the fence.
18. Michael spread the blanket over the bed.
19. These horses are the prettiest in the herd.
20. Orange juice dripped all over the floor.

Helping Verbs and Main Verbs, p. 39

Exercise

1. When did the Galarza family move to Sacramento, California?
2. Other Mexican families had also immigrated to the United States.
3. Many of them had come to the United States for economic reasons.
4. In what year did Galarza publish his first book?
5. Many people have been enjoying his works for years.
6. Many are reading his works in the original Spanish.
7. Galarza has written about the struggles of farmworkers.
8. You have probably read some of his poetry.
9. Did you read the poetry in Spanish or in English?
10. You may like his poem about Mother Nature.
11. It is translated as “Copy from an Old Master.”
12. Most young readers do enjoy his poem about the traffic light.
13. Will we be reading any of his poems in class this year?
15. This collection was published in 1971.
16. You will learn valuable lessons from these poems.
17. Galarza has been called the Father Goose of Mexican children.
18. Which poem should we read first?
19. Galarza’s autobiographical work is titled Barrio Boy.
20. Does your literature book contain excerpts from Barrio Boy?

Action Verbs, p. 40

EXERCISE A
1. Dmitri liked the cougar exhibit at the wildlife preserve.
2. A rescue team found two orphaned cougars in the mountains.
3. The team treated the cougars for injuries.
4. They brought the young cougars to the wildlife preserve.
5. The wildlife preserve staff members raised the cougars to adulthood.
6. They named the cougars Wolfgang and Julianna.
7. Next year the wildlife preserve will provide mates for the brother and sister pair.
8. The cougars enjoy healthy lives with good care.
9. Dmitri took a few photographs of the magnificent cats.
10. Months later, Dmitri often remembered the cougar pair.

EXERCISE B
Answers may vary. Sample responses are given.
11. recognized
12. won
13. knows
14. took
15. traveled

Linking Verbs, p. 41

EXERCISE A
1. Beryl Markham was a famous pilot.
2. She stayed alert on many difficult and long flights.
3. Her accomplishments seem remarkable to many people.
4. Markham became the first woman to fly nonstop from England to America.
5. The task was difficult because of strong opposing winds.
6. A new club in 1929 was the Ninety-Nines.
7. Ninety-nine was the number of its original members.
8. Members were female pilots only.
9. The club remains active today.
10. Female pilots are more common now than many years ago.

EXERCISE B

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, p. 42

EXERCISE
1. My watch stopped at 8:22.
2. Marguerite called the meeting to order.
3. The trainer slowly walked toward the tiger.
4. The trainer slowly approached the tiger.
5. Bradley and Chloe successfully flew the box kite.
6. During winter break we traveled to Orlando, Florida.
7. By the time we arrived, the concert had already begun.
8. By the time we arrived, the band had already begun the concert.
9. After a few minutes, the teakettle whistled.
10. Yolanda whistled a tune from the early 1990s.
11. The family gave its fair share to the charity.
12. The family gave generously to the charity.
13. For a long while the tree did not grow.
14. Did Marvin grow a mustache?
15. Some of the guests left early.
16. Some of the guests left the party early.
17. The nation’s economy has improved in recent years.
18. What has improved the nation’s economy?
19. Franklin Roosevelt served as President of the United States for more than twelve years.
20. President Franklin Roosevelt served more terms than any other President.

Identifying Kinds of Verbs/Verb Phrases A, p. 43

EXERCISE A
1. TR—The couple had visited the German cafe several times.
2. TR—Katerina had heard a few bands there.
3. IN—Tonight a new band will perform.
4. IN—Boris will be listening carefully.
5. IN—Boris might sing with the band.
6. TR—The band will be playing popular German songs.
7. TR—All last week, Boris had been practicing the songs.
8. TR—Boris will be learning new German music.
9. TR—He has been studying the German language for two years.
10. TR—Katerina will play accordion with the band.

EXERCISE B
11. LV—The soup tasted salty.
12. AV—The chef tasted the soup.
13. AV—Martin grew roses in his garden.
14. LV—She became a police officer.
15. LV—The daisy smelled sweet.

Identifying Kinds of Verbs/Verb Phrases B, p. 44

EXERCISE
1. AV, TR—I will dance a reel.
2. LV, IN—Our costumes look beautiful.
3. LV, IN—How will they look?
4. AV, TR—We have sewn them ourselves.
5. LV, IN—Mine is purple and black.
6. AV, TR—Hillary will wear blue.
7. AV, IN—Both of us will be leaping.
8. AV, IN—Have you thought about performing?
9. AV, TR—You gave a good show last year.
10. AV, TR—Have you learned improvisational dance?
11. AV, TR—Improvisation requires creativity.
12. LV, IN—The dancer remains very aware.
13. AV, IN—Each movement flows into the next.
14. LV, IN—Duets are especially difficult.
15. AV, TR—Partners turn somersaults together.
16. LV, IN—This has turned too difficult for me.
17. **AV, IN**—Actually, everyone can dance.
18. **LV, IN**—Many have grown more self-confident.
19. **AV, TR**—Dance class has made me more agile.
20. **AV, IN**—Will you come to the class next week?

**The Adverb, p. 45**

**EXERCISE**

1. Each skater practiced nearby.
2. The fans waited impatiently.
3. The skaters moved quite gracefully.
4. One skater seemed very nervous.
5. She stopped practicing rather early.
6. She sat silently and waited.
7. Her coach came quickly to see her.
8. He calmly encouraged her.
9. She began to skate quite skillfully.
10. Another skater moved somewhat reluctantly.
11. He timidly approached his coach.
12. His coach whispered softly to him.
13. The skater nodded enthusiastically.
14. He began to feel surprisingly confident.
15. He performed exceedingly well.
16. Then several other skaters danced.
17. Other skaters spun extremely well.
18. The fans applauded approvingly.
19. The judges decided the scores quickly.
20. The competition was unusually successful.

**Adverbs and the Words They Modify, p. 46**

**EXERCISE**

1. Only lichens and a few other hardy plants can actually grow in the Arctic Circle.
2. Lichens can be easily seen in a light dusting of snow.
3. Sometimes caribou feed on the lichens.
4. Would wolves be closely following the caribou?
5. Most people never experience the harsh environment of the tundra.
6. Is the blimp somewhat risky for passenger travel?
7. Thuan really liked the airships.
8. Airships are an extremely effective means of advertising.
9. They float magically among the clouds.
10. Current designs seem much safer than those of the past.
11. The submarine descended rather slowly.
12. No bird flies more swiftly than the peregrine falcon.
13. Janine’s unusual invention works quite effectively.
14. For a beginner, Eugene plays chess extraordinarily well.
15. The team is playing much better.
16. The qualifying exam for a pilot’s license is extremely difficult.
17. The song ended rather abruptly, I thought.
18. Turn left at the stop sign and proceed slowly.
19. If you come early to the concert, you can easily find a seat.
20. Amin took the news calmly.
**Adverb or Adjective? p. 47**

**Exercise A**
1. Comets often contain large rocks.
2. The rocks inside comets are held together by icy material.
3. A comet that passes by the sun enough times steadily loses its icy material.
4. Rocky material and grains of dust remain near the head of the comet and in its orbit.
5. These rocks and dust grains sometimes enter the earth’s atmosphere.
6. These particles in the earth’s atmosphere can cause a spectacular shower.
7. Meteors don’t come only from comets.
8. In fact, meteors resulting from other sources in space are quite common.
9. The only meteor I’ve ever seen was an awe-inspiring sight.
10. If you gaze into the night sky, you are likely to see one.

**Exercise B**
11. We found the biographies next to the mysteries.
12. The seasonal books were in front of them.
13. According to Mr. Wu, some books were not seasonal.
14. They were there because of a space problem.
15. I borrowed the Sue Grafton mystery in spite of its torn cover.
16. A bird book was the only book I liked aside from that.
17. I did not check out the World Series history on account of Lars.
18. Lars checked out that sports book along with a poetry collection.
19. As of last Friday, I had read ten books this month alone.

---

**The Preposition, p. 48**

**Exercise A**
1. The scout troop went on a hike.
2. They climbed to the top of Mount Milligan.
3. The climb up the mountain was long and difficult.
4. They crossed over a stream and under fallen trees.
5. During the hike a few scouts went off the trail.
6. Boulders had fallen on the trail from a cliff.
7. They went either around the fallen rocks or between them.
8. There is a great deal of wildlife on the ground and under the brush.
9. On account of snakes, hikers should stay on the trail at all times.
10. The climb down the mountain took them in front of the lodge.

---

**Exercise B**
11. We found the biographies next to the mysteries.
12. The seasonal books were in front of them.
13. According to Mr. Wu, some books were not seasonal.
14. They were there because of a space problem.
15. I borrowed the Sue Grafton mystery in spite of its torn cover.
16. A bird book was the only book I liked aside from that.
17. I did not check out the World Series history on account of Lars.
18. Lars checked out that sports book along with a poetry collection.
19. As of last Friday, I had read ten books this month alone.
Prepositional Phrases, p. 49

**EXERCISE A**

1. Maya Angelou grew up in rural Arkansas.
2. Her career began with dance and drama.
3. Dr. Angelou is fluent in several languages.
4. Audiences throughout the United States have enjoyed Dr. Angelou’s lectures.
5. Maya Angelou has also lectured in several foreign countries.
6. Dr. Angelou lived in Cairo, Egypt.
7. Dr. Angelou has also lived and taught in Ghana.
8. In 1969, Maya Angelou wrote an autobiographical novel.
9. She has made several appearances on television.
10. Dr. Maya Angelou’s great works are respected around the world.

**EXERCISE B**

11. This film takes place during the Depression.
12. I found my baseball glove underneath the bed.
13. In spite of the rain the band continued playing.
14. Everybody ran five laps around the track.
15. Is Santa Monica near the beach?

Preposition or Adverb? p. 50

**EXERCISE**

1. From atop the mountain, we looked below and saw the green fields.
2. The cat was sleeping under the blanket.
3. She crawled inside the box.
4. When they heard the noise, they began to look about.
5. Will the children be playing outside today?
6. The family lives near the lake.
7. The squirrel was frightened and ran off.
8. He wants to travel around the world.
9. We will wait until the prices go down.
10. Did you see the robin perched on the branch?
12. Tobias ran down the stairs.
13. I fed the ducks that were crowded along the shore.
14. As soon as we reached the boat, we climbed aboard.
15. I had never traveled aboard a spaceship before.
16. Besides the time I went to New Delhi, I hadn’t ever flown.
17. The airplane made a humming sound as it zoomed off the runway.
18. During the flight, I was served fruit.
19. A cluster of restless creatures murmured nearby.
20. Below, my classmates were probably doing grammar exercises.

The Conjunction A, p. 51

**EXERCISE A**

1. She didn’t stay up too late, nor did she watch too much television.
2. The sun had risen, yet it was still too foggy to drive.
3. Arguments soon broke out, for the players had not agreed upon the rules beforehand.
4. The baby cried, so her mother comforted her.
5. Will you be taking the bus or riding your bike?
6. Terri picked the basketball, and Nikki picked the football.
7. I wanted to see the previews, but the movie had already started.
8. Rocco didn’t think the joke was funny, yet he pretended to laugh.
9. He lifted the vase carefully, for he didn’t want to break it.
10. Karin ordered a salad and a baked potato.

**Exercise B**

11. They took vacations not only in July, but also in December.
12. She will neither take a cab nor ride the bus.
13. The team couldn’t decide whether to practice more or take a break.
14. Both the team captain and the coach thought that the competition went well.
15. We will see either the new French film or the popular German film.

**The Conjunction B, p. 52**

**Exercise A**

1. Many African American families celebrate Juneteenth and Kwanzaa.
2. At an African coming-of-age party, there are music and dancing.
3. At a Jewish bar mitzvah or bat mitzvah, there is prayer.
4. At a Polish or Mexican wedding, the bride collects money during a special dance.
5. For some, weddings are held in houses of worship, for they are religious ceremonies.
6. Some wedding ceremonies are not religious, so they are held at home.
7. Nearly all people welcome the new year, yet not everyone celebrates it on January 1.
8. New Year’s Day is the same day each year in Sweden, but it falls on different days in Vietnam.
10. Name a holiday or festival that is important to your family.

**Exercise B**

11. Not only parrots but also hornbills can be seen in some rain forests.
12. Both eagles and monkeys live in rain forests, too.
13. Either people take steps to save the rain forests now, or these habitats will be lost.
14. The question is not whether the rich nations or the poor ones are at fault.
15. Neither one group nor another is solely to blame for the destruction of the rain forests.

**The Interjection, p. 53**

**Exercise A**

1. Ah, now I understand what to do.
2. Ouch! Another mosquito bit me.
3. Oh! What beautiful flowers those are!
4. Hey, we need to get ready, or we will be late.
5. Excellent! Let’s go right away.
6. I like playing this computer game, but, gee, it is complicated.
7. Ugh! I should have caught that ball.
8. The team finally won a game. Hooray!
9. Well, Guido, what did you learn from the field trip to the aquarium?
10. What a spectacular fireworks display that was! Wow!

EXERCISE B
Answers may vary. Sample responses are given.

11. Hey!
12. Wow!
13. , oh,

Determining Parts of Speech, p. 54

EXERCISE

1. The worried young man wandered about.
2. The article is about the ancient rain forests.
3. The dark night felt quiet and empty.
4. She strolled around in the dark.
5. The startled deer ran fast.
6. She worked at an astonishingly fast rate.
7. I run every morning.
8. The sprinter had an excellent run in this morning’s competition.
9. You got tickets to the show? Great!
10. It should be a great show.

Review A: Parts of Speech, p. 55

EXERCISE A

1. AV, TR—The car of the future might use batteries as its main source of power.
2. AV, TR—Computers in the car monitor everything.
3. AV, IN—The car will not operate by itself, however.
4. AV, TR—A driver must program his or her destination.
5. LV, IN—To me the car looks extremely small.
6. LV, IN—Today’s cars seem huge by comparison.
7. LV, IN—The exterior appears sleek and shiny.

8. LV, IN—The design, though, is practical and efficient.
9. LV, IN—Today’s designers have been very creative.
10. AV, IN—Their imaginations have soared!

EXERCISE B

11. Before we took the trip, we read extensively about each place.
12. We decided to go to both the Everglades and the Rockies.
13. The climate of the Everglades is exceptionally hot and humid.
14. Wow! Did you see any alligators while you were there?
15. Yes, we did, and we also saw some rather unusual birds.
16. We took an ambitious hike in the Rockies.
17. For several hours we climbed steadily upward.
18. Not only the wildflowers but also the alpine vegetation fascinated us.
19. On the hike around the mountains, we saw several mountain goats.
20. In addition to mountain goats, we saw two species of deer running around.

Review B: Parts of Speech, p. 56

EXERCISE A

1. ADV—Jessica was quite interested in sweep rowing.
2. ADV—In sweep rowing, each rower uses only one oar.
3. ADV—In sculling, however, each uses two oars simultaneously.
4. ADV—Recreational boats are usually wider than racing boats.
5. A narrow, lightweight boat can glide faster through the water.
6. Jessica and Connie are rowing through.
7. Wow! Their arms, legs, and backs generate amazing power.
8. The seals slide on a track to allow them to push with their legs.
9. This boat seats several.
10. They will train hard and begin racing next season.

EXERCISE B
11. AV, IN—Opinions vary as to the origins of Valentine’s Day.
12. AV, IN—It might have begun as early as the 1400s.
13. AV, TR—According to an old English belief, birds choose their mates on February 14.
14. LV, IN—The exchange of romantic messages became customary in the 1700s.
15. AV, TR—Have you sent anyone a valentine?

Review C: Parts of Speech, p. 57

EXERCISE
1. Whew! We finally finished this chess game!
2. After lunch, we walked around.
3. I can’t decide whether to write about the short story or the poem.
4. The injured patient made rapid progress in learning to walk again.
5. We thought that they would have arrived by now.
6. Whoops! I dropped the cup of juice.
7. The workers were tired, for they had worked hard all day.
8. I can hardly see the top of that building.
9. The team scored a safety toward the end of the game.
10. I enjoyed the movie, but I was disappointed with the ending.
11. I forgot to bring the book you wanted to borrow.
12. You will find the tools behind the lawn mower.
13. We looked above and saw the constellations.
14. Wow! I can’t believe we’re finally here!
15. The children were hungry, so they ate lunch.
16. The roses smell lovely.
17. The roses have a lovely smell.
18. I couldn’t see beyond the trees.
19. We asked to see both the new painting and the sculptures.
20. The girl’s mother sewed her a blue blouse.
Chapter 4: Complements, pp. 58–70

Complements, p. 58

**EXERCISE A**

1. Mr. Merkenson is a horticulturist.
2. He grows many different kinds of plants at the nursery.
3. Mr. Merkenson showed us some lovely ferns.
4. All of the ferns looked extremely healthy.
5. Do ferns require any special care?
6. Ferns are rather hardy plants.
7. Mr. Merkenson handed me a booklet about ferns.
8. I read the part about plant care.
9. Mia and I bought our mother a beautiful Boston fern.
10. Our mother seemed appreciative of the gift.

**EXERCISE B**

11. The eighth-graders are forming a recycling campaign at the school.
12. Because of the rainy weather, we stayed indoors all day.
13. Are all of these cards and letters for me?
14. The guest speaker spoke to the class about fire prevention.
15. The Nineteenth Amendment gave women the right to vote.
16. My little brother grew restless toward the end of the movie.
17. The president of the company addressed her audience eloquently.
18. Do all bears hibernate during winter months?
19. Claudio had bought a new suit especially for the occasion.
20. Aunt Epatha is a collector of rare books.

Direct Objects, p. 59

**EXERCISE**

1. Ms. McCourt manages her business carefully.
2. Our tabby cat, Mr. Alp, stalked the mouse through the garden.
3. Please bring me a salad from the sandwich shop on the corner.
4. At first, she put the dog and the cat in separate rooms.
5. Jada and Whitney attended their ten-year high school reunion last week.
6. He could have talked about African history for hours.
7. Has the detective reached a conclusion about the burglary yet?
8. The mathematician thought about the unusual proof for several days.
9. The final scene of that movie completely surprised me.
10. After the final performance of the play, Ms. Marrazzo congratulated the cast and crew.
11. At his concert last night, Taj Mahal played “Think,” a blues song.
12. Did you rent any videos last week?
13. The author finally published the article.
14. Conchata practices piano three times a week.
15. I’ll be waiting for your call.
16. Mr. Pinkett gave his old books, a computer, and a mattress to the Salvation Army.
17. Did you hear the president on the radio this morning?
18. For my birthday, my sister gave me the latest book in the series.

19. Mr. Miyasaki is an expert on bonsai trees.

20. In a seat at the back of the theater, the playwright watched her play.

**Indirect Objects, p. 60**

**EXERCISE**

1. Iola sent her brother a gift certificate for his birthday.

2. Miriam, Judy, and Roberto taught themselves three-part harmony.

3. Tell me the answer.

4. None

5. The tall man gave us directions to the film festival.

6. Gregory bought himself a burrito for lunch.

7. At the Museum of Natural History, Mr. Hsing showed James the hall of dinosaurs.

8. Kendall offered Jason his congratulations for winning the bicycle race.

9. At the wedding reception Chang sang Meg and Gordon their favorite song.

10. What gave you the idea for your story?

11. None

12. None

13. Very carefully, Annie offered the stray cat a piece of tuna fish.

14. The coach gave Vic, Bob, and Dan their varsity sweaters.

15. None

16. None

17. When you come back to the table, please bring me the mustard.

18. Jed told the class a story about his trip to Vermont.

19. The company will give you whatever you need to finish the job.

20. None

**Direct Objects and Indirect Objects, p. 61**

**EXERCISE A**

1. The novel offers readers a great adventure.

2. In the novel a poor boy finds himself a captive on a ship.

3. The captain of the ship forces the young prisoner to work for him.

4. He brings the captain food and other supplies.

5. Eventually, the boy and another passenger secretly make plans to escape.

**EXERCISE B**

6. Charlotte and I gave our Dalmatian puppy a bath.

7. Eartha told Kim and me a secret.

8. Pass me the ball!

9. After dinner last night, Dad told us a hilarious story.

10. The explorers found the valuable treasure in a cave.

11. At soccer practice, we ran ten laps around the field.

12. At the request of the teacher, each student made a list of his or her goals.

13. Did Karen accept your invitation to the fiesta?

14. Gail gave her story a one-word title.

15. At the beginning of the tour, the museum guide handed each of us a name tag and a brochure.
**Direct Objects and Indirect Objects B, p. 62**

**EXERCISE A**

1. He also gave me a **book** of easy-to-play Beatles songs.

2. The book shows the reader the hand positions for each **song**.

3. So far I have taught myself **three songs**.

4. I have learned “Yesterday,” “Hey Jude,” and “Yellow Submarine.”

5. After he heard me play, my uncle praised me for my **talent**.

**EXERCISE B**

6. Ms. Wong wrote the store a check for the **groceries**.

7. Sophie told Carmen the complete story.

8. Carl proposed a title for the film.

9. Offer our guest some soup, Cedric.

10. The newspaper article gave Cody an idea for a story.

11. Just in case, the purser issued every passenger a life vest.

12. Give yourselves a nice round of applause.

13. The avalanche carried away the empty **cabin**.

14. Mother gave Tim and me some money for lunch at school.

15. Helen gave a **tour** of the studio to Tonya and Peter.

**Predicate Nominatives, p. 64**

**EXERCISE**

1. My partner for biology lab is Penelope.

2. Jason will be the next student council president.

3. Mrs. Furillo’s favorite song is still “Night and Day.”

4. Rocky Marciano was the world heavyweight boxing champion from 1952 to 1956.

5. My coat is the red one.

6. Leon would have been my first choice for the part.

7. Michelle Kwan has become an inspiration to us all.

8. Is Sara the runner in the blue T-shirt?

9. I could have been a contender.

10. The winner of the spelling bee was Tracy.

11. The next speaker will be Mr. Gonzalez.

12. Who was the fourteenth president of the United States?
13. My favorite memory of the trip is our day at the Grand Canyon.

14. At the age of eighteen, my father became the first person in his family to go to college.

15. Were the stars of that movie Lauren Bacall and Humphrey Bogart?

16. The winner is Terry!

17. Did Sheila become an accountant?

18. Grace’s preferences for lunch are sandwiches or soup.

19. The next contestant on the show is Mr. Hynes.

20. Ginger should have become an actress.

**Predicate Adjectives, p. 65**

**Exercise**

1. Our cat Conrad is small for his age.

2. The boiled potatoes tasted a little too bland for me.

3. Belinda sounded optimistic about the outcome of the student council election.

4. Parker looks very nice in that hat.

5. Sales of the new school calendar appear brisk.

6. The llama’s fur felt soft to Marcia’s touch.

7. The door to the basement is squeaky.

8. After his feeding, the baby remained quiet for the rest of the night.

9. The crowd at the championship game was energetic and enthusiastic.

10. Michael’s new wool coat felt rough and scratchy against his skin.

11. Lance didn’t become tired until the final lap of the race.

12. The maze can be frustrating and tiring.

13. The moon appeared big and bright in the evening sky.

14. The bittersweet comedy seemed both funny and sad.

15. The soup may be too hot to eat right now.

16. Have you ever been afraid of the dark?

17. The trail of the meteor appeared blue, green, and red.

18. Every day, Taylor grew more confident about riding her new unicycle.

19. Is your new dog brown and white?

20. Climbing the steep slope of the mountainside is really quite easy, despite its appearance.

**Predicate Nominatives and Predicate Adjectives, A, p. 66**

**Exercise A**

1. The bag with the bowling ball in it felt heavy.

2. Mrs. Kaufman is my favorite teacher.

3. The dog seemed eager to see us.

4. The best vegetable, in my opinion, is spinach.

5. Our next-door neighbor is a teacher at the local high school and the coach of the football team.

6. Even after a week, the cat remained aloof from the other pets in the house.

7. That casserole certainly smells delicious!

8. Isn’t Sonya the lead singer for the band?

9. Some Asian dishes are perhaps too hot and spicy for some people.
10. Toni Morrison is the author of several novels, including *Beloved* and *Song of Solomon.*

**EXERCISE B**

11. The Snapdragon is the fastest and most popular ride at the amusement park.

12. Does the pattern on this shirt seem faded to you?

13. The author Joseph Heller was a famous novelist.

14. Jorge’s two favorite composers are Beethoven and Holst.

15. Will this energetic puppy ever become a calm pet?

**Predicate Nominatives and Predicate Adjectives B, p. 67**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Ms. Juarez is also an imaginative playwright.

2. “A Dog’s Life” is one of her humorous one-act plays.

3. In this play a man becomes a full-grown Labrador retriever.

4. The man’s children seem pleased with their new pet.

5. As the play unfolds, the dog’s behavior grows comically strange.

**EXERCISE B**

6. The dachshund is a highly intelligent breed of dog.

7. Does the water in the swimming pool feel too cold to you?

8. Broccoli is one of my favorite vegetables.

9. The finalists in the eighth-grade geography bee are Kim Chun and she.

10. The action in this movie may be too violent for some viewers.

11. The photographer seemed quite pleased with his pictures.

12. Una was certainly happy about the contest results.

13. All of the scouts appeared tired and hungry after their long hike.

14. My mother is a skilled carpenter.

15. Is Rufino Tamayo the Mexican artist who painted *Homage to Juárez*?

**Review A: Complements, p. 68**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Alexander Graham Bell is the name of the inventor of the telephone.

2. For many years, telephones did not have dials or push buttons.

3. Telephone operators would place calls for people.

4. A caller would tell an operator the telephone number to call.

5. Telephones with dials became popular in the 1930s.

6. Callers would turn the dials with their fingers.

7. With dial phones people could place their calls more readily than before.

8. Today’s touch-tone phones are an improvement over dial phones.

9. With touch-tone phones people can place their calls quickly.

10. Today, callers can telephone nearly anyone in the world in a few seconds.

**EXERCISE B**

11. Celine, my e-mail pal, is Canadian.

12. Montreal, Quebec, is her hometown.
13. Celine and I are both **excited** about our correspondence.

14. Like me, she speaks both **English** and **French** fluently.

15. We have the same tastes in music.

16. She e-mailed me a long letter yesterday.

17. In her letter she thanked me for the birthday gift.

18. I had given her the latest **CD** by her favorite country singer.

19. We are great **fans** of the last song on the CD.

20. Celine sent my family and me tickets to a concert in New York City.

**Review B: Complements, p. 69**

**Exercise A**

1. My uncle Mark took my entire **family** to a baseball game yesterday.

2. It was a beautiful day for the **game**.

3. The weather was **sunny** and warm.

4. The weather, however, suddenly changed on our way to the **stadium**.

5. The sun disappeared, and storm clouds gathered directly overhead.

6. By the time of our arrival, though, the sky was once again **clear**.

7. Everyone in my family, even my sister, enjoyed the **game**.

8. One player gave my **sister** his autograph.

9. Naturally, we cheered **enthusiastically** during each of his turns at bat.

10. Like me, my sister is now an avid baseball **fan**.

**Exercise B**

11. People are curious about my unusual **collection**.

12. I started the collection at my old house in Michigan.

13. My mother had hired a **crew** of carpenters.

14. Each carpenter was a skilled **roofer**.

15. They carefully pulled the old **shingles** off the roof.

16. The nails in the boards under the shingles were old and unusually **large**.

17. One of the carpenters noticed my interest in the **nails**.

18. I handed her an empty **box**.

19. She gave me some of the **nails**.

20. Those were the first ones in my collection of **handmade nails**.

**Review C: Complements, p. 70**

**Exercise**

1. Now that the election is over, Mr. Danton will be our new **representative** in Congress.

2. The English author Charles Dickens offers modern **readers** a vivid look at city life in the nineteenth century.

3. That seedling will eventually become a **tree**.

4. Marcia, read the class and **me** your essay.

5. We all use our **backpacks** to carry our books to and from school.

6. Jenna, my best friend, is the tallest **person** on our volleyball team.

7. This music is pretty **exotic**, don’t you think?

8. Some people buy older **homes** and restore them.

9. Doesn’t the new stereo sound **wonderful**?

10. Call the switchboard and ask for Jill.
11. The millionaire provided the **scientist** with the money to finish his research.

12. Did you give the dog his **medicine** and a **treat** this morning?

13. The aspiring writer gave the **editor** several chapters from his book.

14. Everyone in our family is a good **diver** and a good **swimmer**.

15. Nelson is **curious** about marine archaeology.

16. Please tell your **sister** and **me** the truth.

17. The ice on the lake seemed **thicker** the day after the temperature dropped.

18. Who is the **person** who left the beautiful flowers on my desk?

19. I think I look **good** in my new shirt.

20. Freddie brought a **bat** and a baseball **glove** to the first day of practice.
Chapter 5: The Phrase, pp. 71–97

Phrases, p. 71

**Exercise**

1. on the table—phrase
2. to watch a movie—phrase
3. on the shelf—phrase
4. when he heard the news—not a phrase
5. fearing a low score—phrase
6. In 1934—phrase
7. in the corner—phrase
8. a master of the violin—phrase
9. To repair a car—phrase
10. Before she left home—not a phrase

**The Prepositional Phrase, p. 72**

**Exercise A**

1. about the cause; of these mysterious patterns; in 1978
2. In the middle; of a field; in huge circles
3. in the fields; by extraterrestrials
4. throughout the country; to rare weather conditions
5. Instead of circles; in 1990
6. of the patterns
7. In 1991
8. by two pranksters; as a practical joke
9. Since these two hoaxers’ confessions; of occurrences; of these strange patterns
10. about the mysterious phenomenon; during the 1980s and 1990s

**Exercise B**

*Answers will vary. Sample responses are provided.*

11. For his birthday Mateo’s parents bought him a pony.
12. The pony had black patches on her white coat.
13. So Mateo said to his mom and dad, “Let’s call the pony Salt and Pepper.”
14. Mateo’s father helped his son into the saddle, and Mateo rode around the corral.
15. Then they led the pony into the barn and gave it some fresh hay and water.

**The Adjective Phrase, p. 73**

**Exercise**

1. My favorite **writer** of science fiction is Ray Bradbury.
2. The pie needs four **cups** of fruit.
3. A **student from Mr. Levy’s class** won first prize.
4. The loud **crash** of the cymbal was deafening.
5. The **directions for the assignment** confused Gilbert.
6. The **glass of water on the table** is mine.
7. The **play of the sunlight on the water** was a beautiful sight. * [or The play of the sunlight on the water was a beautiful sight.]*
8. **Somebody with feet of large proportions** has scuffed the gym floor.
9. Susie mowed the **area around the trunk** of the tree.
10. The **house on the corner of Main and Elm** has been abandoned.

**The Adverb Phrase, p. 74**

**Exercise**

1. Terra **walked** across the street.
2. **Throughout next month, the band will perform** at the fair.
3. Before Sunday, please clean your room.
4. Mr. Monroe **has lived** on Mason Street for twenty-two years.
5. Jason **was pleased with his grades.**
6. For **several hours, a cool wind blew** from the east.
7. Mrs. Green **teaches** history through books, magazines, and videos.
8. The boys dipped their feet into the cool, soothing water.
9. Please complete your project by Friday.
10. A quiet stillness reigned at the school throughout spring break.

Adjective and Adverb Phrases A, p. 75

**EXERCISE A**

1. Sonya is good at soccer.
2. Raphael enjoys reading articles about early space exploration.
3. Throughout the spring, Archimedes spent much time fishing.
4. The young cheetah quietly crouched behind the tall, yellow grass.
5. Herbert watched an informative video on the air battles of World War II.

**EXERCISE B**

6. The day before Memorial Day, Henry visited his grandfather for two hours.
7. With great skill, the doctor removed several tiny shards of glass.
8. Elizabeth’s essay about England during Victorian times earned her an A.
9. During the celebration of Mom’s birthday, Uncle Jimmy told hilarious jokes for a whole hour.
10. Helga’s cousin from New Orleans waited in the living room.
11. The cost of the new bridge went beyond the previous estimate.
12. The skateboard was too expensive for Li.
14. That boy with a broken leg had been injured during a soccer game.
15. On the beach of the tiny island, the castaways constructed a hut of leaves and grass.

Adjective and Adverb Phrases B, p. 76

**EXERCISE A**

1. The house beyond that hill belongs to Mrs. Wilton.
2. The woman in the business suit is giving out free tickets.
3. Carl plays piano well for a beginner.
4. The most exciting game of the season occurred last night.
5. Before noon, please complete your projects.

**EXERCISE B**

6. The scientists watched with satisfaction as the probe flew into space.
7. On October 21, the mayor of the city spoke at the convention center.
8. The tower behind the temple was constructed over a ten-year period.
9. At malls, people with clipboards sometimes give shoppers surveys.
10. Frank rode his bike over the rough trails and hills of Pete’s Peak.
11. On Friday, Lisa watched a show about the Maya.
12. A Spanish galleon from the sixteenth century was discovered off the coast.
13. Over the weekend, Adele enjoyed the crisp air of the Rocky Mountains.
14. Mr. James is good at basketball.
15. For his birthday, Jose wants a red convertible with a black top.
The Participle, p. 77

EXERCISE A
1. Clara likes to eat canned peaches.
2. Clapping wildly, the fans welcomed the band.
3. Theresa watered the blossoming flowers.
4. The child’s forgotten toys lined the bottom of the toy chest.
5. Decorated with care, the float was popular at the parade.

EXERCISE B
6. The book, chosen for its unusual characters, was a class favorite.
7. Feeling confident, Larry volunteered to list all of the state capitals.
8. Dale watched the kitten playing with his shoe.
9. The students planning the field trip decided to take a trip to Washington, D.C.
10. Janet discovered a treasure map on the piece of yellowed paper.

The Participial Phrase, p. 78

EXERCISE A
1. The mascot, known to the students as Sparky, entertained the crowd.
2. Walter, running with speed and purpose, passed the other joggers.
3. Seeing the bump in the road, Nell swerved to avoid it.
4. Dressed in style, Blake left his house and headed for the school dance.
5. The mayor has a building named in her honor.

EXERCISE B
6. Feeling tired, I decided to take a nap before getting ready to go out.
7. The girl dressed in shorts and a T-shirt is my sister.
8. We finally found the cat hiding under the bed.
9. The books, damaged by the rain, had to be thrown out.
10. The document signed by President Abraham Lincoln is kept in a special case in the museum.
13. Even a big beast protected by hair had trouble.

14. Searching for food, the woolly mammoths roamed the land.

15. Looking at pictures of these animals, I wonder how they survived at all.

Participles and Participial Phrases B, p. 80

EXERCISE A
1. The battered ship was anchored off the coast of Florida.
2. The hikers took plenty of bottled beverages on their journey.
3. Jose bought ten used magazines.
4. The beaten team did not advance to the playoffs.
5. The running child almost slipped and fell.

EXERCISE B
6. The tools used by professional mechanics are usually very expensive.
7. Covered with snow for weeks, the ground was now hard.
8. The basement, filled with old boxes, was damp and musty.
9. Simple jewelry left behind by ancient Egyptians can be very valuable today.
10. Wanting to make a good impression, Harry wore his favorite shirt to the game.

EXERCISE A
1. Becoming
2. cooking
3. squeaking
4. writing
5. crackling

EXERCISE B
6. Traveling to new and interesting places is fun.
7. none
8. Give playing golf another chance.
9. The powerful writing made the novel exciting to read.
10. none

11. Cecil’s favorite hobby is building scale models of World War II airplanes.
12. The key to fishing is patience.
13. Fielding a pop fly on a sunny day can be a tricky play.
14. none
15. Marie’s favorite event is swimming.

The Gerund Phrase, p. 82

EXERCISE A
1. The vibrating of the tire
2. the soft chirping of a baby bird
3. identifying Grecian artifacts
4. Playing the piano well
5. fly-fishing for trout

EXERCISE B
6. Javier wants to write an essay about the art of playing video games.
7. none
8. Julie’s favorite pastime is running along the trails near the park.
9. Having defined goals will help you plan your future.

10. Katy’s favorite weekend activity is sleeping late on Saturday mornings.

11. The class used up half an hour by asking the guest speaker questions about comets.

12. The chef gave cooking the stew the attention it deserved.

13. Try flying the kite one more time before you throw it away.

14. Terra dreams of flying a helicopter for a television news station.

15. none

Gerunds and Gerund Phrases A, p. 83

**EXERCISE A**
1. grooming
2. Training
3. speaking
4. saving
5. crowing

**EXERCISE B**
6. Flying in an airplane sounds dangerous, but it is actually quite safe.

7. A far more dangerous activity is driving a car.

8. Some drivers endanger others as well as themselves by recklessly disobeying traffic laws.

9. none

10. For our next vacation we may give riding on a train a try.

11. Watching the countryside roll by from the window of a train would be fun.

12. My sister votes for driving to Seattle, Washington, in an RV.

13. Preston heard the crashing of the surf.

14. Traveling across the country takes a lot of time.

15. none

Gerunds and Gerund Phrases B, p. 84

**EXERCISE A**
1. watching
2. cleaning
3. speaking
4. getting
5. clanking

**EXERCISE B**
6. none

7. When he was five, the musical prodigy started playing the piano.

8. Plato gave fishing for rainbow trout another chance.

9. Jack’s parents supported his dream of winning a gold medal.

10. none

11. Among other sports, Li enjoys snorkeling in the ocean.

12. The teacher noted that Paul has a love of reading poems and writing them.

13. His strongest event in the track meet was running hurdles.

14. At sunrise the girls began raking the golden leaves.

15. One popular hobby is collecting baseball cards.

Participle or Gerund? p. 85

**EXERCISE A**
1. Planning ahead, David carried an umbrella to school.

2. The zoning committee would not allow a strip mall to be built next to the park.
3. The tireless beavers were building a dam across the stream.

4. Brian likes racing remote-controlled cars.

5. The restless boy was fidgeting throughout the entire movie.

EXERCISE B
Sentences will vary. Sample responses are provided.
6. My brother, jumping in as usual to take over, tried to boss my sister and me around.
7. I have always loved swimming—in the ocean, a lake, a river, or a pool.
9. My dog, seeing a cat, yanked so hard on the leash that my wrist was sprained.
10. Tasting the food as I cook often fills me up, and then I can’t eat when the meal is served.

The Infinitive, p. 86
EXERCISE
1. to go
2. to be
3. to remember
4. none
5. to go
6. to find
7. To learn
8. none
9. to be
10. to dance

The Infinitive Phrase, p. 87
EXERCISE
1. To fix a flat bicycle tire you may need a tire patch and some glue.
2. Alex was ready to begin his new class on Monday.
3. none
4. The ability to play a musical instrument comes from talent and practice.
5. Henry’s little brother always wants to play hide-and-seek.
6. The team went to the stadium to practice the new plays.
7. The purpose of a persuasive speech is to convince others.
8. The salesperson measured Roy’s arm to determine his sleeve size.
9. none
10. Yori wants to eat Italian food for lunch.
11. To study a foreign language is a worthwhile pursuit.
12. We were told to put the food away.
13. Please tell them to be quiet.
14. Saturday is a good day to mow the lawn.
15. Are you prepared to answer the question?
16. none
17. The president asked her advisers to propose a solution.
18. My chief goal in college is to earn my degree.
19. To remember a conversation from three years ago is quite a trick.
20. Don’t forget to return the basketball to the equipment room.

Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases A, p. 88
EXERCISE A
1. An easy thing to form out of paper is an envelope.
2. To make a paper airplane takes little time.
3. Some children were eager to fold paper into shapes of animal figures.
4. One child’s goal was to create a paper jacket.
5. Others were content to design paper baskets.
EXERCISE B
Sentences will vary. Sample responses are provided.

6. I hope to feel good about my participation, whether I win or lose.
7. My cousin is going to school to become a chiropractor.
8. Stephanie’s logical explanation was difficult to believe.
9. Here is some water to fill the canteens.
10. I have to decide about summer camp by the end of April.

Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases B, p. 89

EXERCISE
1. Francis wrapped the sandwich in cellophane to keep the sandwich fresh.
2. The assignment was not difficult to complete.
3. At four o’clock, Charles began to paint the garage a dazzling shade of pink.
4. Lee and his buddies got together to design a video game.
5. Fruits and vegetables are good, nutritious foods to eat.
6. The teacher asked the class not to talk.
7. Terry used the World Wide Web to find information about lemurs.
8. We tried to capture the runaway dog, but it was too fast and wily for us.
9. To climb that colossal rock will take skill and concentration.
10. They used nails and ropes to fasten the boards to the tree.

Verbals and Verbal Phrases, p. 90

EXERCISE A
1. The plan accepted by the mayor involved a tax cut.
2. Paula expected the paper airplane to fly.
3. Feeling dizzy, Helena stopped and took a break.
4. The weight of the sack made it difficult to carry.
5. My uncle from Michigan enjoys canoeing.
6. The squeaking wheel alerted the mechanic to a potential problem.
7. Getting up early in the morning is sometimes a challenge.
8. We bought a new wrench to fix the leaky faucet.
9. The forgotten treasure lay at the bottom of the sea for three hundred years.
10. Fascinated, Pepe stood and admired the mural for several hours.

EXERCISE B
11. The easiest part of the project is cutting out the pattern. (direct object or predicate nominative)
12. The tools used by some ancient cultures are impressive. (adverb or adjective)
13. Running five miles per week is Joanna’s goal. (subject or direct object)
14. They went to the park to have a picnic. (adverb or adjective)
15. The coach’s philosophy is to practice every day. (predicate nominative or direct object)

Appositive, p. 91

EXERCISE A
1. Marie Curie
2. Pierre Curie
4. Vasco da Gama
5. Darren
EXERCISE B
6. His cousin Ellen has a magnificent geode collection.
7. The famous baseball player Hank Aaron hit 755 home runs.
8. The book Sounder is John’s favorite novel.
9. Harry told his sister Lana that he would take her to the carnival.
10. My mom Regina volunteers at the city library.

Appositive Phrases, p. 92

EXERCISE A
1. a Portuguese explorer
2. a pig and a cat taking a nap together
3. a woman of keen insight
4. author of A Christmas Carol
5. the school’s fight song

EXERCISE B
6. Hank Aaron, the right fielder from Alabama, broke Babe Ruth’s record for home runs.
7. Make sure that you bring the most important item, your permission slip.
8. Paul, his cousin from St. Louis, could juggle six tennis balls at once.
9. The Mexican food, a delicious change of pace, spiced things up in the cafeteria.
10. Leslie’s cat, an amazing smart animal, learned to sit up and roll over on command.

Appositives and Appositive Phrases A, p. 93

EXERCISE
1. The battle of Bad Axe River, a struggle between a band of American Indians and the United States government, occurred in 1832.
2. Black Hawk, a member of the Sauk nation, led the American Indian forces.
3. Many Mesquakes, allies of the Sauks, followed Black Hawk into battle.
4. This battle, the last skirmish of Black Hawk’s War, resulted in the removal of the Sauks and Mesquakes from their homelands.
5. Other Indian leaders, Chief Joseph, Crazy Horse, and Sitting Bull, fought in battles to protect their homelands and cultures.
6. The Nez Perce leader Chief Joseph, and his followers fought heroically.
7. Chief Joseph and his forces, a band of fewer than five hundred warriors, defended themselves against a force of five thousand U.S. government troops.
8. After a 1,300-mile trek to Canada, a long and difficult journey, the U.S. troops attacked.
9. After a five-month siege, the Nez Perce were relocated to Indian Territory, a region that is now part of Oklahoma.
10. Crazy Horse and Sitting Bull, two leaders of the Sioux, also fought bravely in their battles against U.S. government forces.

Appositives and Appositive Phrases B, p. 94

EXERCISE
1. The pillow was made of an extremely soft material, goose feathers.
2. Gena’s favorite comic strip, Peanuts, is a constant source of amusement to her.
3. We listened to beautiful piano sonatas by Beethoven, the famous composer.
4. Kevin gave his sister Valerie, his old catcher’s mitt as a gift.
5. The skateboarder, an expert at negotiating the half pipe, dazzled the crowd.
6. A single clue, a torn-up slipper, alerted Kim to the fact that her dog had been in the closet.

7. The impressive flag, a symbol of national pride, fluttered softly in the wind.

8. Berkeley has watched the movie *Babe* twelve times.

9. For the afternoon hike, Gino packed an orange, one of his favorite fruits.

10. Ricky chose to study the artist Picasso for his art project.

11. Uncle Mike, my father’s younger brother, is an art director in Hollywood.

12. In New York we saw the musical *Cats*.

13. My grandmother went to high school with the famous film director Stanley Kubrick.

14. *West Side Story*, a retelling of *Romeo and Juliet*, was first a Broadway play.


16. Ms. Hong, my math teacher, is retiring this year.

17. *A Prairie Home Companion*, Helen’s favorite radio show, plays every Saturday night.

18. Jason, the last person you would expect, volunteered to cook.

19. Lara’s hometown, Big Rapids, is in Michigan.


**Review A: Verbal Phrases, p. 95**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Heloise wants to be an airline pilot.

2. The meowing cat slunk out of the room.

3. Jonathan went to the store to buy the latest magazine.

4. Standing on its hind legs, the cute Chihuahua walked around the room.

5. One of Jane’s favorite pastimes is flying kites.

6. Beth said that the most convenient time to study is at three o’clock.

7. Ruth listened to the pleasant strumming of the Spanish guitar.

8. Charles, seeing the clouds in the sky, proclaimed that it would soon rain.

9. You can save some time by removing the shells first.

10. The artifacts buried beneath layers of dirt and rock were important finds.

**EXERCISE B**

*Sentences will vary. Sample responses are provided.*

11. My uncle had had sailing from Los Angeles to Hawaii as his lifelong dream, and last year he made the trip.

12. My goal for next year is to become a member of the debate team.

13. “Yes,” she said, agreeing with me.

14. Sailing in the bay is our usual Sunday afternoon pastime in the summer.

15. Seeing the trouble I was having, the teacher offered me a tutoring session.

**Review B: Phrases, p. 96**

**EXERCISE A**

1. In the East the Europeans built houses, roads, and cities.

2. Areas of wilderness lay to the west.

3. The land of the open prairie beckoned to them.

4. Cattle could be raised throughout these wide-open ranges.

5. There they could roam freely over large areas.
6. On these ranges most of the beef eaten in cities would be raised.
7. The hides of the cattle were branded to show ownership.
8. A single cow was valuable to a rancher.
9. Cattle that strayed were caught with a lasso.
10. The pioneer spirit of most of the early settlers remained high in spite of the hardship.

**EXERCISE B**
Students may ignore prepositional phrases embedded within appositive or verbal phrases.

11. Before the invention of the tractor, farmers used oxen or other animals to pull the plows.
12. One farmworker, the plowman, would walk behind the plow to guide it.
13. Another worker would stand in front of the oxen to guide them.
14. Raising a crop was a strenuous job.
15. One part of the job was plowing the soil, a difficult task.
16. Fertilizer, an important ingredient for a productive crop, was added to the soil.
17. A farmer would walk across the field, spreading the fertilizer.
18. To nourish the ground, the farmer would work the fertilizer into the ground.
19. Sowing the seeds was the next step.
20. Unfortunately, some of the seeds would be eaten by birds.

**Review C: Phrases, p. 97**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Scarecrows seemed to scare away at least some of the birds.
2. The weather, of course, plays a significant role in the growing of a crop.
3. A crop ripening in the sun can look beautiful.
4. Have you ever stood in a sunlit field to watch the wheat or some other crop sway in the wind?
5. Corn, a plant that has several thousands of varieties, is an important crop.
6. A stalk of corn can grow up to twenty feet tall.
7. A field of corn glimmering in the sun is a beautiful sight.
8. Many varieties of corn from the United States are grown in the Corn Belt.
9. Eating corn on the cob is a common activity at some picnics.
10. The planting and harvesting of crops such as corn is a demanding job.

**EXERCISE B**

11. The building towering ten stories tall is a treasured landmark.
12. Watching the driveway intently, Janet waited for David.
13. Kelly, wanting a treat, walked to the grocery store to buy a fresh watermelon.
14. The tree, a tall pine with a thick trunk, was over a century old.
15. This lesson’s objective is to learn about phrases in action.

16. Helena, one of the girls from our school, received a blue ribbon.

17. The class heard the soft whimpering of a puppy.

18. The girl standing on the stage is Celia.

19. Sally’s favorite hobby is learning about her family’s history.

20. Swooping down from the sky, the bird buzzed over Tim’s head.
Chapter 6: The Clause, pp. 98–113

Identifying Clauses, p. 98

**EXERCISE A**

1. Antonio told her that he had not planned on coming to the party.
   - S V

2. I have no idea when the mechanic finished the repairs on the car.
   - S V

3. Before the storm struck, the sky turned an odd shade of green.
   - S V

4. When she arrived at the dock, the ferry had already left for the island.
   - S V

5. At last Gretchen met Conrad and Padgett, who were the pets of her friend Mimi.
   - S V

6. Grabbing his hat, Robb dashed out into the snow.
   - S V

7. Even though they invited her, Joie decided not to come along on the field trip.
   - S V

8. Vince decided to read the book before he saw the movie.
   - S V

9. You may come with us if you want.
   - S V

10. Teddy stopped the dryer when he heard his boots clunking around inside it.
    - S V

**EXERCISE B**

11. phrase

12. clause

13. clause

14. phrase

15. clause

The Independent Clause, p. 99

**EXERCISE A**

1. In the nineteenth century, Scottish-Irish immigrants came to the United States.
   - S V

2. They brought with them their music and their way of speaking.
   - S V

3. Many settled in the south-central part of the United States.
   - S V

4. In some places, you can still hear some of the Scottish-Irish songs.
   - S V

5. One singer of those old ballads is Jean Ritchie.
   - S V

6. Audiences love Ritchie's version of "Barbara Allen."
   - S V

7. Ritchie can play the dulcimer as well as the guitar.
   - S V

8. The dulcimer, which is an oval-shaped stringed instrument, is especially popular among the people of the southern Appalachians.
   - S V

   - S V

10. Every group of immigrants brings its own special treasures to our shores.
    - S V

**EXERCISE B**

11. yes

12. yes

13. no

14. no

15. yes

The Subordinate Clause, p. 100

**EXERCISE A**

1. England is the country where Mother Goose rhymes originated.
   - S V

2. The people who composed the rhymes lived hundreds of years ago.
   - S V

3. These rhymes became popular because they were fun and easy to learn.
   - S V

4. If a rhyme was especially funny or interesting, children would sing it.
   - S V

5. One rhyme that children enjoyed was "Baa, Baa Black Sheep."
   - S V

6. Some people think that this rhyme is actually a protest against taxes.
   - S V

7. In the rhyme, the three bags of wool that the sheep produces are given away.
   - S V
8. Since the sheep has only three bags of wool, it is left with nothing.

9. So, “Baa, Baa Black Sheep” may be a rhyme that protests high taxes.

10. Mother Goose rhymes, which are always fun to read, may or may not have political meanings.

Exercises B
Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

11. if the weather is pleasant
12. who scored the winning touchdown
13. that Kamika told us
14. Whenever someone approaches our front door
15. because many of the band members were ill

Independent and Subordinate Clauses, p. 101

Exercises A
1. subordinate  6. subordinate
2. independent  7. independent
3. independent  8. independent
4. subordinate  9. independent
5. subordinate 10. subordinate

Exercises B
11. Dr. Zamora left the dinner party before the main course was served.
12. Before we begin the meeting, let me introduce the newest member of our team.
13. The last singer on the program is the one who can hit the high notes.
14. When the conductor tapped her baton, the orchestra fell silent.
15. One planet that has often excited the imaginations of science fiction writers is Mars, which is sometimes called the red planet.

The Adjective Clause A, p. 102

Exercises A
1. The music that you have just heard was composed by Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart.
2. Mr. Cohen, who conducts the school chorus, collects songbooks.
3. Denver, which is situated 5,280 feet above sea level, is called the Mile High City.
4. Is Florida the place where Ponce de León sought the Fountain of Youth?
5. Ed White, whom NASA chose for the first spacewalk, was born in San Antonio.

Exercises B
6. The fourteenth century was a time when many people died of the bubonic plague.
7. Mollusks, which have either one shell or two, are classified as either univalves or bivalves.
8. How many of the written records that were kept during the Middle Ages have survived?
9. Antonia Novello, who was Surgeon General of the United States in 1990, is Puerto Rican.
10. The lightning that flashes during a rainstorm is hotter than the surface of the sun.
11. President Harry Truman was one of those people whose middle name is a single letter.
12. Marian Anderson, who was one of the greatest opera singers, often struggled against racial discrimination.
13. Nyos, in Cameroon, is a lake that sometimes releases huge bursts of carbon dioxide from its floor.
14. Saving the tiger, which is an endangered species, may depend upon preserving its habitat.
15. My sister spends much time working with my aunt, who is president of the local Red Cross.
The Adjective Clause B, p. 103

EXERCISE A

1. My aunt Becky, who is an editor for a university press, showed me her office.
2. The soldier with whom my grandmother corresponded during World War II eventually came home and became her husband.
3. The Chocolate War is the book that I read for my book report.
4. The project is called SETI, which stands for “Search for Extraterrestrial Intelligence.”
5. The road that leads to the old mill has been washed out by the flood.
6. She served in the administration of Bill Clinton, who was the forty-second president of the United States.
7. My little brother is a kid whom you can really love.
8. She was the player whose skill at jump shots became legendary.
9. The corn bread that Tish brought to the party was gone within twenty minutes.
10. Dean gave his results to the scientist, who incorporated them into his report.

EXERCISE B

11. The model whose face appears on so many magazine covers is a Rhodes scholar.
12. The pictures that we took on our vacation are missing.
13. The church where my sister was married is closed now for renovations.
14. This is the spot where President Kennedy announced the creation of the Peace Corps.
15. Was Ed Bradley the correspondent who reported the story?

Relative Pronouns and Relative Adverbs, p. 104

EXERCISE A

1. Is Rafael the one who wrote the poem about trees in winter?
2. Starr Auditorium is the place where I first heard English Folk Song Suite.
3. The river that was polluted by the factory has been restored to its natural state.
4. Ms. Pollard is the teacher for whom I wrote my history report about the Gulf War.
5. He won’t be able to come until Saturday, when he has a day off from his job.
6. The famous author, whose novel I read, visited our school.
7. Gettysburg, where a famous battle was fought in the Civil War, is in southern Pennsylvania.
8. I was awake at dawn, which is too early.
9. The newspaper printed a picture of the old barn in which the stolen money was found.
10. I know a few lines of the poem that Kerry quoted on television.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

11. The director who won an Academy Award last year will present his new film at the film festival.
12. A cat is rolling in the grass that I just mowed.
13. My aunt and uncle drove through New Mexico, where the land is dry and rocky.
14. The band whose lead singer is from our school will play at the dance.
15. Clare and Ruben, who are extremely talented, wrote the class song.
**The Adverb Clause A, p. 105**

**EXERCISE A**  Students’ identification of words modified may vary for some items.

1. A lobster fears few enemies because it has a hard, protective shell.
2. A shark can swim faster than a human can.
3. The life expectancy of a sea turtle is not as long as it once was.
4. When an octopus is attacked, it can spray a jet of inky fluid at its opponent.
5. Up close at night, a coral reef is more beautiful than you can imagine.
6. When a moray eel feels threatened, it withdraws into its hiding place.
7. A sea cow can swim faster than you might think.
8. The sting of most jellyfish can be dangerous unless it is treated.
9. A puffer inflates itself like a balloon until its attacker swims away.
10. Ice fish live where temperatures sometimes drop below freezing.

**EXERCISE B**  Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

11. While I tossed the salad, Bert took the lasagna out of the oven.
12. The salsa dancers were upset because they didn’t win the dance contest.
13. The spy hid the documents where only he would find them.
14. As soon as a trail was blazed, people swarmed into the Amazon jungle.
15. Kim can throw a football farther than I thought she could.

---

**The Adverb Clause B, p. 106**

**EXERCISE A**  Students’ identification of words modified may vary for some items.

1. Please read whenever you like.
2. Regis looked as though he had been caught in a rainstorm.
3. None of you should build a campfire until you have learned the proper technique.
4. If your uncle comes to the reunion tomorrow, ask him about his experiences in Indonesia.
5. Paolo mixed the pancake batter carefully so that there wouldn’t be any lumps.
6. Ever since James hiked the Appalachian Trail, he has been in better shape.
7. We traveled slowly unless we were forced to go faster.
8. Although she wrote a book set in the Galápagos Islands, she has never been there.
9. After the rainstorm ended, the droplets on the leaves of the trees sparkled like diamonds.
10. I recited the poem more dramatically than she did.

**EXERCISE B**

11. Until Maya brings the eggplant, we won’t be able to start dinner.
12. Clarence is a much better bicycle mechanic than I am.
13. The cat batted its toy mouse under the refrigerator so that no one could reach it.
14. Vladimir played the piano as though his life depended on it.
15. Because the sky is clear, we will have a good view of the meteor shower.
Subordinating Conjunctions, p. 107

EXERCISE A
1. Though I did not enjoy the first page, I finished the story.
2. Oscar can swim much farther than I can.
3. You may watch television after dinner as long as you finish your homework first.
4. The post office is closed because today is Presidents’ Day.
5. Unless the track team wins its next two meets, it will not go to the state finals.
6. There are footnotes at the bottom of each page so that the reader can immediately see the meaning of old or obscure words.
7. If the weather stays nice, we can go biking this afternoon.
8. Susannah sounds as though she has a bad cold.
9. Although the salad usually came with olives, Gretchen asked the cook not to put olives on hers.
10. Jan’s kite soared higher than Mimi’s model airplane flew.

EXERCISE B
11. AC
12. PP
13. PP
14. AC
15. AC

The Noun Clause, p. 108

EXERCISE A
1. The film told us about what we should do in the case of an earthquake.
2. That some tapeworms grow to lengths of more than one hundred feet seems incredible.
3. No one could explain what had happened to all of the treasure.
4. Leuwana sent whoever asked her for one a postcard from Puerto Rico.
5. The ending of the book is not what I had expected.

EXERCISE B
6. That the referee called a technical foul caused an uproar among the fans.
7. The guest speaker told us what could be done about acid rain.
8. The number of commercials during a television program is what annoys me most.
9. The cafeteria worker gave whoever asked for more pasta another generous helping.
10. Whatever happens at the Super Bowl will be seen by millions of people.
11. Please do not tell me how the movie ends.
12. That the storm caused some damage is an understatement.
13. The ship’s captain offered whoever spotted a whale three gold coins.
14. Whatever happened to Amelia Earhart’s airplane remains a mystery.
15. Tsang Ying is reading a book about what happened to the bison of North America.

Adjective, Adverb, and Noun Clauses A, p. 109

EXERCISE
1. Jeri, who learned to dance from her grandmother, taught us the Charleston.
2. Because her favorite program was on, Stacy wanted to stay home.
3. Any author whose books make the best-seller list is likely to make a lot of money.
4. Whoever spilled the mustard all over the floor should clean it up.
5. Esai rode his bicycle whenever he had errands to run.
6. This is the garden where we grow tomatoes.
7. He told his story to whoever would listen.
8. Mother explained why we should change the oil in the car.
9. If we want to get to the game on time, we should leave now.
10. The play on which the film is based is quite good.

Adjective, Adverb, and Noun Clauses B, p. 110

Exercise
1. He rode his bicycle wherever he wanted to go.
2. The poet to whom she is referring is Robert Frost.
3. Whatever you want to do tonight is okay with me.
4. He is the artist whose sculptures are placed in the courtyard.
5. As soon as she got home from the library, she started the book.
6. Ernesto studied hard so that he could pass the sergeant’s exam.
7. We often visited Dr. Ito on Sunday evenings, when he usually cooked a traditional Japanese meal.
8. At last, Carla remembered what she had meant to say before.
9. Because he had a cold that evening, Stevie missed the premiere of the film.
10. The hostess gave whoever came to the party a paper hat and a noisemaker.

Review A: The Clause, p. 111

Exercise A
1. The dog acted as if it understood French.
2. As the others watched the parade on television, Jim went into the bedroom and took a nap.
3. The athlete whose face is on the cover of the magazine retired from the game recently.
4. We should ask Peter whether he knows Mr. Mugabe.
5. This year the town was prepared for tornado season because of the disaster last year.
6. Dario folded the towels so that they would fit in the cupboard.
7. Bob, who is my favorite cousin, will be attending West Point in the fall.
8. We were surprised when we found the cat playing happily with the dog.
10. After the explorers arrived at the top of the mountain, they took each other’s picture.

Exercise B
11. The relatives whom Christopher visited last week are friendly and generous.
12. Divers wear masks so that they can see underwater.
13. The traveler was grateful to whoever put up the road sign.
14. A person whose temperature rises above 102°F Fahrenheit should see a doctor.
15. Is this the time when you usually go to lunch?
16. Until the pool is cleaned, no one is allowed to swim in it.
17. No one has proved the existence of the Loch Ness monster, although many people believe in its existence.

18. You can send whomever you choose a card for Valentine’s Day.

19. If the earth’s climate grows warmer, sea levels will rise, and crops will fail.

20. What actually happened to my baseball glove is anyone’s guess.

**Review B: The Clause, p. 112**

**EXERCISE A**

1. S—N
2. S—ADJ
3. S—ADJ
4. I
5. S—ADV
6. S—N
7. S—ADJ
8. S—ADJ
9. S—N
10. I

**EXERCISE B**

11. Until plastic wrap was invented, most people used paper.

12. One mountain that is almost as tall as Mount Everest is K2.

13. Every day, the senator rides the train that runs from Delaware to Washington, D.C.

14. Bronze is what is created by mixing copper and tin.

15. Diamonds are rare although they are made of the widely distributed element carbon.

16. That decade was a time when great strides in civil rights were made.

17. Liang felt as if she had not slept in several days.

18. Mr. Martinez set his daughter on his shoulders so that she could watch the parade.

19. Maryland is one state where a person can find plenty of fresh seafood.

20. Ms. Desai reviewed with her students what they should study for the test.

**Review C: The Clause, p. 113**

**EXERCISE A**

1. SUB—N
2. SUB—ADV
3. IND
4. SUB—ADJ
5. SUB—N
6. SUB—ADV
7. SUB—ADJ
8. IND
9. SUB—N
10. IND

**EXERCISE B**

11. Since she was going downtown anyway, Clare offered to pick up the milk.

12. We decided to watch whatever Diego brought back from the video store.

13. Before he drove into the carwash, he rolled up all the windows.

14. The painting that had hung in the waiting room was now hanging in the doctor’s office.

15. Ms. Johannsen stops at her uncle’s house whenever she is in Portland.

16. What the butler saw was a matter of debate for weeks.

17. The CD, which had rolled across the carpet, came to rest against the cat.

18. Is she the singer for whom the song was written?

19. Although I had read Moby-Dick recently, I could not remember the narrator’s name.

20. Our dog will eat whatever we put in front of her.
Chapter 7: Sentence Structure, pp. 114–123

Simple Sentences, p. 114

**EXERCISE A**

1. Sally and Anne both take music lessons weekly.

2. I climbed that oak tree and swam in the creek.

3. Steve helped Roseanne with the puzzle and then washed the dishes.

4. The parrot said “Cat for sale” and flapped its wings.

5. All of a sudden, Dale and Amy burst into the room and grabbed the water jug.

6. In April the company will increase its profits.

7. Kim and Ted will go to Africa with Jade and photograph wildlife.

8. Both the painting and the sketch show the meadow in the morning.

9. This one and that one will be sold at auction tomorrow.

10. After all of the hurry and bustle, a week or two at the beach sounded wonderful.

**EXERCISE B**

Answers will vary widely but should all be simple sentences. Sample responses are given.

11. We yawned and snuggled more deeply into our sleeping bags.

12. The smell of coffee lured us out of our tents.

13. Jake and Tani stirred the campfire and put the cobbler on to bake.

14. Soon all of the campers were eating breakfast and chatting about the day ahead.

15. After cleaning up breakfast, we struck camp and hit the trail.

**Compound Sentences, p. 115**

**EXERCISE**

1. I fear all kinds of wild creatures, but the family very kindly did not tease me about my apprehensions.

2. The family’s black Labrador retriever evidently shared my fears, for he joined me in the tent.

3. In the middle of the night, I awoke to a strange sound; I immediately became frightened.

4. I was alone in the tent, for the dog had left me.

5. Suddenly, the dog bounded into the tent, and within seconds the tent collapsed on top of us both!

6. The noise awoke the others, and I felt embarrassed!

7. Luisa crawled out of her sleeping bag, and together we pitched the tent again.

8. Then, Luisa returned to her sleeping bag, and I lay down on my cot in the tent.

9. Later that night, it rained, so the Ortegas ran to the tent.

10. I, along with the dog, remained dry; however, the Ortegas, in their scramble to the tent, were drenched!

**Simple Sentence or Compound Sentence?** p. 116

**EXERCISE**

1. I hurried over to Michael’s house and met Rafiq on the way.

2. The lightning struck the radio towers on the hill several times but did not damage them.
3. **Cd**—The blinking light grew dim, and then it flashed several times.

4. **Cd**—The gulls circle the fishing boat; they are hoping for a quick meal.

5. **S**—The purple lantana and the red salvia look pretty and attract both bees and butterflies.

6. **Cd**—After school I feed the rabbits, and Kris looks after the guinea pigs.

7. **S**—In the evening the Korean restaurant opens and welcomes crowds of hungry diners.

8. **S**—Patty and Carla are throwing Hilton a surprise party in their big backyard sometime next weekend.

9. **Cd**—The crab scuttled quickly into the water, for it saw a heron nearby.

10. **Cd**—I left, but Marcy stayed.

**Complex Sentences, p. 117**

**EXERCISE**

1. **S V**—Pilar looked for tiny fish and snails where the pond was shallow.

2. **S V**—As she watched the fish and snails, she thought about a career in marine biology.

3. **S V**—Her career plans had been all that she could think about since the Science Club took a field trip to a well-known oceanographic center.

4. **S V**—Because the center was on a quiet shoreline, the scientists could study hundreds of forms of marine life.

5. **S V**—Some students who had gone to the center last year had snorkeled around the tide pools.

6. **S V**—Pilar became interested in Scripps Institution of Oceanography, which is a well-known oceanographic institute in San Diego, California.

7. **S V**—Because her school computer had Internet access, Pilar could learn more about Scripps and marine biology.

8. **S V**—First, she learned about research ships and their equipment when she looked at the Scripps Web site.

9. **S V**—After she read an interview with a marine biologist, Pilar felt confident that marine biology was the career for her.

10. **S V**—From the interview she learned that a marine biologist should have a good education, care about the environment, and enjoy travel.

**Compound Sentence or Complex Sentence? p. 118**

**EXERCISE**

1. **Cd**—Iowa is not near any oceans, but the Mississippi River makes up its eastern border.

2. **Cd**—On the west coast, California borders Mexico, and Washington borders Canada.

3. **Cx**—Hawaii is the only state that does not lie on the North American mainland.

4. **Cx**—I learned that the northernmost state is Alaska.

5. **Cd**—Texas is quite big, but Alaska is bigger.

6. **Cx**—If you visit Death Valley in California, you will be 282 feet below sea level.

7. **Cd**—The longest river in the United States is the Missouri River; the largest lake in the United States is Lake Michigan.
8. *Cx—Michigan, which resembles a mitten, sits between Lake Michigan and Lake Huron.*

9. *Cd—I looked at a map, and then I showed Dana my home state.*

10. *Cx—Dana lived in Canada before her family moved to New York, where her mother taught English.*

**Compound-Complex Sentences, p. 119**

**Exercise**

1. *Cece went to Chile during the winter vacation, but her older brother stayed home because he had made plans with some friends.*

2. *When Mr. Tolstoi entered the United States, he knew only a few words of English, but his wife was fluent in the language.*

3. *The two young men avoided injuries because they had worn their seatbelts, but the driver of the other car was not as fortunate.*

4. *Vegetarians, who do not eat meat, should watch their diets; they should eat nutritionally balanced meals.*

5. *Although both were tired, Ahnawake went to her soccer practice, and Carl went to his piano lesson.*

6. *The two dogs barked at each other constantly until the sun rose; consequently, none of us got much sleep last night.*

7. *You should shut the gate whenever you leave the backyard; otherwise, the dogs may get out.*

8. *When we went to the science museum, we attended a lecture on electricity; after the lecture, we visited some of the exhibits.*

9. *As we left the library, the rain pelted down, so we rushed back inside.*

10. *Aunt Eudora was born in Nashville, but when she was five years old, she and her family moved to Memphis, where she lived for the rest of her life.*

**Complex or Compound-Complex? p. 120**

**Exercise**

1. *Cx—A gem is a mineral or other material that is used in jewelry and other ornaments.*

2. *Cd-Cx—Some of the gems that you see are natural; others are artificial.*

3. *Cx—Laney said that scientists can make sapphires, rubies, and emeralds in laboratories.*

4. *Cx—Some gems occur in igneous rock, which forms when hot, molten material cools.*

5. *Cd-Cx—Other gems occur in metamorphic rock, which forms under great heat and pressure; still others occur in sedimentary rock, which typically forms when water, wind, or ice deposits sand, gravel, and other materials.*

6. *Cd-Cx—I asked Mr. Catalano whether pearls are made by oysters, and he said yes.*

7. *Cx—When light travels through a well-cut diamond, the diamond glitters with different colors.*

8. *Cx—The type of gem cut that is called the brilliant cut has fifty-eight facets.*

9. *Cd-Cx—Diamonds are very valuable because they are very durable and brilliant, but some emeralds are even more valuable.*

10. *Cx—Perhaps the most beautiful of all pearls is La Pellegrina, which is from India.*
Review A: Classifying Sentences According to Structure, p. 121

EXERCISE A

1. **Cd**—Suspense novels are extremely popular, and many readers especially enjoy those by Agatha Christie.

2. **S**—Christie’s first detective novel was *The Mysterious Affair at Styles*.

3. **Cx**—Hercule Poirot, who is perhaps her most famous character, is the Belgian detective who solves the murder cases in many of her books.

4. **Cx**—In *Murder on the Orient Express*, Poirot expertly interrogates many of the passengers on the train before he solves the case.

5. **S**—Miss Marple, another detective of Christie’s, is my favorite character.

6. **Cx**—My introduction to Miss Marple came when I read *The Body in the Library*.

7. **Cd**—In this mystery several people are suspects, for each has a possible motive, but Miss Marple sets an ingenious trap for the murderer.

8. **Cd-Cx**—When I visited England last summer, I saw *The Mousetrap*, a suspense play by Christie, and I also toured her home in Devon.

9. **Cx**—Because the clues in *The Mousetrap* were so well hidden, the ending surprised nearly everyone in the audience.

10. **Cd**—Currently, I am reading *Death on the Nile*; I have not seen the movie yet.

EXERCISE B

11. **Cx**

12. **Cd-Cx**

13. **S**

14. **Cd**

15. **Cx**

Review B: Classifying Sentences According to Structure, p. 122

EXERCISE A

1. **Cd-Cx**—If you are a surfer, you may enjoy skateboarding, for the sport is similar to surfing.

2. **Cd**—Some skateboards are made from wood; others are made from plastic or fiberglass.

3. **Cd-Cx**—At first, skateboards had roller-skate wheels, but today’s boards have special wheels that are much easier to control.

4. **S**—I bought an inexpensive skateboard and customized it.

5. **Cx**—When the skater shifts his or her weight, the board turns.

6. **S**—My brother taught me how to skate.

7. **Cd**—Some skaters practice every day, but I practice only on the weekends.

8. **Cx**—When you skate, you should wear kneepads, elbow pads, and a helmet.

9. **Cd**—Schools in my area often sponsor contests for skateboarders; in fact, Lakeside Middle School is holding a contest this Saturday.

10. **Cd-Cx**—I will not compete in the contest, but I will watch my brother as he competes.

EXERCISE B

11. **Cd**

12. **Cx**

13. **S**

14. **Cd-Cx**

15. **Cx**
Review C: Classifying Sentences According to Structure, p. 123

EXERCISE
Answers will vary widely but should include examples of all four sentence types. Sample responses are given.

1. Simple—Summer fruits are my favorites.
2. Complex—When the weather warms up, prices on strawberries and melons come down.
3. Compound—The ripe fruits wait on the market shelves, and I take my time choosing the best ones.
4. Simple—Watermelon is my very favorite.
5. Compound-Complex—Whether they are red or yellow, seeded or seedless, watermelons tempt me every time I shop, and I usually leave the store with one in my basket.
6. Simple—On the other hand, berries are a nice treat, too.
7. Complex—Because blackberries ripen early, I buy them in May and June.
8. Compound—Once I hiked along a river in Colorado, and ripe mountain raspberries were growing on vines all around.
9. Simple—How pleasant it was to pick and eat them right from the vine!
10. Complex—Just as summer ends, the sweet Red Jim nectarines come into season for a final treat.
Chapter 8: Agreement, pp. 124–145

Subject-Verb Agreement A, p. 124

**EXERCISE A**

1. cases—P  
2. us—P  
3. clock—S  
4. book—S  
5. pencil—S  
6. stereos—P  
7. them—P  
8. wish—S  
9. mice—P  
10. knuckle—S  
11. feet—P  
12. she—S  
13. few—P  
14. spoons—P  
15. pin—S  
16. lemon—S  
17. plate—S  
18. tribes—P  
19. shelves—P  
20. yam—S

**EXERCISE B**

21. persons [or people]  
22. dentists  
23. cups  
24. audiences  
25. reporters  
26. hawks  
27. actors  
28. cows  
29. scientists  
30. potatoes

Subject-Verb Agreement B, p. 125

**EXERCISE A**

Item 6—If a student interprets the collective noun audience as signifying individual members of a group, you may wish to accept start.

1. likes 6. starts  
2. enjoys 7. prefers  
3. was 8. are  
4. has 9. ask  
5. Is 10. is

**EXERCISE B**

11. has 14. have  
12. is 15. does 13. Does

Subject-Verb Agreement C, p. 126

**EXERCISE A**

1. carry 6. declares  
2. includes 7. is  
3. make 8. were  
4. is 9. were  
5. draws 10. echoes

**EXERCISE B**

11. The students in my karate class (watch, watches) carefully whenever the instructor demonstrates a move.
12. The jar of lima beans was, were stored in the coolest section of the cellar.
13. The birthday cards that I received this year is, are mostly from out of town.
14. The two men who both work the third shift at the police department, sleep, sleeps during the day.
15. The judges on the panel decide, decides which skaters will continue to the semifinals.

Subject-Verb Agreement D, p. 127

**EXERCISE**

1. Something about the candidate’s answers has, have been bothering me ever since the debate.
2. Both of the dogs has, have already been treated for heartworm.
3. All of the stuff in the attic need, needs to be dusted before the yard sale.
4. Neither of the movies is, are very good.
5. (Have, Has) not several of these dogs already won awards?
6. Everybody who is registered for the class read, reads the same books.
7. No one in the play was, were prepared for the overwhelming response of the audience on opening night.
8. (Is, Are) any of the dough ready to be baked?
9. The director is pleased that more of the singers have, has memorized the score for this rehearsal than for the last rehearsal.
10. Somebody among the reporters covering the trial (is, are) getting inside information from the district attorney.

Subject-Verb Agreement E, p. 128
EXERCISE
1. Few of the world’s sharks (grows, grow) to be sixty feet long.
2. One of the most interesting sharks (is, are) the whale shark.
3. Each of a whale shark’s eggs (is, are) quite large.
4. “(Has, Have) anyone here ever seen a whale shark’s egg?” asked the tour guide.
5. None of the sharks (swims, swim) toward the visitors.
6. Some of the other sea creatures (is, are) frightening, too.
7. Many of the visitors (screams, scream).
8. Few of us (has, have) seen a giant jellyfish before.
9. Several of the park’s divers (follows, follow) a manta ray.
10. Everyone in our class (seems, seem) to be having a good time at the ocean park.

Subject-Verb Agreement F, p. 129
EXERCISE
1. Plants and flowers (is, are) featured on the cover of this book about Carver’s life.
2. The author and illustrator of the book (is, are) the same person.
3. According to the book, grief and sorrow (was, were) part of Carver’s early life.
4. Neither his mother nor his father (was, were) alive to raise Carver.
5. At the time, slaveholding and slave trading (was, were) widespread.
6. Neither Carver nor many other African Americans (was, were) able to find a college that would enroll them.
7. Neither the large universities nor the local college (was, were) accepting applications from African Americans.
8. Just laws and the strict enforcement of them (was, were) needed.
9. Also described in the book (is, are) Carver’s experiments and discoveries.
10. An innovative educator and scientist (was, were) George Washington Carver.

Subject-Verb Agreement G, p. 130
EXERCISE A
1. are 6. Do
2. are 7. were
3. Have 8. are
4. There is 9. do
5. is 10. are

EXERCISE B
11. (Are, Is) your little brother a finalist in the state gymnastics tournament?
12. (There’s, There are) over forty species of birds that pass through my backyard.
13. How (do, does) bees make honey?
14. Here (lie, lies) the ruins of the colony.
15. When (is, are) your cousins from Guatemala coming to visit?
16. (Do, Does) anyone here have change for a twenty-dollar bill?
17. There (was, were) no excuses for what Dudley had done.
18. What do the Andersons want to know about the school system?

19. Has someone told you the rules of our game?

20. Here are Amy and her sisters!

Subject-Verb Agreement H, p. 131

Exercise A

1. don’t
2. don’t
3. Don’t
4. don’t
5. doesn’t

Exercise B

11. doesn’t
12. Doesn’t
13. doesn’t
14. doesn’t
15. doesn’t

Subject-Verb Agreement I, p. 132

Exercise A

1. practice
2. travels
3. decides
4. grazes
5. holds

Exercise B

11. bicker
12. have
13. present

Subject-Verb Agreement J, p. 133

Exercise A

1. was
2. is
3. were
4. seems
5. were

Exercise B

11. were
12. is
13. Is

Subject-Verb Agreement K, p. 134

Exercise A

1. is
2. is
3. is
4. Is
5. seems

Exercise B

11. are
12. are
13. is

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement A, p. 135

Exercise

Some answers may vary.

1. Mary Ellen took ______ dog for a walk after dinner.
2. One of the men bent to pick up ______ tools.
3. Somebody left ______ books on the lawn last night.
4. Sean said that ______ was too tired to come with us to the movies.
5. Out of sheer boredom, the ______ chased ______ own tail.
6. Stanley went up to ______ room to do the homework assignment.
7. Miranda hung the diploma on the wall of ______ bedroom.
8. Each of the girls on the soccer team received ______ own jersey yesterday.
9. As the sun set, the ______ cast ______ shadow across the desert.
10. Pick up the frying pan and bring ______ to me, please.
11. We stayed awake to watch the film until ______ was over.
12. If your sister gets here after I leave, tell her I left a casserole in the fridge.

13. Neither of the boys remembered where his baseball glove was.

14. That afternoon Uncle Oliver told us stories about his experiences in Vietnam.

15. Either of the men is willing to tell you what he saw at the accident scene.

16. Emily Dickinson often gave her poems away as gifts to neighbors.

17. Everybody at the office put flowers in his or her cubicle.

18. The author of The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn changed his name from Samuel Clemens to Mark Twain.

19. Each of the nuns lifted her hand to make the sign of the cross.

20. Someone hung his or her wet towel over the shower curtain.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement B, p. 136

Exercise A

1. When we’re playing tennis, my brother and I never let the other players intimidate us.

2. Either Jason or Raul will bring his tool kit to the bicycle race.

3. Brenda and Caitlin told us that they didn’t plan to come to the party.

4. If either Brittany or Celine wants to be a successful writer, she will need to work hard.

5. Leora and Annette pooled their resources to buy a birthday present for Jim.

6. Please ask Glendon and Maria if their science fair project is ready yet.

7. Did Lauryn or Marian say if she was going to the mock trial?

8. Karen and I discussed our difference of opinion quite calmly.

9. Frank and Tina would like the class to help them set up their display.

10. Let Kathryn and Michael know in advance if they should bring a dish to the party.

Exercise B

11. Julio and Spike have brought all of his CDs to the dance.

12. Neither Faith nor Deanna knew where her bicycle was.

13. Is Melissa or Martina sure they won’t join us?

14. Let’s ask Antonia and Belle if she read the Harry Potter books.

15. Does Dutch or Pike have their notebook with him?

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement C, p. 137

Exercise

1. Some of the CDs have lost their jewel cases.

2. Few of the women’s soccer team enjoyed her stay in Helsinki.

3. Either of the brothers is willing to bring his baseball glove to the game.

4. Hasn’t anybody announced their intentions yet?

5. Many of the reporters do his or her own research.

6. All of the rosebushes in the garden have thorns on it.
7. Everyone in the class is aware of their responsibility to bring a note from home.

8. Someone on the swimming team left their goggles by the side of the pool.

9. Several of the boys joined the military after he graduated from high school.

10. Some of the people in the audience got the joke, and they laughed heartily.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement D, p. 138

EXERCISE

1. Each of my sisters has her own pogo stick.

2. None of the employees should reveal their password to anyone.

3. Everything the teacher said made sense the moment he said it.

4. Both of the astronomical calendars have the same nebula on their covers.

5. Several of the police officers spent their holidays volunteering at the new community center.

6. If you have anything to say during the debate, please say it as succinctly as possible.

7. Neither of my grandmothers has ever revealed her secret for making jambalaya.

8. More of the palm trees have been planted this year because they look so striking along the beach.

9. One of the male interns put his clipboard down to pick up the baby.

10. Most of the radio program was written by Marta, but a few minutes of it were written by Tish.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement E, p. 139

EXERCISE A

Some answers may vary.

1. The thundering herd left a wide swath of flattened grass in its, their wake.

2. As the team entered the lobby, the fans began to ask for its, their autographs.

3. After debating all of its, their options, the President’s commission issued its report.

4. The readership of the newspaper were not shy about making its, their opinions known.

5. The jury could not agree among itself, themselves what to order for lunch.

6. During the intermission, the ensemble tuned its, their instruments.

7. The majority of the class took its, their work home that night.

8. The Fantasy Society voted The Lord of the Rings its, their choice for Book of the Century.

9. The cast of the play took its, their curtain calls one at a time.

10. The crowd voted with its, their feet and left the debate early.

EXERCISE B

11. The troupe of actors looked good in their costumes.

12. The entire staff lined up in the parking lot to have its picture taken.

13. The committee cannot even agree among themselves.

14. After a fierce battle, the platoon took its position at the top of the ridge.
15. After winning, the team posed for photographs with their ecstatic fans.

**Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement F, p. 140**

**EXERCISE A**

1. If I make fifty dollars from the carwash this weekend, I can use (it, them) to put a down payment on a bicycle.
2. After Luther oiled the shears (it, they) were ready to use again.
3. Michiko poured the molasses and watched (it, them) cover the bottom of the pan.
4. Now that you’ve heard the news, do you think (it, they) will affect how you vote?
5. If you want to go to the Olympics you have to train for (it, them).
6. Sue had three dollars in her wallet, but now one of (it, them) is missing.
7. Vera dropped the pliers in the grass, and then spent an hour looking for (it, them).
8. Mathematics was more than an interest for Leora; (it, they) became a passion.
9. Roxanne decided not to wear her shorts because (it, they) had become threadbare.
10. He had only seventy-five cents; would (it, them) be enough to pay for the juice?

**EXERCISE B**

Item 12 may be considered correct as written.

11. Francesca decided to take civics because she could fit it into her schedule.
12. Malik managed to avoid getting measles even though everyone he knew had them.
13. Take the binoculars out of its case, please.
14. Did you hear the news? Could they be any worse?
15. Of all the pants you could have worn, that could be the worst.

**Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement G, p. 141**

**EXERCISE**

1. Discount Appliances used to be located on Burnet Avenue; they stood where a beautiful orchard used to grow.
2. C
3. After Tranh was assigned to read Great Expectations, the Charles Dickens masterpiece, he managed to finish them over the weekend.
4. C
5. The Sons of the Desert, devoted to the comic films of Laurel and Hardy, was founded in 1964, and my grandfather has been a member of them since 1967.
6. After I read “Flowers for Algernon,” I found out that Hollywood has adapted them for the movies twice.
7. As you read T. S. Eliot’s “The Hollow Men,” consider the effect of them on your imagination.
8. Jacques Offenbach never completed his opera The Tales of Hoffmann; Ernest Guiraud finished them after Offenbach’s death.
9. When you come to the Narrows, where so many ships have gone down, go around them.
10. C

**Review A: Subject-Verb Agreement, p. 142**

**EXERCISE A**

1. My shoes and my shirtlies at the end of the bed.
2. Either Dr. Chen or Dr. Montoya plans to perform the operation.
3. Does someone who has read the books have something to say?
4. The flock {have, has}
5. Afternoons {are, do}
6. The officers of the Forest Service {doesn’t, don’t} approve of campfires during a drought.
7. Gymnastics {is, are} electronics
8. Students {are, have}
9. Most of the horses {grazes, graze} in the upper pasture during the summertime.
10. Both of the flute players {hope, hopes} to audition for the first chair in the orchestra.

**EXERCISE B**

11. Neither Jay nor Sonya {is, are} going to the folk festival this year.
12. Each of the children {has, have} gone to bed by now.
13. Anyone who listens to the singer’s music {has, have} to get up and dance.
14. Our cat Conrad and our dog Padgett {like, likes} to sleep on the bed.
15. Katherine told me that the League of Women Voters {is, are} sponsoring a debate between the two candidates this Wednesday.
16. All of my aunts and uncles {remember, remembers} when my grandmother’s birthday is.
17. {Doesn’t, Don’t} most people in our town recycle their bottles and cans?
18. Either of the girls {is, are} happy to help you rake your lawn.
19. When {is, are} the football team scheduled to play Reed City?
20. Enrique told me that he {doesn’t, don’t} care for okra.

**Review B: Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement, p. 143**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Many of the science fair contestants have brought {his or her, his} own equipment.
2. One of the girls has gotten mud all over {their, her} shoes.
3. Every member of the class brought {their, his} own pencil to the test on Friday.
4. Either Sergio or Michael will need to bring {their, his} boombox to the party.
5. No one in the family remembered to bring {their, his or her} key to the cabin by the lake.
6. Aren’t all of your uncles taking a fishing pole with {him, their} on vacation?
7. A few of the students told {his or her, their} parents about the pop quiz on Friday.
8. Each of the kittens cried for {their, its} mother.
9. One of the young women was certain that {the, their} award for Best Class Song was going to {them, their}.
10. Some of the books showed Princess Diana on {its, their} covers.

**EXERCISE B**

11. *The Barretts of Wimpole Street* {is, are} my mother’s favorite film; she has seen {it, them} several times.
12. The cast of the play decided to have a party after {its, their} last performance.
13. One of the ships was able to unload most of {its, their} cargo before the hurricane struck.
14. The Center for South and Southeast Asian Studies will publish Professor Becker’s book as part of {its, their} publication series.
15. Having mastered electronics, Judith is very good at explaining {it, them} to the class.
16. Have you ever wondered why birds resting on a branch or a telephone wire tuck *(its, their)* heads under their wings during a storm?

17. The council didn’t get to *(its, their)* final vote until nine o’clock that night.

18. Someone from the boys’ basketball team left *(his, their)* shoes on the bench.

19. Those young women will carry *(her, their)* own luggage onto the plane.

20. Neither of the girls can tell me where *(her, their)* sleeping bag is.

**Review C: Agreement, p. 144**

**EXERCISE A**

1. The sound of all these birds echo all around the courtyard.

2. Economics seems like a difficult subject to some people.

3. Fifteen feet of rope were necessary to secure the boat to the dock.

4. Moving with one mind, the crowd surge toward the stage.

5. Don’t he know which way he’s going?

6. Where *(is, are)* the books that I left on the kitchen counter?

7. *(C)*

8. Everybody who contributed to the charities are welcome at the annual dinner.

9. About ten percent of the furniture are sitting in a warehouse.

10. *(C)*

**Exercise B**

11. Mikki has saved fifty dollars; she plans to use it *(them)* to buy a present.

12. As soon as we heard the news from France, we passed *(it)* along to our friends at home.

13. After seeing the film *(Darby O’Gill and the Little People)*, Declan recommended *(her, them)* to his brother.

14. Candace or Melanie will bring *(her, their)* soccer ball to the championship match.

15. *(C)*

16. No one who has ever seen Angkor Wat will ever forget *(its, their)* first impression of it.

17. We heard that some of the boys’ ski team are bringing *(his, their)* own skis.

18. *(C)*

19. After you’re done with the binoculars, please put it *(them)* back in the case.

20. The jury debated the verdict among *(it, them)*.

**Review D: Agreement, p. 145**

**Exercise**

1. Nicoletta or Jacqueline will present *(her, their)* book report to the class tomorrow.

2. Everybody in our classes were informed in advance about the change in schedule.

3. Some of the best paintings are next door; let’s look at it *(them)* first.

4. Here *(is, are)* the books you ordered online, Ms. Shimeda.

5. Each of the priests spoke to *(his, her, their)* own congregation.

6. Some of the groceries already have been placed in the pantry.

7. Either the players or the coach call timeout.

8. A theater and a rehearsal room was added to the high school last year.
9. Everyone who completed their project on time was rewarded with a bright, shiny apple.

10. Nobody in the caravan was paying attention when the camel went astray.

11. The Cho family will take their vacation this year in Thailand.

12. When the shears were broken, Eric found time to repair them.

13. Does the dog and cat get along?

14. Macaroni and cheese are my favorite dish.

15. If you spill all of the cereal, make sure to clean it up.

16. Neither Uncle Lyle nor Uncle Tector remembered where their boots were.

17. The presence of thousands of peacekeeping troops assures the villagers of their safety.

18. When presented with a legal summons, a citizen has an obligation to respond to it.

19. We will listen to half of Nights in the Garden of Spain this morning, and we will hear the rest of it this afternoon.

20. Neither the students nor the players is liable to forget the homecoming game.
Chapter 9: Using Verbs Correctly, pp. 146–163

The Principal Parts of Verbs, p. 146

**EXERCISE**

1. Let’s sing another song.
2. He has heard about the failed experiment.
3. Indira left for Africa late Sunday afternoon.
4. The ducks have been paddling around on the surface of the lake.
5. I understood the speech, but I didn’t agree with it.
6. Jonathan had been to England once before.
7. In the morning, the eagle’s eggs hatched.
8. Will you help Gina clean the kitchen, please?
9. The helicopters have landed next to the soccer field.
10. To save money, I am trying to buy fast food less often.
11. Is it true that she made them leave early?
12. The sun has set already, hasn’t it?
13. Suddenly, the snake slithered quietly away.
14. The Ferris wheel is slowly coming to a halt.
15. Astonished by the crowds, we stood in a doorway and waited.
16. Cynthia, have you ever seen a morning glory open?
17. The goalie leaped into the air and grabbed the ball.
18. I hope the guards let us get close enough to see the queen.
19. After they had swept, they carried out the recycling.
20. I thought you were singing in tonight’s performance, Mikki.

**Regular Verbs, p. 147**

**EXERCISE**

1. talked
2. supposed
3. landed
4. named
5. enjoyed
6. considered
7. closed
8. opened
9. pleased
10. stayed
11. predicted
12. watched
13. roared
14. cheered
15. waited
16. gained
17. promised
18. walked
19. returned
20. expected

**Irregular Verbs A, p. 148**

**EXERCISE**

1. blown
2. came
3. bit
4. eaten
5. become
6. broken
7. brought
8. begun
9. burst
10. bought
11. cut
12. chose
13. built
14. cost
15. caught
16. fallen
17. drawn
18. drove
19. drunk
20. did

**Irregular Verbs B, p. 149**

**EXERCISE**

1. forgiven
2. fought
3. hit
4. flown
5. felt
6. frozen
7. gone
8. given
9. led
10. grew
11. hurt
12. heard
13. hid
14. found
15. held
16. had
17. kept
18. known
19. laid
20. got
Irregular Verbs C, p. 150

**EXERCISE**

1. shaken
2. lit [or lighted]
3. lost
4. rode
5. met
6. paid
7. put
8. made
9. read
10. run
11. rose
12. sold
13. said
14. run
15. sought
16. saw
17. sent
18. set
19. lain
20. sang

Irregular Verbs D, p. 151

**EXERCISE**

1. sunk
2. sat
3. spoken
4. spent
5. spun
6. spread
7. stood
8. stolen
9. swum
10. swung
11. taken
12. taught
13. tore
14. told
15. thought
16. thrown
17. wore
18. won
19. sank [or sunk]
20. sat

Irregular Verbs E, p. 152

**EXERCISE**

1. begun
2. burst
3. chose
4. cost
5. drunk
6. ate
7. given
8. gone
9. known
10. lay
11. led
12. laid
13. lent
14. rang
15. run
16. saw
17. swung
18. wore
19. were
20. risen

Tense, p. 153

**EXERCISE**

1. The Reigers have moved to San Antonio, Texas.
2. I run three miles every day after school.
3. Today, we will be meeting the President of the United States.
4. We climbed Mount Monadnock.
5. As of next Thursday, you will have been a United States citizen for one year.
6. I have written to my congresswoman about the homeless people in our town.
7. Beatrice had spent the summer with her favorite cousin.
8. Sara Luisa is now living in Lima, Peru.
9. By next Friday, we shall have finished the construction of the set for the new play.
10. By then, the orchestra had already learned the new piece of music.
11. Has the waiter brought your water yet?
12. Nicci will be attending music camp this summer.
13. The author had published her first book at the age of twenty-four.
14. Next year, the wax museum will have been open for two hundred years.
15. I enjoy fresh orange juice every morning.
16. Will the composer be present for the concert?
17. The pilot flew to fifteen cities in three days.
18. We had sent the package by airmail.
19. I have never heard of that film.
20. By the end of the month, I will have been here six months.
Consistency of Tense, p. 154

EXERCISE
1. C 11. C
2. C 12. sat
3. was 13. C
4. C 14. took
5. hugged 15. C
6. saw 16. C
7. C 17. spent
8. C 18. C
9. walked 19. C
10. C 20. were

Active and Passive Voice, p. 155

EXERCISE
1. AV 8. AV 15. PV
2. PV 9. PV 16. PV
3. AV 10. AV 17. PV
4. AV 11. PV 18. AV
5. AV 12. AV 19. PV
6. PV 13. PV 20. AV
7. AV

Sit and Set, p. 156

EXERCISE
1. Set that bowl of noodles over there, please.
2. Will you three sit down for a minute or two?
3. Yesterday morning, I set the papers on that ledge.
4. Off and on last week, the cardinal sat on the bird feeder and sang.
5. Are you setting the tomatoes on the windowsill to ripen?
6. Is Joe sitting next to the radiator, Wanda?
7. The two old benches had sat on the front porch for about twenty years.
8. Have you set the Easter eggs in the dye bath?
9. We usually sit here to wait for the election results.
10. Set your piggy bank in a place where you’ll remember to drop coins into it.
11. The newspaper sat on the table all afternoon last Sunday.
12. Has the student set down her pencil yet?
13. Is the pencil sitting on the desk?
14. How long has the dog been sitting there?
15. They both sat down on the stage and took off their shoes.
16. I grabbed the book and set it next to my backpack.
17. The bicycle pump had sat in the garage for years without anyone using it.
18. He has set the signal flare where we can see it.
19. Nigel was setting the dishes in the cabinet when you startled him.
20. Have Sarah and Laney sat on the new sofa?

Lie and Lay, p. 157

EXERCISE
1. Lay that quilt in the cedar chest.
2. Is it lying there now?
3. She laid the ring on top of the dresser.
4. The emerald ring lay at the back of the drawer where nobody could find it.
5. Have your slippers been lying next to the fireplace?
6. Has our dog Banjo **laid** your slippers next to the fireplace?

7. Yesterday I **laid** the report on your desk.

8. It has **lain** on your desk since then.

9. Use sunscreen when you are **lying** in the sun.

10. We had **lain** in the sun too long.

11. Will you **lie** there all morning?

12. Will you **lay** your work down?

13. San Antonio **lies** southwest of Austin.

14. The map shows where the ghost town once **lay**.

15. After lunch today I was sleepy, so I **lay** down for a nap.

16. I **laid** down my books and went for a walk.

17. The clothes had **lain** out where the cat could lie on them.

18. Are you **laying** your clothes out for tomorrow?

19. **Lie** on the ground, Mike, and look up at the stars.

20. Mike had **laid** a blanket on the cold ground.

**Rise and Raise, p. 158**

**Exercise**

1. **Raise** your voice a little please.

2. Has the price **risen** recently?

3. Esther **raised** a good point at yesterday’s meeting.

4. One issue **rose** **[or rises]** in importance above all others.

5. Are those balloons **rising** very high?

6. We will **rise** early in the morning when we go camping.

7. I had **raised** the blinds so I could see who was making the noise.

8. It has been **rising** steadily since Tuesday.

9. I am slowly **raising** my eyes to look at the screen.

10. We **rose** as a group and went outside.

11. Last week Sergio **raised** the flag each morning.

12. Have you **raised** your hand?

13. After the vice president had spoken, the Congressional representative **rose** quickly to make her point.

14. Has the sun **risen** before 6:30 this month?

15. I often **raise** my binoculars to watch the elk grazing.

16. The price of fuel generally **rises** as demand increases.

17. When you **raised** that point, what did Bob say?

18. His temperature has **risen** since this afternoon.

19. I am **raising** my expectations.

20. My expectations **rise** as I see my goals more clearly.

**Six Troublesome Verbs, p. 159**

**Exercise A**

1. I had **(set, sat)** the scissors down in the kitchen.

2. The cattle had **(lain, laid)** under the oak trees for quite a while.

3. Has the price of wheat **(risen, raised)** again?

4. Has the puppy **(lain, laid)** the chew toy down yet?
5. After that, we both (sat, set) quietly and thought about the future.

6. Please do not (rise, raise) the umbrella in the house.

7. Were you (laying, lying) in the hammock?

8. Myron is (sitting, setting) colorful napkins next to the plates.

9. She (raised, rose) up and started to protest.

10. I (lay, laid) there for a while.

Exercise B

11. Sit the new trophy on the mantel with the others.

12. Our hopes for the soccer championship have raised.

13. C

14. Philip’s bicycle is laying in the middle of the driveway.

15. The stage manager had lain the props in the wrong places.

Review A: Principal Parts of Verbs, p. 160

Exercise

1. carved
2. claimed
3. been
4. danced
5. made
6. started
7. written
8. begun
9. fought
10. swum
11. drew
12. come
13. gave
14. worked
15. taught
16. sent
17. gone
18. won
19. broken
20. known

Review B: Verb Tense and Voice, p. 161

Exercise A

1. Toadstools had grown in a ring on the lawn.

2. We are going to school now.

3. I crossed my arms.

4. Will you have finished by then?

5. I shall succeed, Melinda.

6. The goldfish was swimming around the new water plant.

7. He has turned on the flashlight.

8. Jean and Nick have been taking piano lessons.

9. The volcano had erupted very suddenly.

10. Will you be there?

Review C: Six Troublesome Verbs, p. 162

Exercise

1. I quickly sat the colander down and went to see what was the matter.

2. We lay the embroidery on the table to show Grandma.

3. How high has the balloon risen?

4. C

5. The old cart has sat there for at least a year.

6. C

7. Tania is laying down to rest after work.

8. The president of the club had sat and went to the podium.

9. Please set that your cousin will see it.

10. Have the lions lain in the shade all day long?

11. Is the toad still setting near the drain?
12. I have just lain down to do some stretching.
13. The corner market has just raised its prices again.
14. Yesterday I set the flowerpot on the deck.
15. Please lie the seed packets down and come look at this tomato.
16. Are the temperatures rising?
17. All morning long last Sunday, the dog set there and looked hopefully at the back door.
18. C
19. The football set forgotten on the floor of Tony’s closet all through last summer.
20. We rose several objections to the plan.

Review D: Correct Use of Verbs, p. 163

EXERCISE A
1. The team is finishing its work now.
2. I have read The Lion, the Witch, and the Wardrobe.
3. I am called Kate by my relatives.
4. The avalanche will have destroyed the village.
5. The dye has been staining the counter.
6. I shall interview several people for the position.
7. The story was told to everyone nearby.
8. Desirée had thanked Aunt Kendra for the birthday present.
9. We have looked everywhere for the fake mustaches.
10. Danielle and Sara are leaving Muskogee.

EXERCISE B
11. I went up to Larry and tells him my name.
12. They have been asked not to make so much noise.
13. Marcel and Reginald have lead the hikers across the snowy ridge.
14. Mr. Benedict builded several houses with energy-efficient appliances.
15. The blue jay saw the cat before it pounced.
16. The king had soon forgiven the duke for his angry words.
17. Have you two set outside very long?
18. The cheetah had ran across the grassy plain.
19. I used to live in Baltimore.
20. She was laying down when the news came.
Chapter 10: Using Pronouns Correctly, pp. 164–175

Case Forms, p. 164

**EXERCISE**

1. She went to the bottom of the ocean.
2. Another diver followed her as a safety precaution.
3. The divers used hand signals to communicate underwater.
4. Near the shore, they saw a shelf of land.
5. This shelf’s name is the continental shelf.
6. A shelf can slope many fathoms under water.
7. These shelves attract explorers from around the world.
8. Scuba divers wear special equipment for exploring.
9. A diver’s mask is a window to an exciting, new world.
10. Its fit helps to ensure a safe and comfortable dive.
11. Hers is equipped with a purge valve that helps to remove water.
12. Fins increase a diver’s swimming power.
13. A snorkel is attached to the mask strap on the left side.
14. It helps a diver on the surface to conserve air.
15. When they wear scuba tanks, divers take their air supply with them.
16. We want to learn to scuba dive.
17. Mr. Jesse will teach us.
18. He teaches his classes at the city pool.
19. Our final dive, or checkout dive, would be at Lake Travis.
20. Will Tana’s soccer schedule interfere with scuba classes?

The Nominative Case, p. 165

**EXERCISE A**

1. We
2. he
3. they
4. we
5. he
6. they
7. we
8. he
9. she
10. he

**EXERCISE B**

11. Grandma and me went to a class to learn about computers.
12. After the replay, the referee said the winners were us.
13. The photographers should have been them.
14. The first to perform are we.
15. The most valuable player might have been her.

The Objective Case, p. 166

**EXERCISE A**

1. her
2. us
3. him

**EXERCISE B**

6. There are several seats between her and us.
7. Mr. Yakanura made us tempura for dinner.
8. Mr. Hinds gave Peggy and she directions.
9. She gave the CD-ROM to us.
10. When we visited China, Grandma took me to a festival.
11. Will you give her and I your e-mail address?
12. We played against the Raiders and them at the end of the season.
13. Will our class send him a get-well card?
14. The soothing piano music calmed she and I.
15. For he and I, Ms. Tompkins drew a huge cat.

**Nominative and Objective Case A, p. 167**

**EXERCISE**

1. us
2. me
3. We
4. she
5. he
6. us
7. them
8. We
9. we
10. me
11. them
12. he
13. us
14. me
15. she
16. me
17. us
18. I
19. us
20. her

**Nominative and Objective Case B, p. 168**

**EXERCISE**

1. Did you see the photographs by Dorothea Lange and she?
2. The winner in the fun run’s wheelchair division was he.
3. Dr. Chen showed her and I his acupuncture clinic.
4. The volunteer coordinator should be her.
5. Will you play a game with he and I?
6. Him and me are building a model of the White House.
7. Did you see him and her at the grocery store?
8. Grandpa taught he and I some yoga postures.
9. Your biggest fans are her and me.
10. Will you go with Claire and I to hear the violinist Itzhak Perlman?
11. I made her and him a nutritious snack.
12. We and they meet on Thursdays for chess games.
13. Mother and me designed a new birdhouse.
14. Daisuke told she and I about his trip to Tokyo.
15. Did you choose him or I?
16. Juanita, Malcolm, and me collaborated on a science project.
17. Is the author of the skit her or him?
18. Uncle Stuart gave him and I bicycles for our shared birthday.
19. The awards presented to she and I were hung over the mantelpiece.
20. We may have to go to the mall without her.

**The Possessive Case, p. 169**

**Exercise A**

1. Did Jenny try on her kimono?
2. With yours, the class has now collected over one hundred cans.
3. My report is about the history of skateboarding.
4. Mine is hanging in the closet.
5. Has theirs ever been tested for safety?
6. Our piñata is filled with fruit, nuts, and small toys.
7. A vegetarian restaurant is their choice.
8. Hers is the only project about volcanoes.
9. Where are your new glasses?
10. Its nest is made of twigs, leaves, and bits of yarn.
EXERCISE B
Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.
11. your 16. our
12. Their 17. Their
13. mine 18. His
14. yours 19. your
15. Her 20. my

Who and Whom, p. 170

EXERCISE A
1. who 6. whom
2. who 7. who
3. whom 8. who
4. who 9. whom
5. whom 10. whom

EXERCISE B
11. Ask her to whom we should mail the package.
12. We need an assistant coach whom is enthusiastic.
13. I send e-mail to a pen pal who lives in Italy.
14. Is this your new friend whom you met yesterday?
15. Can you tell me whom invented the light bulb?
16. My uncle, whom is from Zambia, has an African mask collection.
17. Are you the team to whom these uniforms belong?
18. Mrs. Jones, whom I visit daily, appreciates my help.
19. I like the band who sings this song.
20. Mohandas Gandhi, whom we honor, used nonviolence to help bring freedom to India.

Appositives and Reflexive Pronouns, p. 171

EXERCISE A
1. Mrs. Woo thanked (we, us) traffic-safety helpers.

EXERCISE B
2. (We, Us) girls were first-string on the basketball team.
3. The league leaders were (we, us) Sentinels.
4. Mark wrote a postcard to (we, us) scouts.
5. Did you invite (we, us) group leaders?
6. The first people on the program were (we, us) twirlers.
7. (We, Us) brothers were known as the Great Beninos.
8. The teacher called (we, us) students up to the stage.
9. Nurse Anthony gave a plaque to (we, us) volunteers.
10. (We, Us) boys plan to help with the park cleanup.

EXERCISE B
11. themselves 14. themselves
12. himself 15. himself
13. themselves

Special Pronoun Problems, p. 172

EXERCISE
1. In 1977, we wheelchair racers competed in the Boston Marathon for the first time.
2. The seven racers readied themselves for the race.
3. Do you know who won the race in 1978?
4. All athletes who complete such a long, difficult race should declare themselves winners.
5. A foundation, to whom we are grateful, gave traveling assistance to us racers.
6. In 1980 Sharon Limpert, whom won the women’s title, became the first woman to break three hours.
8. It looks like a tie! To whom do you think they will give the medal?
9. The race officials, whom we respect, asked spectators to step back.
10. The racers usually ask themselves what they can do to improve their speed.

Review A: Case, p. 173

EXERCISE A
1. Our band and them are performing at the Fall Marching Festival.
2. Judges rank us according to musical skill and technique.
3. Did you save a seat for Lili and me?
4. The instruments were loaded carefully by them.
5. On the bus Kirby and he made up a pep song.
6. They taught Mary and she the song.
7. The boys and we took turns suggesting games to play.
8. The first to arrive at the field were us.
9. Our band director gave Bob and I some sunscreen.
10. Where should Carol and he put their trombone cases?

EXERCISE B
Answers will vary. Sample responses are provided.
11. I
12. us
13. she
14. me
15. us
16. his
17. yours
18. our
19. My
20. her

Review B: Case and Special Pronoun Problems, p. 174

EXERCISE A
1. Desmond and me looked at the map of the world.
2. Mr. Rudolph pointed out the Indian subcontinent to us.
3. The students helped themselves to pushpins for marking countries of special interest.
4. My favorite country is Italy because of its interesting shape.
5. Did you know that my favorite country is also theirs?
6. Della was the student who gave a report about Asia.
7. The amount of water seemed enormous to us students.
8. Whom can say how much of the earth is water?
9. Neither Mr. Singh nor him has visited relatives in India.
10. Juan surprised himself by naming all of Africa’s countries without looking at the map.

EXERCISE B
Answers will vary. Sample responses are provided.
11. The expert on geography was him.
12. We can ask Juan or he for help if we need it.
13. My mother gave my sister and I a Mercator projection map.
14. It was my sister who really wanted it.
15. The proud new owners of the map were us.
16. Us children hung it on the wall of the basement.
17. My uncle and he checked to see whether the country, Burkina Faso, was on it.
18. Between my sister and I, we found 107 countries.
19. Both of we enjoyed studying the map.
20. Someday, two experts on the globe will be Erica and she.

Review C: Case and Special Pronoun Problems, p. 175

EXERCISE A
1. I 6. me
2. himself 7. who
3. them 8. We
4. they 9. she
5. us 10. he

EXERCISE B
11. Whom can I ask about storyteller dolls?
12. Us-students are writing a report about Buddhists.
13. He reminded himself to take out the garbage.
14. The last to arrive was she.
15. My family, who visited Japan, attended a special celebration.
16. Saving natural resources will be beneficial for we humans.
17. Just between you and I, the choice is mine.
18. Mara and me will make the team and they a delicious snack.
19. The judges, whom we respect, readied themselves for the competition.
20. The most limber people were we gymnasts.
Chapter 11: Using Modifiers Correctly, pp. 176–193

What Is a Modifier? p. 176

**EXERCISE**

1. bright
2. gracefully
3. much
4. exciting
5. almost
6. small
7. extremely
8. rather
9. carefully
10. another
11. Several
12. almost
13. slightly
14. steaming
15. very
16. too
17. intelligently
18. so
19. gladly
20. unusually

Adjective or Adverb? p. 177

**EXERCISE**

1. ADV
2. ADV
3. ADJ
4. ADV
5. ADJ
6. ADV
7. ADJ
8. ADV
9. ADJ
10. ADV
11. ADV
12. ADJ
13. ADJ
14. ADJ
15. ADJ
16. ADJ
17. ADJ
18. ADJ
19. ADJ
20. ADJ

Good and Well, p. 178

**EXERCISE A**

1. good
2. well
3. well
4. good
5. well
6. good
7. good
8. good
9. well
10. good

**EXERCISE B**

11. How good, or healthy, I feel depends on how good I take care of myself. 12. A good breakfast gives me a well start on my day. 13. Foods low in sugar are well choices. 14. My family and I work well together to make healthy foods that taste well. 15. Exercise is important, too. 16. I can’t run very well, but a long walk gives me energy. 17. I also play basketball very well, so I get plenty of exercise.

[18] How good I sleep at night also affects the way I feel.  [19] I need at least eight hours to perform well at school the next day.  [20] Diet, exercise, and rest will help me live a well, long life.

Regular Comparison, p. 179

**EXERCISE** For some items below, increasing or decreasing comparisons are acceptable answers.

1. small smaller smallest
2. cheerfully more cheerfully most cheerfully
3. pretty prettier prettiest
4. often more often most often
5. improbable more improbable most improbable
6. smoothly more smoothly most smoothly
7. dirty dirtier dirtiest
8. desirable less desirable least desirable
9. cranky crankier crankiest
10. boastful more boastful most boastful
11. sweet sweeter sweetest
12. grateful more grateful most grateful
13. chilly chiller chilliest
14. hot hotter hottest
15. silly sillier silliest
16. wonderful more wonderful most wonderful
17. blue bluer bluest
18. famous more famous most famous
19. fickle more fickle
20. salty less salty least salty

Irregular Comparison, p. 180

**EXERCISE**

1. most 6. more
2. better 7. best
3. less 8. more
4. best 9. farthest [or furthest]
5. worst 10. better

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice Answer Key
Regular and Irregular Comparison A, p. 181

EXERCISE
1. believable  more believable  most believable
2. angrily  more angrily  most angrily
3. dim  dimmer  dimmest
4. good  better  best
5. dry  less dry  driest
6. bitter  less bitter  least bitter
7. observant  more observant  most observant
8. bad  worse  worst
9. warm  warmer  warmest
10. many  more  most
11. far  farther  farthest
12. perky  perkier  perkiest
13. well  better  best
14. little money  less money  least money
15. ridiculous  more ridiculous  most ridiculous
16. much  more  most
17. sad  sadder  saddest
18. sly  slayer  sluest
19. happily  more happily  most happily
20. grumpy  grumpier  grumpiest

Regular and Irregular Comparison B, p. 182

EXERCISE
1. largest  6. deepest
2. more  7. most interested
3. best  8. more gracefully
4. oddest  9. cutest
5. more  10. farther [or further]

Use of Comparative and Superlative Forms A, p. 183

EXERCISE
1. The tomb of Qin Shi Huangdi has been called “the greatest archaeological find of our time.”

2. Of the more than 7,000 life-size warriors, horses, and chariots, which looked most realistic?

3. It was the most amazing thing I had ever seen!

4. Since 1974, archaeologists in China have been putting forth their best efforts to rebuild the lifelike terra-cotta army.

5. Rebuilding the statues was probably harder than unearthing them.

6. Some of the smallest pieces provide the best clues about sculpting techniques during the emperor’s time.

7. Amy knows more information about China’s first emperor than I do.

8. Were the chariots or the horses buried deepest?

9. Of all the farmers who found the first clay head, he was most terrified.

10. Do you have a more current account than this one?

Use of Comparative and Superlative Forms B, p. 184

EXERCISE
1. Can anyone else on the team run faster than he can?

2. These scissors are sharper than any pair I could find.

3. Berta has won more trophies for track and field than any athlete.

4. She is more skillful than anyone in her art class.

5. I write to my cousin more than I write to anyone in my family.
Double Comparisons and Double Negatives, p. 185

**Exercise**
Some answers may vary.

1. I don’t hardly know anything about the country of Zambia.

2. We have never had any problems with our car.

3. These enchiladas are more tastier than the tacos.

4. The most strangest noise is coming from behind that door.

5. I haven’t never watched the sun rise.

6. Your explanation doesn’t make any sense to me.

7. If the water were any deeper, we could dive safely.

8. I can barely reach the top shelf.

9. Is the most longest bridge in the world the Humber Bridge in England?

10. Grandpa seems more wiser than anyone else I know.

11. The black rock for these statues can’t be found in any other place.

12. The cheetah can run faster than any land animal.

13. The month of February has fewer days than any other month.

14. Houda speaks Arabic better than anyone in his family.

15. This book has fewer pages than any other book.

16. Rachel scored more goals than anyone on her soccer team.

17. Has Paul run more miles than anyone in his track club?

18. A saltwater crocodile is larger than any other reptile.

19. Our neighbor Mrs. Gold grows more flowers than anyone on our street.

20. These pants are baggier than any other pants in my closet.
12. That's the most funniest story I have ever heard!

13. We didn't see any weeds in the garden.

14. Could I try on this dress in a larger size?

15. This discount store has the most cheapest prices on school supplies.

16. I don't remember ever eating a plantain.

17. The most oldest covered bridge in use is in New Hampshire.

18. I never heard anyone play the piano as well as Angela Cheng.

19. Joe needs a more shorter board for the birdhouse floor.

20. She never goes anywhere without her glasses.

[or She never goes anywhere without her glasses.]

**Exercise B**  
Some answers may vary.

6. I took a nap and dreamed about a faraway castle on my blue couch.

7. Virgil found a book about prehistoric animals in the library.

8. The woman wrote a play about two elephants in the red dress.

9. Three men had to stop quickly while a goose crossed the road in a small car.

10. The water refreshed us from a fountain.

11. Did you see the medals that Aunt Elsa won in the attic?

12. This daruma doll is said to help wishes come true from Japan.

13. That boy will feed our dogs in the yellow shirt.

14. The rocks are from the playground in my shoes.

15. The book Scorpions describes two friends living in Harlem by Walter Dean Myers.

**Misplaced and Dangling Participial Phrases, p. 187**

**Exercise**

Answers may vary.

1. Because I was hoping to win the race, the fall was disappointing.

2. I urged the horse onward with the reins grasped tightly in my hands.

3. Vo couldn’t find his sleeping bag hidden in the closet.

4. The log, broken in half, fit into the stove.

5. Because the car was running on empty, I needed to stop for gas.

6. Archaeologists have learned much from Anasazi dwellings built into the cliffs.

7. Aunt Rosa offered grilled chicken wrapped in a flour tortilla to us.

8. Rested from a long nap, I thought the afternoon hike seemed easy.
9. Traveling along the Congo River, people can see exotic birds and brightly colored insects.

10. Leaping across the stage, the dancer amazed us with her performance.

Misplaced Clauses, p. 188

Exercise A

1. I really enjoyed the movie that we saw last night.

2. My sister, who lives in Oklahoma, is coming home for Thanksgiving.

3. I couldn’t have finished without your help which I really appreciate.

4. The man whose car had been dented filed an accident report.

5. The boy whom I invited to the dance will be unable to go.

Exercise B

6. Jolene gave a bird that has white feathers to her brother.

7. The pictures that we took were of monkeys.

8. The trees that lost their leaves in the hurricane held many birds’ nests.

9. The burglar who had stolen my bracelet turned himself in to the police.

10. The store that offers secondhand clothing is on Elm Avenue.

Misplaced Phrases and Clauses, p. 189

Exercise

Some answers may vary.

1. Beth showed me a magazine article about Charles Schulz in the library.

2. Schulz created his comic strip for almost fifty years called Peanuts.

3. The comic strip was published in twenty-one different languages about a funny group of neighborhood children.

4. The comic strips are my favorites about sandlot baseball and the Great Pumpkin.

5. The one is about Charlie Brown that I like the most finally hitting a home run.

6. Charlie Brown worries about his batting ability who loves baseball.

7. Charlie Brown's beagle has an adventurous personality whose name is Snoopy.

8. Snoopy flies an imaginary airplane in World War I called the Sopwith Camel.

9. The evil Red Baron often threatens Snoopy's safety, who also flies a World War I airplane.

10. The beagle is confident and comical, nicknamed “Joe Cool.”

11. Snoopy writes novels sitting on his doghouse.

12. The bird Woodstock takes shorthand for Snoopy’s great novels who rarely speaks.

13. Linus sucks his thumb, carrying a security blanket.

14. He anxiously awaits Halloween hoping to see the Great Pumpkin.

15. Peppermint Patty and Marcie share a secret crush on Charlie Brown, who are pals.

16. Schulz’s children talk of hope, faith, and love whose problems are not always childhood ones.

17. Peanuts has given its millions of readers many laughs, originally called L'il Folks.

18. Did you see the box of Peanuts comic strips in the attic that Bill collected?

19. Bill was given the collection whose father is a Peanuts fan for his birthday.

20. Dating as far back as 1951, Bill has comic strips.
Review A: Modifiers, p. 190

EXERCISE A
1. colorful
2. unusually
3. Few
4. anxiously
5. rather

EXERCISE B
6. well
7. loudly
8. delicious
9. frantically
10. well
11. well
12. peaceful
13. well
14. good
15. brightly
16. respectfully
17. good
18. well
19. bad
20. well

Review B: Comparisons and Double Negatives, p. 191

EXERCISE A
1. During practice today, the trombone sounded louder than any instrument.
2. This is one of Henry Rowe Schoolcraft’s finest books about American Indian history and culture.
3. Both of the Assad brothers, who are classical guitarists, performed well, but I thought Odair’s solos were best.
4. Carlos can run faster than anyone else in his class.
5. This little gray kitten is the cutest of the litter.
6. Which of these two books by Lensey Namioka is least expensive?
7. Cold water tastes better than warm water.
8. Of everyone in our class, Sela collected the most cans.
9. Which of the following Tibetan cities is larger: Lhasa, Xungba, or Nagqu?
10. Olivia seems more daring than anyone else on the playground.

EXERCISE B
Some answers may vary.

6. During practice today, the trombone sound-ed louder than any instrument.
7. This is one of Henry Rowe Schoolcraft’s finest books about American Indian history and culture.
8. Both of the Assad brothers, who are classical guitarists, performed well, but I thought Odair’s solos were best.
9. Carlos can run faster than anyone else in his class.
10. This little gray kitten is the cutest of the litter.
11. Which of these two books by Lensey Namioka is least expensive?
12. Cold water tastes better than warm water.
13. Of everyone in our class, Sela collected the most cans.
14. Which of the following Tibetan cities is larger: Lhasa, Xungba, or Nagqu?
15. Olivia seems more daring than anyone else on the playground.

Review C: Misplaced Modifiers, p. 192

EXERCISE A
1. Chirping excitedly, I listened to the bird.
2. Lucas designed a costume for the play with red sequins.
3. Our family saw giraffes driving through the game preserve.
4. Jazz musician Stefon Harris plays the vibraphone, whose first album is called A Cloud of Red Dust.
5. I brought a scarf for Mother that is made of silk.
6. The giant land tortoise inhabits the Galápagos Islands which can live 200 years.
7. The man saw a movie about George Washington in the brown hat.
8. The bowl fell on the floor that was filled with fruit salad.

EXERCISE B
Some answers may vary.

1. Chirping excitedly, I listened to the bird.
2. Lucas designed a costume for the play with red sequins.
3. Our family saw giraffes driving through the game preserve.
4. Jazz musician Stefon Harris plays the vibraphone, whose first album is called A Cloud of Red Dust.
5. I brought a scarf for Mother that is made of silk.
6. The giant land tortoise inhabits the Galápagos Islands which can live 200 years.
7. The man saw a movie about George Washington in the brown hat.
8. The bowl fell on the floor that was filled with fruit salad.

82 ELEMENTS OF LANGUAGE | Second Course
9. Ricardo discovered a book about rock climbing in the library. [or Ricardo discovered a book about rock climbing in the library.]

10. I saw a petrified tree taking a shortcut through the woods.

**EXERCISE B**

*Answers will vary.*

11. Because he was prepared for the test, it seemed easy.

12. Excited about the party, they blew up the balloons.

13. Sewing all day, I finally finished my costume.

14. Soothed by the soft music, the baby stopped crying.

15. Traveling through the city of Ayuthaya in Thailand, she saw the beautiful temple called Wat Tanot.

**Review D: Modifiers, p. 193**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Karl has never heard of the Paralympics.

2. Is the Sears Tower in Chicago the tallest building in the United States?

3. Grandmother never hears anyone who speaks softly. [or never hears no one]

4. Pluto is farther from the sun than any planet in our solar system.

5. Of the two jackets, this one will keep you warmer.

6. Many of the doors in Zanzibar are carved beautifully.

7. The comedian’s jokes were more funnier than usual.

8. C

9. Which of these three salsas is spiciest?

10. Yo-Yo Ma plays the cello really well.

**EXERCISE B**

*Answers may vary.*

11. One player on the team has a dog named Woofer.

12. As I was rushing to answer the telephone, the ringing stopped.

13. Chirping loudly, birds swooped to the bird feeder.

14. Tumbling across the mat, the gymnast showed amazing strength and grace.

15. Admitting defeat, the tired runner congratulated the winner.
Chapter 12: A Glossary of Usage, pp. 194–201

Usage Glossary A, p. 194

Exercise

1. (Anyways, Anyway), as I was saying, the best part of the story happened after we got on the bus.

2. Did that woman tell her friends that their gift was too expensive for her to (accept, except)?

3. When my cousin returned from his week-long vacation, his refrigerator smelled (bad, badly).

4. Where did you say that Aunt Sally will (live at, live) when she moves across town in two weeks?

5. My father says that our grandfather was (a, an) honorable man.

6. Cherise was happy that there were (a lot, alot) of the same old choices on the new menu.


8. Dad says that he would prefer to wait in the car until we are (all ready, already) to leave the house.

9. Darla’s allergy to dogs does not (effect, affect) her sinuses as severely as her allergy to cats.

10. Is it (allright, all right) if we choose to eat lunch in the courtyard this afternoon?

11. Can you believe that those children (all ready, already) know how to speak three languages?

12. Though they were naturally athletic, the enthusiastic couple played tennis (bad, badly).

13. If we search every room, I am positive we’ll find your address book (somewhere, somewhere).

14. This (is not, ain’t) the most exciting book I have ever read.

15. If you have (all ready, already) made up your mind, I will not try to persuade you any more.

16. The marching band in the navy and gold uniforms received (a, an) high score in the competition.

17. The worried teenager could not remember where she had left her (keys, keys at).

18. The lawn looks (bad, badly) today; we have not mowed it for three weeks.

19. All of the jurors (accept, except) one believed that the defendant was guilty.

20. Do you think it would be (allright, all right) if we cooked spaghetti for dinner tomorrow night?

Usage Glossary B, p. 195

Exercise

1. Even though she was nervous, Cleo played (good, well) at the piano recital last night.

2. There are far (fewer, less) bison today than there were one hundred fifty years ago.

3. If you ask me, that little boy (doesn’t, don’t) look too happy.

4. José shared the prize money (between, among) his many friends.

5. There are (fewer, less) jobs in manufacturing now than there once were.

6. Don’t forget to (bring, take) your baseball mitt to my house tonight.

7. The extended school year was discussed (among, between) the three parents.
8. Derwood might believed that story about Loch Ness, but I could not tell for sure.
9. Mi Ling won’t be able to her dog along when she goes away to camp.
10. The child got when he tried to stay up later than the baby sitter had instructed.
11. Many immigrants only what they could carry when they came here to the United States.
12. Dinah’s opinion is that the novel to have ended so suddenly.
13. She put the flowers two pages of a favorite childhood book.
15. Let’s put walnuts in this batch of muffins than we put in the last.
16. We to wander off too far; the trails in this park can be confusing.
17. I could predicted that the most popular song of the year would be that one.
18. Not only was the toddler’s temperature too high, but we could tell that he did not feel well.
19. When the temperature outside goes below freezing, we let the faucets drip to prevent the pipes from .
20. The art teacher mind if we talk while we work, as long as we talk quietly.

Usage Glossary C, p. 196

EXERCISE

1. Perry convinced that he was going to win the match.
2. The peacock spread feathers and strutted away from the turkey.
3. Abraham Lincoln was a quiet man, but his words can us a lot.
4. The man looked he had a guilty conscience, but he was later proven innocent.
5. The poet was disappointed when the publisher misunderstood her latest poem.
6. Do you know we got chosen to wash dishes tonight?
7. Although not right to do so, some salespeople make exaggerated claims.
8. The pumpkin was rather small, but we made wonderful bread with it.
9. The old general looked he might cry when he talked about the war.
10. The small boy wanted to take the toy, but his cousin convinced him to it there.
11. David Robinson one of Uncle Gene’s favorite basketball players.
12. Will the lifeguard at camp this summer us how to swim the butterfly stroke?
13. The professional photographer uses of film more than any other.
14. I’d like to find out this batch of mashed potatoes turned out so lumpy.
15. Because I am good at math problems, I like other students how to do them.
16. The frantic baby sitter wished that the toddlers would her have peace for just one moment.
17. Model airplanes (they are, are) all over the desk in my nephew’s room.

18. By the end of the boat ride, I was feeling (kind of, slightly) sick to my stomach.

19. (These sorts, These sort) of test questions are difficult until you get the chance to practice them.

20. The soccer forward decided to shoot right under the post, just (like, as) Coach Weinberg had told the players to do.

Usage Glossary D, p. 197

EXERCISE

1. The reason geese migrate is (that, because) they can’t survive in frozen water.

2. The crowd revived (somewhat, some), but Judy still thought the team deserved more support.

3. Cristina and Gil sent (their, there) regards from Niagara Falls.

4. From now on, I will (try to, try and) do my laundry more often so it won’t pile up like this.

5. Although (they’re, their) not large, shrews are quite strong.

6. When you finish your dinner, put your trash in one of (them, those) trash cans over there.

7. Robert Burns wrote the (real, very) lovely Scottish song “Auld Lang Syne.”

8. The reason we can grow corn today is (because, that) the Maya cultivated the plant over two thousand years ago.

9. The Minnesota Twins scored one run more in the final game (than, then) the Atlanta Braves.

10. Although (their, there) coats are often white, Arabian horses have jet black hair underneath.

11. I was (extremely, real) sorry to hear that you lost your dog.

12. Argentina is farther south (then, than) Ecuador and has a cooler climate.

13. The reason the Appalachians are more rounded than the Rockies is (that, because) they are older than the Rockies.

14. Her family pays higher property taxes because they live (outside of, outside) the city limits.

15. In the past ten minutes, the sun has gone down (somewhat, some).

16. Class, look (inside, inside of) this box and choose the book that you would like to read next.

17. I told Julia that I would (try to, try and) have lunch with her tomorrow.

18. (This here, This) rainbow trout is the largest fish that I have ever caught.

19. Irene, would you pass me (them, those) tasty-looking appetizers?

20. Can you even believe that those seventh-graders wrote this entire play by (themselves, themselves)?

Usage Glossary E, p. 198

EXERCISE

1. Singing a cappella is (when there’s singing, singing) without instrumental accompaniment.

2. This relay race is so confusing that I can’t tell (who’s, whose) turn it is to run.

3. Don’t go swimming in the ocean (without, unless) you have someone with you.

4. Delia is the only child in her class (who, which) is from Peru.
5. Negotiation is *where people discuss and compromise* to reach an agreement.

6. *(Who’s, Whose)* the congressperson for your district?

7. Old Dog Tray was the faithful dog *(that, who)* Stephen Foster owned.

8. Nobody should try out *(without, unless)* he or she is willing to rehearse daily.

9. A mosaic is *(when you have small pieces, small pieces)* of material, such as colored gravel, fitted together to create a design on a flat surface.

10. Did it feel unusual at all when you changed *(your, you’re)* last name?

11. The ancient Egyptians had an underworld god *(who’s, whose)* name was Osiris.

12. You can’t travel to some countries *(without, unless)* you have a passport.

13. The bird *(that, who)* visited the speaker in Poe’s famous poem was a raven.

14. The photographer used a special lens because her subject was a *(ways, way)* off.

15. The middle school science teachers are *(suppose, supposed)* to go to a conference next month.

16. In order to collect data from Mars, the satellite has to travel a long *(way, ways)*.

17. Sheila read *(where, that)* the city of Austin is going to tear down that dance hall.

18. The flight attendant says that *(your, you’re)* supposed to fasten your seat belt.

19. Nelson is not *(used to, use to)* animals, but he warmed up to the puppy right away.

20. The driving instructor pointed out a sign *(where, that shows)* the speed limit has changed.

Review A: Usage Glossary, p. 199

**Exercise**

1. Jesse will hand me *(them, those)* paintbrushes when he is finished with them.

2. By the time we got around to raking the leaves in our front yard, winter had *(all ready, already)* come, and there were flurries of snow in the air.

3. Tiger Woods *(she is, is)* my favorite athlete.

4. Red peppers have a powerful flavor, and so they *(affect, effect)* the taste of a dish more than most other vegetables do.

5. Can you believe that Martha *(doesn’t, don’t)* want to run for class president?

6. There *(was, was not)* scarcely any water in southern California until engineers built waterways from the mountains.

7. Although the chess champion had *(fewer, less)* pieces on the board than her opponent, she knew how she would win the game.

8. After World War II, several Allied nations divided Germany *(between, among)* themselves.

9. Did you really get *(caught, busted)* falling asleep in class?

10. Dad read in the paper *(where, that)* the city will let the voters decide whether to create a park here.

11. My Spanish is *(kind of, somewhat)* better than my French.

12. Miguel bought *(himself, hisself)* a good pen for his writing class.
13. I still do not understand why, how come getting in shape is so difficult while getting out of shape is so easy.

14. William Shakespeare’s plays are more well known than those of his contemporaries.

15. The reason Lana got angry was because Kadeem criticized her unfairly.

16. President Kennedy told Americans to ask what they could do for their country.

17. Actually, I did not really want to go to the movies on Friday night anyway, anyways.

18. Don’t make a promise without you can keep it.

19. Was it Great Britain whose flag was first planted at the summit of Mount Everest?

20. The overanxious reporter did not leave the figure skaters have a moment to themselves before asking them how they felt.

Review B: Usage Glossary, p. 200

EXERCISE

1. Why don’t we accept except the seventh-graders who apply to our club so that we can increase our membership?

2. What do you think would be the effect affect of combining hydrogen and oxygen?

3. The living room has warmed up somewhat, but Leah still feels comfortable in a sweater and heavy socks.

4. Some of the most expensive cheeses smell bad, badly.

5. I have fewer, less money in the bank than Carmelita has because she is very good at saving.

6. Did you know that Mrs. Lawless used to live in Ireland?

7. Amit is going to bring take his new videotape of Never Cry Wolf to Janet’s party.

8. Before there was anesthesia, doctors couldn’t hardly do surgery at all.

9. The basketball center hurt himself, hisself at the end of the first half of the championship game.

10. It’s kind of, rather sad that black-and-white movies are seldom made these days.

11. Licking one paw, the snow leopard stared at us from within its icy den.

12. In the middle of January, we felt like, as though warm weather would never return.

13. The lioness holds a real, very important responsibility in the pride.

14. The baby bird flapped its wings tentatively and grew brave enough to fly out of the nest.

15. The city of Sydney, Mr. Wilkinson’s first home, is a long way from here.

16. (This here, This) chicken soup is the best meal to have when it is cold outside.

17. Firing a piece of pottery is when you bake it, baking it until the clay is hard and dry.

18. A bee will not sting without, unless you provoke it.

19. Yes, I’d love to see your art portfolio if you are willing to show it to me.

20. (Those sorts, Those sort) of paint will not mix well with the ones on this shelf.
Review C: Usage Glossary, p. 201

EXERCISE

1. After driving through this neighborhood where the houses look so similar, I hardly know where (I am, I am at) anymore.

2. Let’s find out (who’s, whose) going to organize the school newspaper staff next year.

3. By the end of the summer, I am determined to (teach, learn) myself how to steer this canoe.

4. The Johnstown Flood was a (real, very) tragic event in U.S. history.

5. My family (use to, used to) live near the beach.

6. Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr., is the leader (that, which) everyone remembers from the civil rights marches of the 1960s.

7. Clay has misplaced (a real, an extremely) important piece of paper.

8. Luis (had ought, ought) to finish this project before he starts the next one.

9. Jerry practiced his guitar chords every night, just (like, as) his teacher had encouraged him to do.

10. Carla is proud of her younger brother Joey for doing so (good, well) at his new job at the software company.

11. I was so hungry last night that I could (of, have) eaten the whole batch of pasta myself.

12. Keith has read (alot, a lot) of stories by his favorite science fiction author, but the tale he likes best of all is the one about the man with tattoos that come to life.

13. My best friend can sometimes seem blunt, but I am glad that she is (an, a) honest person.

14. Lauretta’s shin stung when the tennis ball hit it, but after a minute or two it felt (allright, all right).

15. All of the United States is in North America (accept, except) Hawaii.

16. When the cast and crew were (all ready, already), the stage manager drew back the curtain.

17. This (isn’t, ain’t) the spiciest salsa I have ever tried, but it tastes good with the meal.

18. Maurice accidentally stepped on the back of my shoe, and the shoe flew (off, off of) my foot.

19. Why do your cats Princess and Wallflower always go off to the corner by (themselves, themselves) when it is raining outside?

20. Could you and I (try to, try and) visit my old friend Jason in Seattle this summer?
Chapter 13: Capital Letters, pp. 202–218

First Words and I and O, p. 202

Exercise A

1. When I was eight years old, my grandmother came to live with my family.
2. She always used to say, “Great books need to be read often.”
3. Every night after dinner, my grandmother and I would settle down to read.
4. On some evenings she’d say something like “Oh, great bookcase! What do you have for us?”
5. Then she’d close her eyes and pick the first book that she touched.

Exercise B

Dear Annika,

[13] I haven’t climbed a real mountain yet, but I do like to improve my skills on indoor climbing walls. [14] Maybe one day we could take a trip to a mountain together. Till then, I guess we’ll settle for writing letters.

Your friend,

Anna

Proper Nouns A, p. 203

Exercise A

1. Is there anyone in this class who can tell us Booker T. Washington’s middle name?
2. I loved the picture Alex just sent us that shows her two cats, Pumpkin and Snowball.
3. Her daughter’s favorite essay was written by Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr.
4. If you are looking for a good dentist, you may want to try Joseph Dawes, D.D.S.
5. The newspaper story announced the company’s new chief financial officer: Shawn Moddes.
6. When I get my first dog, a sheltie, I will name her Lassie.
7. The directions say to turn left at the street just after the sign that says “Marcia Ford, M.D.”
8. While at her friend Mandy’s house, Suzi felt awkward every time Mandy’s mother called out, “Here, Susie!” and the family’s poodle came running.
9. Did the magazine article you read quote Herbert Martin, Sr., or Herbert Martin, Jr.?
10. When she was in high school, Jackie Joyner-Kersee was on the basketball, volleyball, and track teams.

Exercise B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are provided.

11. Fluffy
12. Mrs. Garcia
13. Abraham Lincoln
14. Jeffrey T. McLeod
15. Elizabeth Phillips, M.D.
Proper Nouns B, p. 204

EXERCISE A

3. P  7. C
4. C  8. P

EXERCISE B

11. Does your uncle live in a suburb of Washington, D.C., or in the city itself?

12. Reginald says to turn left on Thirty-Seventh street.

13. The only constellation Shannon can recognize immediately is Orion.

14. The main business district of Omaha, Nebraska, lies near the Missouri River.

15. The freshwater Lakes that empty into this river are known as the Great Lakes.

16. Sharing its name with a mythological god, Pluto is the smallest planet in our solar system.

17. A certain species of wild monkey has been living on the famous rock of Gibraltar for hundreds of years.

18. To go from Austin to San Antonio, he gets on Interstate 35 and starts driving south.

19. My cousins have lived on Peachtree Lane in Atlanta, Georgia, for three years.

20. The largest ice cap in Iceland, Vatna Glacier, covers more than three thousand square miles.

Proper Nouns C, p. 205

EXERCISE A

3. P  7. C
4. C  8. P

EXERCISE B

11. Will the post office be closed on Columbus Day this year?

12. How many schools in the United States have the name Trinity College or Trinity University?

13. The committee decided that the new school’s teams would be known as the Lincoln High Panthers.

14. To punish the colonists for the rebellion known as the Boston Tea Party, England passed a series of laws that the colonists called the Intolerable Acts.

15. Can you name the country where the matches of the next World Cup will be played?

16. My neighbor helped organize the parade for Veterans Day.

17. Are you going to New Orleans during Mardi Gras?

18. Next September a friend of Joe’s will begin attending the University of Redlands in California.


20. Aretha’s mom has been working downtown at the Department of Insurance for seven years.

EXERCISE B

*Answers will vary. Sample responses are provided.*

11. New York Yankees

12. Great Depression

13. Civil War

14. Department of Health and Human Services

15. ASPCA (American Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals)

Proper Nouns D, p. 206

EXERCISE A

2. C  4. C
EXERCISE B
6. In Greek mythology, Hermes is the cunning messenger of the gods known for his winged shoes and hat.
7. Brooke and Paige just bought tickets to see their favorite Celtic band play on Saturday night.
8. Lauren’s mom prepared a wonderful selection of food for the first night of Rosh Hashana.
9. The supreme deity of the Muslim religion, Islam, is Allah.
10. My two favorite dishes at that Thai restaurant are ginger shrimp and cashew chicken.
11. We watched a video about the history of Polynesian New Zealanders, known as Maoris.
12. As we drove down the street, we admired the architecture of the Episcopal church to our left and the Baptist church to our right.
13. When Corey visited India, she learned more about Hinduism, which is the country’s principal religion.
14. African culture was influenced by the Egyptians, who provided Africa with its earliest civilizations.
15. One reason that Kevin is learning Hebrew is to increase his understanding of the Torah.

Proper Nouns E, p. 207
EXERCISE A
2. P 4. P

EXERCISE B
6. I just noticed that construction is finally underway for Atkins Elementary School.
7. Did you know that the design for France’s Eiffel Tower was chosen from a contest?
8. Tanya watched the Country music Awards on TV last night, but I decided to read.
10. In 1940, William Saroyan, a writer whose work celebrates life, turned down a Pulitzer Prize for a play that he said was “no more great or good” than anything else he had written.
11. When we saw a show at the Paramount Theater last Wednesday, we parked across the street at the Covington Hotel’s parking garage.
12. In Washington this past summer, Kira saw the White House and the Lincoln Memorial.
13. Once called the Tokyo Imperial Museum, the Tokyo National Museum showcases Japanese calligraphy, paintings, swords, pottery, and many other kinds of art.
14. Suddenly, a booming voice came over the loudspeaker announcing that Mr. Romano had won our school district’s Educator of the Year award.
15. The shape of the Sydney Opera House is hard to forget!

Proper Nouns F, p. 208
EXERCISE A
2. P 4. P
EXERCISE B
6. When the British ship Carpathia reached the Titanic at 4:00 in the morning, just over seven hundred people were rescued.
7. The primary corporation that provides bus travel among cities in the United States and Canada is Greyhound Lines, Inc.
8. Uncle Carlo was thrilled when he got the chance to unveil the sign at his brand-new store, Cornerstone Books.

9. Charles Lindbergh’s plane, Spirit of St. Louis, had the most advanced aircraft instruments available in the late 1920’s.

10. When my Australian friend Fiona says “nestlé,” she pronounces the name of this company as if it rhymes with the word wrestle.

Proper Adjectives and Names of School Subjects, p. 209

**EXERCISE A**

1. Our junior high offers French, Spanish, and Russian courses.

2. The Chunnel connects England and France by way of the English Channel.

3. Shakespeare was the most famous of the Elizabethan playwrights.

4. We studied the sculpture of Rodin in my Art History course.

5. The Canadian and Mexican nations are two nations on the North American continent.

6. I am taking an American history course as well as chemistry I.

7. The United States bought the Alaskan region from the Russian government.

8. Are you going to take government II in summer school?

9. Must you complete algebra II before you can take a geometry class?

10. In Mrs. Bard’s Geography class this semester, we will focus on African and Asian countries.

**EXERCISE B**

11. Texan

12. Celtic

13. Japanese

**Proper Nouns and Adjectives A, p. 210**

**EXERCISE A**

1. I’d prefer to have lunch rather than dinner at Bombay grill tomorrow.

2. On May 7, 1915, the British passenger ship Lusitania sank after being hit by a German torpedo.

3. Do you remember when David Hyde Pierce won the funniest male actor [or funniest male actor] award at the TV Guide Awards?

4. After attending acting 101, Aaron became even more outgoing than he had been in the first place.

5. Even though she says she wants to try something new, Kara orders enchiladas every time she goes to a Mexican restaurant.

**EXERCISE B**

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

6. country

7. Britney Spears

8. class

9. Gateway Theater

10. basketball team

**Proper Nouns and Adjectives B, p. 211**

**EXERCISE A**

1. C

2. P

3. P

4. C

5. P

**EXERCISE B**

6. The author of the controversial Magazine article was Pat Frost, M.D.
7. Earth is the fifth largest planet in the solar system, and it is the third farthest away from the sun.


9. Many churches observe Ash Wednesday by using ashes of palms burned after the previous year’s Palm Sunday service.

10. Because his poems mimic human thought, the works of the American poet John Ashbery often do not have a logical beginning, middle, or end.

**Titles Used with People, p. 212**

**Exercise A**

1. After a tense campaign, the Latin Club finally elected its next (President, president).

2. What day of the week will (Dr. Karnik, dr. Karnik) be taking another look at Catherine’s sprained ankle?

3. If you want an opinion about crime in this town, just ask (Constable Taylor, constable taylor).

4. Serena’s (Sister Amy, sister Amy) used to be a conductor of the Seattle Girls’ Choir.

5. Our next-door neighbor was the (Mayor, mayor) of Des Moines over twenty years ago.

**Exercise B**

6. The leader of the service this morning will be Rabbi Schmidt.

7. If you ever get the chance to watch a trial at the Supreme Court, you will likely be impressed with the Justices and their knowledge of each case.

8. Signs all around town urged voters to reelect Judge Perez.

9. Do you think that one of the former Presidential candidates will visit our city?

10. Marta’s brother Marcus says he owes his interest in chemistry to Professor Frazee.

**Titles of Works, p. 213**

**Exercise A**

1. “Golden Door: A Nation Of Immigrants”

2. Who’s The Boss?

3. The Return of the Native

4. “Section Four: Sound Effects”

5. Hagar the Horrible

**Exercise B**

6. Have you ever seen the TV show the Dukes of Hazzard?

7. The ending of Where The Red Fern Grows is too sad for Rita to read more than once.

8. My mother’s favorite song on her shine CD is “Letters To Katharine.”

9. Today’s Mother Goose & Grimm Comic Strip features the dog gnawing on its owner’s shoes.

10. At Shelly’s house we played Asteroids Hyper 64 for twenty minutes, then went outside and took a walk.

11. The April issue of Reader’s digest contains an article by Connie Chung.

12. She saw James Stewart in the play Harvey at the Lillian Beaumont Theater.

13. Aunt Helen gave me a copy of the book Pride And Prejudice.

14. Have you seen the play Evita, the story of Eva Peron?

15. Your assignment for next week is to read “Chapter 18: The Power Of The People.”
Titles A, p. 214

EXERCISE A

1. “Chapter 2: Lawns and Gardens”
2. my uncle Ken
3. *Tokyo extreme Racer*
4. *Death of a Salesman*
5. New Hampshire’s Governor

EXERCISE B

6. “Casey at the Bat” may be the most famous baseball poem ever written.
7. Jerome enjoyed the Columbia Symphony Orchestra’s version of Aaron Copland’s *Appalachian spring*.
8. Do you think we could talk uncle Jerry into renting *A League Of Their Own* with us tonight?
9. Even though it is short, The Gettysburg address effectively describes president Lincoln’s vision of American democracy.
10. I would love to get the chance to see the Broadway play *The lion King*, and then compare it to the movie.

Titles B, p. 215

EXERCISE

1. James Whistler’s oil painting *Miss Cicely Alexander: Harmony in Gray and Green* is realistic and striking.
2. Who do you think will become the next Governor of Minnesota?
3. The group of young Soldiers addressed colonel Ezba with a great deal of respect.
4. How many recipes have you cut out of this issue of *Cooking Light* magazine, grandmother?
5. *Car Wheels on A Gravel Road* by Lucinda Williams is a CD that aunt Shelby listens to constantly.
6. The Professor who teaches Jake’s genetics class recommended that the students read the book *Jurassic Park*.
7. Playing forcefully, the violin soloist amazed the audience with her performance in the production of Vivaldi’s *the four seasons*.
8. What time will aunt Mary and uncle Theo be coming to dinner this Friday?
9. I find Walt Whitman’s poem “o captain! my captain!” rather inspiring.
10. Whenever she gets the chance, Stacy’s Aunt Thera reads *the New York Times*.

Review A: Capitalization, p. 216

EXERCISE A

1. queen elizabeth ii of great britain
2. the capital of missouri, jefferson city
3. 327 east seventy-second street, new york, new york
4. a summer vacation in the mountains
5. the largest newspaper in the state of alabama

EXERCISE B

6. Of all of Harrison Ford’s movies, I like *Raiders of The Lost Ark* the best.
7. Which song begins with the words “o beautiful, for spacious skies”?
8. You will be a fine member of the staff of Carnegie hospital, doctor.
9. The Golden Gate bridge is in San Francisco.
10. Drive West on Route 66.
11. Many texans cheer for the football team at the University of Texas.
12. Next winter we will visit my Grandmother in South Carolina.


14. Nova Scotia and New Brunswick are separated by the Bay of Fundy.

15. Brazil covers nearly half of the South American continent.

16. The United States celebrates its independence from England on the Fourth of July.

17. The planet Mercury is closer to the sun than is our own planet, Earth.

18. Ernest Hemingway wrote a book titled *The Old Man and the Sea.*

19. The Irish poet William Butler Yeats wrote “The Wild Swans at Coole.”

20. First-year students at Houston High School must take Algebra I.

Review B: Capitalization, p. 217

**Exercise A**

1. New Hampshire’s largest city, Manchester
2. The Western side of Pyramid Lake
3. A member of the United States Congress
4. The Miami Herald, a large city newspaper
5. 803 South Fifteenth Avenue, Wishtree, Arkansas

**Exercise B**

6. Which Shakespeare character said “All the world’s a stage”?
7. The poem begins “Once upon a midnight dreary. . . .”
8. In my art history class I saw a print of one of Dürer’s etchings.
9. Toronto is the Canadian city closest to Niagara Falls.
10. Wittenberg University is in the state of Ohio.
11. The German flag has three stripes—a red one, a gold one, and a black one.
12. In what year or years did Jack Nicholson win an Academy Award?
13. Last summer I went swimming in Lake Erie.
14. Farmers in the Midwest grow most of the nation’s wheat.
15. The Vikings were Scandinavian explorers and adventurers.
16. Did you see the movie *Planet of the Apes*?
17. Mia and I enjoyed the French movie *The Return of Martin Guerre.*
18. Sophomores at Harrington High School must take World History I.
19. When did you purchase your boat, *The Sandpiper,* captain?
20. College students really enjoy the Dartmouth Winter Carnival.

Review C: Capitalization, p. 218

**Exercise**

1. Are you referring to the Amy Shook who is a computer programmer in San Francisco?
2. One of my favorite CDs of all time is Sarah McLachlan’s *Surfacing.*
3. The tourist stood in front of a map on the wall at Grand Central Station.
4. When you get to the day-care center called Here We Grow, ask for the director whose name is Melissa Mallett.
5. According to legend, those who kiss the famous Blarney Stone located near Cork, Ireland, will gain the ability to persuade others.
6. When their older sister graduated with two master’s degrees, Beth and Sally congratulated her by sending her a letter addressed to Ellen Sharp, M.A., M.B.A.

7. What did Aunt Tamisha think of the 1999 version of A Midsummer Night’s Dream?

8. The Reverend Michael Hunn, a chaplain at Kent High School, coaches baseball.

9. The photography in A River Runs Through It made Maria’s Mother want to visit Montana.

10. One of the history teachers from my sister’s Middle School came in yesterday and showed us slides from his trip to Santiago, the capital city of Chile.

11. Our friend Katie Brown dreamt that she bought a tiny monkey and named him Pepe.

12. Marcus Aurelius, who became Emperor of Rome in A.D. 161, is associated with the Golden Age of Rome.

13. Muted pinks and purples dominate Paul Ladnier’s work Granby Snow Scene.


15. Was the USS Nimitz named for the World War II U.S. Admiral Chester Nimitz?


17. Julie loved her tour of the Alhambra, a palace in Granada, Spain.

18. Sharla’s Mom is an English teacher at the local Middle School.

19. Missy’s Uncle Bruce says that he always enjoys reading The New Yorker.

20. Dorothy Jeakins won an Oscar for her costume designs in Joan of Arc.
Chapter 14: Punctuation (End Marks, Commas, Semicolons, and Colons), pp. 219–237

End Marks, p. 219

**EXERCISE**
1. Do you know where Sanibel Island is?
2. Sometimes you can see manatees off the coast.
3. Did you know they are endangered?
4. Please give me that book about endangered species.
5. What wonderful photos it contains!
6. I’d like to learn more about endangered species.
7. Will you teach me what you’ve learned?
8. What an exciting book this is!
9. I have learned a lot about animals from this book.
10. Can you recommend some other good books?

Abbreviations, p. 220

**EXERCISE A**
1. Mrs. Walsh is the principal of Westdale Elementary School.
2. Have you met Dr. Richards?
3. Zechariah Hoyt, Jr., wrote the prize-winning essay on ocelots.
4. Mr. and Mrs. Bertinot are joining us for dinner tonight.
5. Mr. A. D. Mannion will be playing drums with the band tonight.
6. oz
7. lb
8. yd
9. NASA
10. PBS
11. tsp
12. cm
13. CIA
14. IRA
15. ft

End Marks and Abbreviations, p. 221

**EXERCISE A**
1. What a wonderful day this is!
2. Watch out for that hole, Mr. Willis!
3. The meeting is at 2:00 this afternoon.
4. Is Dr. Winston in today?
5. James Koenecke, Sr., is speaking to our class.
6. Have you read anything by F. Scott Fitzgerald?
7. How magnificent the dove’s wings are!
8. Did Mrs. Evans once work for the FBI?
9. The plane is about to take off, so hurry up!
10. Our class did research on the life of John F. Kennedy, Jr.

**EXERCISE B**
11. Will Mr. and Mrs. Walton be coming to the play?
12. Watch out for that car!
13. Are we going to hear Ms. Sills sing again?
14. They were advised to speak with a specialist in internal medicine.
15. What lovely roses Mrs. Greene grows!

Commas with Items in a Series, p. 222

**EXERCISE A**

*Optional commas are underscored.*

1. He examined, studied, and took notes on the history of paper money.
2. On U.S. bills are portraits of Washington, Lincoln, and Hamilton.
3. I read a well-written, interesting article about the designs on the corners of bills.
4. At the mint, Tony watched the complicated, intricate process of the taking bills off the assembly line and packing the money.
5. He doesn’t know who determines when money is too old to use, where it goes, or how it is replaced.
EXERCISE B
Optional commas are underscored.


Commas with Compound Sentences, p. 223

EXERCISE A

1. The books were informative, but I learned even more in my science class.
2. Big speakers called woofers make low sounds, and small speakers called tweeters make high sounds.
3. Sound comes from something moving, yet you can’t always see the movement.
4. Air carries vibrations to your ears, and then you hear sounds.
5. Most hearing-impaired people can hear some sounds, and they can feel the vibrations.

EXERCISE B

6. I wrote a short book about butterflies, and Joshua drew the illustrations.
7. If possible, Salim will meet Beula on Tuesday, or he will meet her on Friday.
8. Field hockey is an exciting team sport, but soccer is my all-time favorite sport.
9. I couldn’t make it to the scout meeting, so I called the troop leader to tell him.
10. I submitted my best paintings and drawings to the annual art contest, but another student in my class won first prize.

Commas with Interrupters A, p. 224

EXERCISE

The phrase in item 6 may also be considered essential.

1. The United States’ mix of ideas and cultures, which come from all over the world, has helped to make this nation diverse and interesting.
2. The contributions made by immigrants have included inventions and business ideas.
3. One group that has contributed a great deal is Hispanic Americans.
4. Hispanic Americans, many of whom are bilingual, have roots in various countries.
5. This group, one of the fastest-growing minorities, has enriched this nation.
6. Many Mexican Americans, answering the United States’ call for migrant workers, arrived several decades ago.
7. These workers, who were paid poorly, strengthened the U.S. economy.
8. Unions that they later formed helped them earn better wages.
9. Studying diversity, which one can find in abundance in the United States, is helpful in understanding sociological trends within a country.
10. Many Americans who are bilingual are able to get better-paying jobs than those who speak only one language.

Commas with Interrupters B, p. 225

EXERCISE

1. Dr. Phillips, should I make an appointment with you next week?
2. The race, therefore, was equally challenging to all the contestants.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice Answer Key
3. Are you going to join us for tea, Mrs. Collins?
4. The rowers, of course, were exhausted after the three-hour race.
5. Small dogs, for example, can be great pets for the elderly.
6. The students, generally speaking, enjoy a great deal of variety in the lesson plans.
7. Have you read this article yet, Janet?
8. Mrs. Wyatt, is this painting yours?
9. Those antiques, by the way, are mostly forgeries.
10. The mayor, on the other hand, disagreed with the committee’s decision.

Commas with Introductory Elements, p. 226

EXERCISE A
1. No, the Egyptians were not just farmers.
2. Concerned with the afterlife, Egyptian rulers built great tombs for themselves.
3. Built for monarchs and nobles, many great stone tombs contained supplies for use in the afterlife.
4. While he was alive, the king had his picture painted.
5. On the wall of his tomb, a picture shows the king hunting.
6. Well, it shows how the king once hunted.
7. When I saw the jewels, I thought the kings were rich.
8. Why, they believed they could take jewels to the next life.
9. Based on things found in tombs, the assumption can be made that they believed they could take almost everything!

EXERCISE B

[11] Known as the beeward, the village beekeeper kept the hives. [12] Before sugar was readily available, the only sweetener people had was honey. [13] By supplying beeswax, the beewards also met another key need of that time—they provided a raw material for making wax candles. [14] For most people in those days, cheaper candles were made from tallow. [15] Extracted from animal fat, tallow was also used to make soap.

Using Commas, p. 227

EXERCISE

Optional commas are underscored.
1. We brought sandwiches, chips and drinks to the picnic.
2. The cold, humid weather took everyone by surprise.
3. I studied all week for the test, yet I didn’t feel prepared.
4. Oh, I should mention that we finished the project last night.
5. The jurors, on the other hand, did not understand the testimony.
6. The coach made a list of drills, posted them on the bulletin board, and asked her team members to practice the drills daily.
7. John joined the baseball team, Marta joined the soccer team, and Juanita joined the basketball team.
8. It was a long, slow climb to the top of the mountain, but we made it.
9. Keeping an eye out for danger, the squirrel nibbled on sunflower seeds.
10. My best friend, who is from Tacoma, is the first violinist in our band.
Conventional Uses of Commas, p. 228

EXERCISE
Optional commas are underscored.

18 Varnum Street
Charlottesville, VA 22901
January 29, 2009
Dear Angela,

I was delighted to read your last letter, and I’m happy to know that you are doing well. Things are going well here in good old Charlottesville, Virginia, and I miss you.

Last month, on Friday, December 16, our class went to the National Air and Space Museum in Washington, D.C. On the way, we stopped in Manassas, Virginia, for a snack and stretch break.

At the museum, we saw an exhibit on the history of flight, and I learned about the first member of the Caterpillar Club, Harold Harris. He bailed out of a plane at McCook Field, Dayton, Ohio, and became the first member of a club that is made up of people saved by a parachute! The exhibit was all so interesting.

I remember you asked me for Mrs. DeLillo’s address. She is at Sunnybrook Nursing Home, Greystone Road, Blacksburg, VA 24060. She went there sometime in November 2008. I guess you know that she is scheduled for surgery on Tuesday, February 7. I know she would be happy to hear from you. You could tell her about your vacation in Paris, France. Her birthday is February 23, 1933. Did you know that she was born in Biloxi, Mississippi? I hope to hear from you soon.

Your friend,
Yoko

Comma Review A, p. 229

EXERCISE
Optional commas are underscored.

1. The costly, fragile items will be moved first.
2. In a box under the coffee table, you will find the books that you requested.
3. Well, I’m not sure I would go on that trip if I were you.
4. The audience members, by the way, have never seen a musical production like this one.
5. Dr. Gravatz, are you ready for your next patient?
6. The singers learned the music, memorized the words, and rehearsed the songs daily.
7. We asked how to solve the problem, how to indicate the answer, and where to print the results.
8. Joanna Killeen was born on November 10, 1961.
10. Barney doesn’t play trombone, nor does he play trumpet.

Comma Review B, p. 230

EXERCISE
Optional commas are underscored.

1. The amusement park had roller coasters, carousels, and pony rides.
2. I’m not sure if I would like this music, so I will make a decision later.
3. I went to see the opera Madama Butterfly, but I didn’t understand everything.
4. The book you’re reading, by the way, is by my favorite author.
5. Craig moved to 3145 Palmer Avenue, Knoxville, Tennessee.
6. Marcos, did you hear my question?
7. Having stayed up most of the night, the boys were very tired in the morning.
8. We planted the seeds, watered them daily, and watched them grow.
9. Kenneth Rutter, who is my first cousin, teaches horseback riding.
10. Katerina, on the other hand, is a skilled, graceful skater.
11. We will be in Lima, Ohio, for one day, and then we go on to New York.
12. Is it true, Vinnie, that you’ve already finished your research paper?
13. I looked all over the living room, dining room, and kitchen for the cat’s toy.
14. I’m leaving, so why don’t you leave with me?
15. Jason, don’t forget to reserve the room.
16. Trisha and Karen are in the same classes for English, Spanish, and math.
17. It was a slim, green leather volume.
18. Dear Kathryn,
19. While you clear the table, I’ll start washing the dishes.
20. I’ll always remember June 10, 2008, as the day we moved into our new house.

Semicolons A, p. 231

EXERCISE
1. Wool is a great fabric for cold weather; it keeps me warm even when it gets wet.
2. My wool sweater is soft, warm, and comfortable; it was hand-knit in Norway.
3. Wool must be cut from the sheep, carded, spun, and dyed; nevertheless, the result is worth the effort.
4. I like to wear wool for skating, sledding, and hiking; however, my sister, who is allergic to wool, never wears it at all.
5. I also like to wear rayon and other synthetic materials; therefore, I buy many different types of fabrics.
6. Nylon is a strong material; however, I always seem to get runs in my nylon hose.
7. Some people prefer to wear cotton; my father thinks it’s the most comfortable material.
8. I like denim; in fact, several of my jackets are made of denim.
9. I have bought wool sweaters for my brother, my mom, and my grandfather and my grandmother, a lady with excellent taste, once sent me a wool vest for my birthday.
10. I have learned a lot about fabrics; I will be able to make better decisions about what kinds of material to buy.

Semicolons B, p. 232

EXERCISE
1. The sports banquet began an hour late; the delay was due to the storm.
2. Some roads were flooded; consequently, people had to detour.
3. Sanjay was in charge of the program; his expression showed concern.
4. Marielle, the coordinator, was eager to begin the speeches, awards presentations, and banquets; but the guest speaker, who was flying in from Chicago, had not arrived.
5. The guest, our sponsor, and Coach Zeff were late; all three were to present awards.
6. Umeko’s dad had planned to leave early; nevertheless, he agreed to lead a discussion.
7. Spring storms can cause a lot of destruction; indeed, homes have been washed away.
8. Finally, our guest of honor arrived; he was soaked but smiling.
9. The applause was deafening; it sounded like a roar of thunder!
10. After the speeches, Ms. Weinberg brought out the awards; the coach presented them to all the participants in athletic programs.
Colons, p. 233

EXERCISE

1. Our teacher introduced Mr. Burkhardt:
   “It is my honor and my pleasure to introduce Mr. Steve Burkhardt. He is a close friend, a mentor, and an accomplished scientist. Please welcome him.”

2. Mr. Burkhardt told us something important: We must save the elephants.

3. He also told me the following items are valued by some people: elephant meat, elephant tusks, elephant hides, and elephant hair.

4. I read this fact: The elephant is on the world’s endangered species list.

5. Is the elephant mentioned in Genesis 1:24?

6. My concerns are as follows: The herds are disappearing, illegal killing is continuing, and the rural people of Africa still need these elephants to survive.


8. We will listen to a lecture at 8:30 P.M.

9. My father always taught me this: Respect life in every form.

10. We will learn more about elephants in tomorrow’s lecture, which begins at 9:00 A.M.

Review A: End Marks and Abbreviations, p. 234

EXERCISE

1. Was the letter addressed to 3212 Willis Drive?

2. I received a package from St. Louis this morning.

3. Are you meeting with Ms. Wilkinson this afternoon?

4. How beautiful that song was!

5. Did you hear the speech by T. J. Townsend?

6. William McLean, Jr., is my guitar teacher.

7. We’ll see you for lunch tomorrow.

8. Please send the money order as soon as possible.

9. Are Mr. and Mrs. Gutierrez coming to the celebration?

10. My aunt just took a research job at Plastic Innovations, Inc.

11. My package was mailed from Boston last Friday.

12. The CIA offered Mr. Lemoine a job in data security.

13. What an amazing film that was!

14. Did Dr. Cameron write this article about spiders?

15. Watch out for that motorcycle!

16. Save the postcard from Memphis for the scrapbook.

17. Robert Corley, Sr., will be the new advisor for our school’s college-bound program.

18. Was the order mailed to Worthy Collections Ltd.?

19. How precious that baby looks today!

20. Is Mr. Cambridge still scheduled for 2:45 this afternoon?

Review B: Commas, p. 235

EXERCISE

Optional commas are underscored.

1. We stayed up too late last night, so we were unable to wake up at 6:00 A.M.

2. The small, shy puppy walked slowly into the room.

3. My mother usually packs oranges, apples, or peaches with our lunches.

4. We copied our notes over, made study cards, and called out questions to each other.

5. After getting busy signals for nearly an hour, the customer gave up trying to call.

6. Looking in every place he could think of, the young boy continued to search for his baseball glove.

7. Our family moved from Tempe, Arizona, to San Diego, California.
8. I asked the salesclerk which computer I should buy, which printer was best, and which monitor would be most practical.

9. The coach was not upset about the loss, nor was he discouraged.

10. Siamack is a composer of classical music, and Shekoufeh is a jazz pianist.

11. Should we stay home and clean, go shopping for clothes, or mow the lawn?


13. Yes, Janelle says that she enjoys the long, warm summers in Pensacola, Florida.

14. Kendra will be visiting us this summer, I believe.

15. The children were quite tired, for they had played kickball for several hours.

16. We sent my aunt’s gift to 302 Main Street, Port Allen, Louisiana.

17. The pastor explained Zechariah 9:9 to our study group.

18. After we put the dishes away, Irena showed us photographs from her trip to Los Angeles, California.

19. I went walking in the dark, cold, moonless night.

20. My best friend from kindergarten, Joanna, still lives in my neighborhood.

Review C: Semicolons and Colons, p. 236

Exercise
1. Indira wanted to become an engineer; nevertheless, she continued to study literature.

2. Terrence, the captain, flew the plane, and Robert, the first officer, contacted the control tower for landing instructions.

3. The pastor explained Zechariah 9:9 to our study group.

4. Our teacher grew up in Wyoming; however, she studied in Montana.

5. My grandfather’s rule of thumb was this: Treat others fairly, honestly, and respectfully.

6. The movie doesn’t start until 3:30 P.M.; nevertheless, it’s a good idea to arrive early.

7. María is the best tennis player in our class; in fact, she is the best in our entire school.

8. We read scary stories for half the night, as a result, we were too frightened to sleep.

9. At 8:00 P.M., the guests will arrive; we should get ready to greet them.

10. Carmen hopes to become a veterinarian; consequently, she is studying hard in science class.

11. The clouds are beginning to move off to the east; perhaps the afternoon will be sunny.

12. For a pleasant train ride, remember to bring the following items: a good book, some healthful snacks, and a small pillow.

13. Nakai is a serious swimmer; you can find him at the pool almost every morning.

14. The mayor made her priorities quite clear: “I will not rest until this city’s traffic problems have improved. I will not stop for breath until we have doubled the size of our police department. I will not let up until our schools are no longer in crisis.”

15. The letter began, “Dear Ms. Kimball: Thank you for your prompt response to our inquiry.”

16. The book is titled Great Danes: A Complete Breed Profile; it contains helpful information on nutrition, training, and temperament.

17. Already the drought has affected three states: Texas, Oklahoma, and Kansas.

18. Justin lined up the ingredients for his salad: lettuce, radishes, tomatoes, and onion.

19. Edwina is driven by a great dream; she hopes to one day pilot a space shuttle.

20. Lunch will be served at 12:00; the menu includes chicken enchiladas, Spanish rice, and fajitas.
Review D: End Marks, Abbreviations, Commas, Semicolons, and Colons, p. 237

EXERCISE
Optional commas are underscored.

1. Have you ever visited Gettysburg, Pennsylvania? 2. This place is the scene of one of the greatest battles of the Civil War; consequently, many people have heard of Gettysburg. 3. Defending their beliefs and their honor, the soldiers of the North and the South fought one of the bloodiest battles in history there. 4. They fought for their generals, their fellow soldiers, and their way of life.

5. Visiting the battlefield today, one is struck by the calm, peaceful atmosphere; however, on the three days of July 1st, 2nd, and 3rd, 1863, it was different. 6. What a scene of suffering it was! 7. On this beautiful expanse of green, soldiers fought, were wounded, and gave their lives.

8. General Robert E. Lee, who was known as a great military strategist, seems to have failed at Gettysburg. 9. He positioned Pickett’s brigade across an open field from the Union Army. 10. The brigade was defenseless, and the Union Army, positioned on a hill with many trees, had its cannons ready.

11. Marching bravely across that field, most of Pickett’s fifteen thousand troops fell. 12. Some people blame this loss on two commanders: General J. E. B. Stuart, who was in charge of the cavalry, and General Longstreet, who was Lee’s second in command. 13. Involved in skirmishes for supplies, General Stuart and the cavalry did not reach Gettysburg on time. 14. Because the cavalry was needed to back up the foot soldiers, this failure resulted in a great loss. 15. Others blame the defeat on General Longstreet; they say he was indecisive and ineffective.

16. People continue to study and re-create this battle to this day; indeed, it is one of the most interesting battles of the war. 17. Some people say that scholars are still fighting the Civil War and that no one is the winner yet. Will it ever end?

18. If you are interested, you can visit Gettysburg. 19. For information about this historic site, you can write to Gettysburg National Military Park, Gettysburg, PA 17325. 20. Go there someday; it will be well worth the trip.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice Answer Key 105
Chapter 15: Punctuation, pp. 238–257

Underlining (Italics) A, p. 238

EXERCISE
1. Have you read the latest issue of *Sports Illustrated*?
2. Our class just finished acting out a scene from *Romeo and Juliet*.
3. I have read *The Pearl* by John Steinbeck.
4. One of my favorite paintings is *Christina’s World*.
5. Did you read that story in the *Chicago Tribune*?
6. Copland’s composition *Appalachian Spring* has become a classic.
7. Is *Newsweek* the most popular weekly newsmagazine?
8. I borrowed a copy of the Dickens classic *A Tale of Two Cities*.
9. *Mister Rogers’ Neighborhood* is a children’s series on PBS.
10. Do you know what the myth of Prometheus has to do with *Frankenstein*, Mary Shelley’s famous book?
11. Is there a film version of *The Hobbit*?
12. Picasso’s painting *Guernica* is a powerful antiwar statement.
13. Did you see the article about me in the *Ann Arbor News*?
14. My favorite old television show is *Gilligan’s Island*.
15. The final scene of the opera *La Bohème* made Mimi cry.
16. Darryl’s subscription to *Boys’ Life* has expired.
17. The Drama Club is presenting Arthur Miller’s play *The Crucible*.
18. The Humphrey Bogart film *Casablanca* also features Ingrid Bergman.
19. Is *Alice’s Adventures in Wonderland* your favorite book?
20. Has this week’s *Time* magazine arrived yet?

Underlining (Italics) B, p. 239

EXERCISE
1. Parts of the *Titanic* were found by the underwater craft *Alvin*.
2. Jane has never had trouble spelling the word *ambidextrous*.
3. Is it correct to write one *l* or two in the word *traveling*?
4. Do you use the word *very* too often when you write?
5. The English-speaking woman had trouble pronouncing the *rr* sound in Spanish.
6. The number 14 is lucky for me.
7. The *Stourbridge Lion* is the name of a train that was built in England.
8. Henry’s *u*’s sometimes look like *v*’s.
9. In 1830, the locomotive *Tom Thumb* raced a horse. Do you know which one won?
10. Katy pointed out the difference between the words *emigrate* and *immigrate*.
11. Columbus’s three ships were the *Niña*, the *Pinta*, and the *Santa Maria*.
12. Charles Lindbergh crossed the Atlantic in the plane the *Spirit of St. Louis*.
13. How many *i*’s are in the name *Illinois*?
14. From what language does the word veranda originally come?

15. This spring we are going to ride the train the City of New Orleans.

16. Is the number 17 a prime number?

17. If I had a spaceship, I’d call it the Starseeker.

18. How many times does the word blend appear in the recipe?

19. The fishing boat the Andrea Gail was lost at sea in 1991.

20. How old is the word uranium?

**Underlining (Italics) C, p. 240**

**Exercise A**

1. The teacher asked, “Who has read the novel A Day No Pigs Would Die?”

2. In 1620, the Mayflower sailed for America.

3. The word ostracism has an interesting history.

4. After springing leaks, the ship Speedwell had to return to England.

5. The word occurrence has two r’s and three c’s.

6. Do you know who flies aboard Air Force One?

7. Today, we learned about the airship Hindenburg.

8. Is that a 5 or a 6? If it’s a 6, then your answer is correct.

9. The New York Sun was started by Benjamin H. Day.

10. Jamie wrote an essay about the samurai in the book The Sign of the Chrysanthemum.

**Exercise B**

11. Kevin is a devout fan of the original Star Trek television series.

12. Tamika has a part in the play Antony and Cleopatra.

13. The number 20 has two 10’s.

14. The art class studied a replica of The Thinker, a famous sculpture by Rodin.

15. Please define the words itinerary, transitory, and ephemeral.

**Quotation Marks A, p. 241**

**Exercise A**

1. Pang asked, “is that the crescent moon?”

2. “I think it’s the first quarter,” I replied.

3. “The moon will be full on March 22,” he added.

4. I asked, “how do you know the date?”

5. He said, “the phases of the moon are shown on my calendar.”

**Exercise B**


7. “That,” said Miss LaSpina, “is looking great!”


9. “I’m not sure,” said Velma, “that I gave it enough water.”

10. Did you just say, “I’m a big fan of reptiles and arachnids?”
**Quotation Marks B, p. 242**

**EXERCISE A**


**EXERCISE B**

11. My brother can play the song “Greensleeves” on the guitar.
12. Piri Thomas wrote the short story “Amigo Brothers.”
14. The students couldn’t help laughing as they read the poem “Jabberwocky.”
15. Ernest Hemingway’s short story “A Day’s Wait” has a surprise ending.

**Quotation Marks C, p. 243**

**EXERCISE A**


**EXERCISE B**

12. Gaspar Sanz wrote a beautiful song called “Canarios.” Have you heard it?
13. For homework, please read the poem “I am of the Earth.”
14. The poem is in a chapter titled “This Old Earth.”
15. Rosa named her essay “Hawthorne and Puritanism.”

**Quotation Marks D, p. 244**

**EXERCISE**

1. Steve blurted out, “My favorite song of all time is ‘Sittin’ on the Dock of the Bay.’”
2. “Did you see last night’s episode ‘The Klingon’s Return’?” asked Tammy.
3. “Yes, I do read poetry,” replied Ellen, “and Langston Hughes is my favorite poet. I especially like his poem ‘Harlem.’”
4. Eddy said, “You might be interested in knowing that I sent my essay ‘The Best Music of the Millennium’ to a magazine publisher.”
5. “Do you know which character said, ‘Uneasy lies the head that wears the crown?’” asked Robert.
6. “We heard Mr. Johnson singing the song ‘My Girl’ while mowing his lawn,” said Gina.
7. “Did Mrs. Kay say, ‘There will be no homework tonight?’” asked Theresa.
9. “Please read the poem ‘Mama is a Sunrise’ tonight,” said Mr. Clark.
10. “Which character said,” asked Lee, “‘To be or not to be?’”
Quotation Marks E, p. 245

EXERCISE A
1. “I believe that Dr. Morris said, ‘Finish reading the novel tonight,’” replied Rebecca.
2. “Have you, Jill, seen my notebook?”
3. The doctor replied, “Take two of these tablets once a day. You should feel better in a week or so.”
4. “‘I like to see it lap the miles’ is a famous first line in poetry,” Mrs. Gomez remarked.

EXERCISE B
[8] Jeff responded, “That’s good. I was absent that day.” [9] “We also need to study Hawthorne. I bet she’ll ask us about the symbolism in the story ‘The Minister’s Black Veil,’” said Gail. [10] “Okay, here’s the plan,” remarked Tim. “Gather all of your notes, and we’ll meet in the library at 6:00 P.M. to study.”

Apostrophes A, p. 246

EXERCISE
1. teachers’ books
2. Davis’s desk
3. teenagers’ magazines
4. tree’s branches
5. Pattersons’ dog
6. girls’ lunches
7. mice’s cheese
8. cities’ lights
9. cars’ engines
10. chair’s legs
11. workers’ duties
12. CD’s marketability
13. foxes’ homes
14. restaurants’ atmosphere
15. Lewis’s invention
16. day’s wait
17. hood’s ornament
18. Hercules’s strength
19. Jill’s house
20. bands’ songs

Apostrophes B, p. 247

EXERCISE
1. C
2. Anybody’s guess is as good as mine.
3. C
4. Are you saying that this is nobody’s chair?
5. C
6. I need a wallet for this next magic trick; anyone’s wallet will do.
7. C
8. Somebody’s track shoes were left on the patio last night.
9. C
10. C

Apostrophes C, p. 248

EXERCISE A
1. raft’s; rafts
2. monkey’s; monkeys
3. teacher’s; teachers
4. Jackson’s; Jacksons
5. tooth’s; teeth’s
6. goose’s; geese’s
7. student’s; students
8. baby’s; babies
9. giraffe’s; giraffes
10. boat’s; boats
11. bird’s; birds
12. mayor’s; mayors
13. country’s; countries
14. chair’s; chairs
15. hand’s; hands
16. horse’s; horses
EXERCISE A
11. Joel is not sure who’s hat that is.
12. There’s the diner I was telling you about.
13. Their the DINER I was telling you about.
14. I fed the stray cat, but I didn’t know its name.
15. He was wondering whether your his friend or not.
16. Can you count to 100 by 2’s?
17. Many compromises were made between the North and the South during the 1840’s and 1850’s.
19. Young children sometimes confuse 6’s and 9’s.

20. Always cross your t’s and dot your i’s.

Apostrophes F, p. 251

EXERCISE
1. Who’s going to rescue that little girl’s kitten?
2. Didn’t Sam say that you must be ready to go on a moment’s notice?
3. Last month’s meeting didn’t go as well as we’d planned.
4. Both cars’ tires should be replaced. I’m surprised that neither of the cars has had a blowout yet.
5. Whose books are these? Aren’t these books theirs?
6. More often than not, the teachers’ lounge is a place for working, not for lounging.
7. “Don’t worry. The school’s computer lab isn’t in danger of losing its funding,” he said.
8. The car’s visor helps protect the dashboard from the sun’s heat.
9. The dentist exclaimed, “Your teeth’s enamel isn’t indestructible!”
10. The boys’ box of markers wasn’t on the table where they’d left it.

Hyphens, p. 252

EXERCISE
1. open
2. brother-in-law
3. educe
4. strayed
5. fast-moving film
6. fast-change
7. looked
8. twelve-year-old
9. usuall
10. forget-me-not
11. fifty-seven vìraíleíties
12. ellephant

13. movie
14. self-improvement tape
15. two-thirds major
16. cat
17. pre-Columbian culture
18. sugar-free snack
19. pen-cil
20. band-width

Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes, p. 253

EXERCISE
1. That building—excuse me, the one on Fifth Street—needs to be renovated.
2. Theodore Roosevelt (1858–1919) was the twenty-sixth president of the United States.
3. The florin (pronounced flór’in) is the name of a gold coin that was used in medieval Florence.
4. Tiffany began, “At the end of the novel, the main character—but I don’t want to ruin the surprise.”
5. Dr. Brown said, “Plato [Greek philosopher (427?–347 B.C.)] was one of history’s greatest thinkers.”

Review A: Italics and Quotation Marks, p. 254

EXERCISE
1. Todd asked, “Can you explain the answer to the fourth problem?”
2. “They often confuse the words affect and effect,” said Diana.
3. “Pedro,” my sister added, “went to the all-state competition in Concord.”
4. “Have you read,” asked Daryll, “the article ‘The Undersea War,’ which is about the sinking of the Lusitania?”
5. “I saw that sculpture at the museum,” said Kathie. “It was next to Stuart Davis’s painting Swing Landscape.”
6. “When you read Native Son,” asked Troy, “did you know how it would end?”
8. “I saw that article about Apollo 17 in Smithsonian magazine,” said Mamie.
9. “Is the r doubled in the word occurring?” Phil and Aki asked. “We can’t seem to remember.”

Review B: Apostrophes, p. 255

Exercise
1. Let’s plan a trip to the mountains in ’03.
2. Where’s the dog’s bowl? Henry’s mom said that she couldn’t find it.
3. I’ve got a plan to finish my paper by ten. I can use Davis’s computer to conduct my research.
4. There’s the woman whose sons showed me their pool.
5. Jane said that she can’t fix his car’s transmission tonight; she needs to fix hers first.
6. Don’t use too many really’s when you’re speaking in Ms. Fuente’s class.
7. Everyone’s face lit up when the teacher announced the results of this year’s fundraiser.
8. I don’t know who’s coming to my mother-in-law’s house next week.
9. No one is quite sure whether the two girls’ cat is still in the tree.
10. He isn’t sure who owns those bikes, but he’s sure they aren’t theirs.

Review C: Hyphens, Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes, p. 256

Exercise  Sentences 2, 6, and 9 are correct with either dashes or parentheses.
2. The burning question (who would be blamed for the crime?) was the talk of the town for almost twenty-two days.
3. The word extrinsic (ek strin’sik) means “not inherent.”
4. Mrs. Miller continued, “He [Sir Winston Churchill (1874–1965)] had a great impact on world history.”
5. “Gary, please wash the dog—oh, and the cat, too—before your great-aunt Edna gets here. She’s allergic to animal dander,” said his mother.
6. Mrs. Shaw—she’s my history instructor—told me about the hard-fought Battle of Marathon.
7. Henry began, “The answer to riddle thirty-eight is—but, wait, I’ll let you solve it for yourself.”
8. “Amelia Earhart [1898–1937],” said the professor, “was a pioneer in aviation.”
9. Highwaymen (people on horseback who robbed travelers) were quite common in centuries past.
10. Guam (gwäm) is an island on the Pacific Ocean.

Review D: All Marks of Punctuation, p. 257

Exercise
reformer Ida B. Wells-Barnett?” asked another student. [7] ¶ “Yes,” said Karen. “She not only organized the National Association of Colored Women in 1896, but she also fought for other people’s rights.” [8] ¶ “The modern women’s movement,” interjected Jill, “is also interesting.” [9] ¶ Mrs. Caldwell began, “Yes, it might be said to have begun with Betty Friedan’s book The Feminine Mystique. In the book, she writes—but, wait, we’ll save that for another time. [10] Anyway, the word feminist was revived, and new emphasis was placed on receiving equal pay for equal work.”
Chapter 16: Spelling, pp. 258–282

Good Spelling Habits, p. 258

EXERCISE
1. Germaine decided to write about South America instead of about factory strikes.
2. After he built his cabin in the woods, Henry David Thoreau tried to live a simple life.
3. That is easy for an acrobat who is strong and flexible.
4. The fire chief came to the school to review our fire emergency procedures.
5. Many women today have careers that their mothers would not have imagined.
6. At the last minute, the cavalry rode in and defended the fort.
7. 
8. Hidden above the ceiling in an old London townhouse was a dress covered with precious gems that had once belonged to a queen.
9. 
10. After my first day skiing, there wasn’t a muscle in my body that wasn’t sore.
11. The wagon train leaders may have had to guess which route was the safest.
12. When Charlene was in the mountains, she saw a cougar.
13. Though flavored yogurt tastes good, it has more calories than plain yogurt has.
14. Over seven thousand women soldiers from the United States were in Vietnam during the war.
15. Lawrence of Arabia would tear across the desert sand, his robe whipping in the wind.
16. 
17. My mother wants to live in the country, but Dad prefers city life.
18. A cough is the body’s way of clearing your lungs.
19. 
20. Four large juices will probably be enough for the group of friends.

ie and ei, p. 259

EXERCISE A
1. The nurse applied an elastic bandage to relieve the pressure on the knee.
2. A veil of secrecy surrounded the plans for the ice carnival.
3. Some people practice deceit because they don’t have much self-confidence.
4. The United States has spent about three billion dollars on foreign aid this year.
5. A small piece of rock fell to the ground.
6. Sitting Bull was a Sioux chief who united his people in a struggle for survival.
7. Field mice eat grain, so farmers consider them pests.
8. Neither LaToya nor Shanique could find the receipt.
9. Each teacher nominated a student for the Outstanding Achievement award.
10. The truck driver skillfully backed his rig into the receiving dock.

EXERCISE B
A cutter is a type of horse-drawn sleigh. In the 1800s in America, the cutter was an efficient means of travel across fields and roads in snowy weather. The cutter is lightweight and open in design, usually seating two people. Some cutters feature a second, removable seat for two
additional 15 fr ie nds or family members.

Once travel by automobile was 16 arch ie ved, cutters gradually became less common. Today some people 17 belie ve cutters to be a fun alternative to the automobile. Some owners use 18 th ei r cutters to give old-fashioned cutter rides. They 19 rec ei ve additional income by selling tickets for rides in the cutter. You can probably imagine a cutter with bells jingling on the horse’s 20 ri ns during winter festivities.

-cede, -ceed, and -sede, p. 260

EXERCISE A

1. supersede
2. secede
3. conceded
4. precede
5. recede
6. succeed
7. proceed
8. exceeded
9. intercede
10. succeeded

EXERCISE B

11. After the flood waters receded, we could play again on the banks of the river.
12. “If you want to succeed at the kickball game, listen to the rules,” said Esteban.
14. If there is a dispute, I will intercede to resolve it.
15. The number of players on one team cannot exceed seven.
16. The assignment of a player to the position of kicker precedes all else.
17. C
18. If you interrupt the kicker, you concede a point to the opposing team.
19. C
20. When the teams have taken their places, we’ll proceed.

Prefixes, p. 261

EXERCISE A

1. misunderstand
2. prewash
3. impossible
4. overcook
5. inappropriate
6. overrung
7. discover
8. illegible
9. unnatural
10. renew

EXERCISE B

11. unlocks
12. reviews
13. disassemble
14. removes
15. improve
16. ensure
17. semicircle
18. mismatched
19. unwraps
20. disregards

Suffixes A, p. 262

EXERCISE A

1. quickly
2. openness
3. rarely
4. cheerily
5. grittiness

EXERCISE B

6. Was this trek through the desert an act of pure craziness, the traveler wondered.
7. C
8. The barrenness of the land was evident in the brownish tinge of the few surviving plants.
9. The sun shone hotly from above, evaporating all traces of moisture.
10. The dryness of the soil prohibited seeds from germinating.
11. C
12. The lone human traveler sought to ease his dizziness with a few sips of precious water.
13. Lizards eyed the human intruder with wariness.
14. A far-off speck on the horizon gradually became clear as he approached it.
15. He could barely contain his happiness as he recognized the green of an oasis.
Suffixes B, p. 263

EXERCISE A
1. graceful 4. engagement
2. salvageable 5. saxophonist
3. dyeing

EXERCISE B
6. Natalie and her friends had gone scuba diving in clear, warm water.
7. They had gone only about ninety feet out from the shoreline.
8. They examined a lovely, multicolored coral reef and other underwater sea life.
9. Hovering in the water a short distance away, a whitish cloud of objects appeared.
10. Natalie immediately launched an investigation of the mysterious white cloud.
11. Trained divers, Natalie and her friends knew they should approach carefully.
12. The round, clear shapes became recognizable; they were jellyfish!
13. Natalie and her friends immediately swam quickly in the opposite direction.

Suffixes C, p. 264

EXERCISE A
1. conveyor 4. carrying
2. breeziness 5. enjoyment
3. joyful

EXERCISE B
6. Kylie easily found the grooming supplies in the tack room.
7. So far, she had enjoyed every lesson with Cowboy, her assigned horse.
8. The opposing team does not have enough players present; they will forfeit the game.
9. The ferociously barking dog unnerved Esther.

Suffixes D, p. 265

EXERCISE A
1. informed 6. stunning
2. slamming 7. specialist
3. tapped 8. forgotten
4. contorting 9. horticulturalist
5. programmer 10. stepped

EXERCISE B
a. starting to go
b. resubmitted the paper
c. his thinning hairline
b. preferred customers
c. centered on the page

Spelling Rules Review A, p. 266

EXERCISE A
1. kindliness 4. chief
2. succeed 5. wetness
3. illogical

EXERCISE B
6. The opposing team does not have enough players present; they will forfeit the game.
7. The lake has receded several feet from the high-water mark.
8. The hikers carried their own equipment for the week-long trek.
9. The ferociously barking dog unnerved Esther.
10. C

11. The wrist corsage that Tina is wearing is lovely.

12. C

13. This shipment exceeds the weight limit and must be unloaded.

14. C

15. Farid casually said hello to Phoebe.

Spelling Rules Review B, p. 267

EXERCISE A
1. spineless
2. pining
3. courageous

EXERCISE B
6. One runner dropped out of the race because of a sprained ankle.
7. Several students are sharing a table during lunch.
8. The camp counselors planned numerous activities for the campers’ amusement.
9. C

10. Dad is frying fish; I already fried the potatoes.

11. The eighth-graders are preparing for the Eighth-Grade Picnic.
12. What is the scariest movie you’ve ever seen?
13. C

14. I submitted one of my poems to a poetry contest.
15. Carefully, I ensured that the poster was centered on the bulletin board.

Plurals A, p. 268

EXERCISE A
1. ashes
2. bunnies
3. Murrys
4. refrigerators
5. boxes
6. infirmaries
7. Perrys
8. cranberries
9. grasses
10. lockers

EXERCISE B
11. Our city is one of those cities that proudly display the artwork of their citizens.
12. C
13. The Rodriguezes enlisted the help of a high school student.
14. The student painted colorful murals on their restaurant walls.
15. C

16. A few boxes of pottery were requested by the owners of a bank building.
17. They created elegant displays in both the front and the side lobbies.
18. Even youngsters are encouraged to contribute to the local art scene.
19. The kids painted their own paving tiles using small brushes and waterproof paints.
20. The tiles were used as borders around the flowerbeds at their school.

Plurals B, p. 269

EXERCISE A
Some answers may vary.
1. tomatoes
2. altos
3. shelves
4. mosquitoes
5. gaffes
6. studios
7. reefs
8. sopranos
9. Scorpios
10. tariffs
EXERCISE B

11. The electronics store has stereos on sale this week.

12. C

13. Rocky cliffs towered above the tiny, sandy beach.

14. The major movie studios are releasing some great new movies!

15. Mom selected one of the carving knives for slicing the ham.

16. Carefully, Stephen painted the torpedoes that were part of the model ship.

17. C

18. Jamaal likes people who don’t take themselves too seriously.

19. C

20. Which of these pianos needs tuning?

Plurals C, p. 270

EXERCISE A

1. mice
2. spoonfuls
3. parents-in-law
4. thirteen-year-olds
5. Women
6. foghorns
7. teeth
8. handfuls
9. coat racks
10. vice presidents

EXERCISE B

11. My feet ached after the exhausting hiking trip.

12. There are so many toothbrushes to choose from at this grocery store!

13. How many people will attend the spring conference for editors in chief?

14. The waiter says there are two soups of the day; they both sound good.

15. Did you see the large, active flock of geese at the park?

Plurals D, p. 271

EXERCISE

1. spacecraft
2. *s
3. urns
4. 2's
5. 0's
6. salmon [or salmons]
7. 6's
8. 7's
9. very's
10. 4's
11. e's
12. 3's
13. aircraft
14. Chinese
15. ?'s
16. 10's
17. ouch's
18. r's
19. X's
20. moose

Numbers, p. 272

EXERCISE A

1. There are four-hundred and fifty people in our class this year.
2. 300 students were in last year’s graduating class.
3. The girl who spoke at graduation was first in the class academically.
4. There were 1,000 people in attendance at the ceremony.
5. My cousin’s school has fewer than one hundred and seventy-five students.

EXERCISE B

6. In South America, many people’s first choice among pack animals is the llama.

7. A llama can carry a load weighing up to sixty kilos.

8. C

9. Another pack animal, the Bactrian camel, measures about seven feet at the top of its two humps.
10. Thirty miles of travel in a day is not uncommon for this camel, which lives in Central Asia.

11. C

12. The Arabian camel can carry a rider while traveling at up to ten miles per hour.

13. Eighteen hours of travel at this speed would be possible.

14. The Arabian camel was imported to Australia around one hundred and fifty years ago.

15. C

**Plurals and Numbers, p. 273**

**EXERCISE A**

1. geese
2. $'s
3. aircraft
4. 14's
5. bucketsful [or bucketfuls]
6. very's
7. F's
8. maids of honor
9. Sioux
10. eighth-graders

**EXERCISE B**

11. I'll take the 2nd menu option, Salisbury steak.

12. Forty-seven students voted for more vegetarian menu options.

13. C

14. All forty-five students said they would eat French fries at least once a week.

15. Only twenty-five students said they would eat tofu at least once a week.

**Words Often Confused A, p. 274**

**EXERCISE A**

1. brake
2. accept
3. altar
4. all together
5. break
6. all right
7. advice
8. break
9. advise
10. effects

**EXERCISE B**

11. A tuxedo jacket with tails creates a very formal affect.

12. On the wall of the tuxedo store hung a portrait of a bride and groom standing before an altar.

13. I like all of these tuxedos except the pale blue one.

14. The type of cummerbund you choose affects the overall look of the tuxedo.

15. C

16. C

17. C

18. Thea has already gotten her Dad's permission.

19. It will be nice to arrive altogether instead of one by one.

20. C

**Words Often Confused B, p. 275**

**EXERCISE A**

1. capitol
2. chose
3. coarse
4. clothes
5. capital
6. course
7. course
8. compliments
9. counselors
10. counselor

**EXERCISE B**

11. consul
12. course
13. counselors
14. capital
15. council
16. counsel
17. capitol
18. clothes
19. Coarse
20. counsel
Words Often Confused C, p. 276

**EXERCISE**
1. past
2. passed
3. formally
4. here
5. lead
6. lose
7. desert
8. formerly
9. past
10. desert

11. its
12. formerly
13. led
14. loose
15. desert
16. hear
17. it’s
18. past
19. lead
20. dessert

Words Often Confused D, p. 277

**EXERCISE A**
1. peace
2. principles
3. quiet
4. stationery
5. there

6. shown
7. than
8. principal
9. plane
10. quite

**EXERCISE B**
11. principles
12. piece
13. stationary
14. they’re
15. shone
16. plain
17. quite
18. then
19. their
20. principal

Words Often Confused E, p. 278

**EXERCISE A**
1. whether
2. waist
3. weak
4. Who’s
5. whether

6. You’re
7. threw
8. to
9. weather

**EXERCISE B**
11. You’re invited to a masquerade party.
12. Dress so that no one will know inside your costume.
13. I’ve been designing my costume for a weak.
14. If the weather is nice, we will dance and eat outdoors.

15. C
16. C
17. If you need a ride to my house, just call me.
18. C you’re
to
19. If you’re not sure about a costume, ask me for ideas.
20. I have too extra costumes that I can lend to people.

Review A: Spelling Rules, p. 279

**EXERCISE**
1. ancient
2. received
3. neighbor
4. exceeded
5. achieved

**EXERCISE B**
6. 5’s
7. unlikely
8. donkeys
9. silliness
10. setting
11. geese
12. troublesome
13. kitties
14. misplace
15. seamless
16. brothers-in-law
17. dyeing
18. beaches
19. raced
20. pianos

Review B: Words Often Confused, p. 280

**EXERCISE**
1. affect
2. except
3. capital
4. compliment
5. dessert
6. it’s
7. lose
8. passed
9. principal
10. quiet

11. then
12. there
13. whether
14. your
15. waste
16. too
17. Who’s
18. peace
19. formerly
20. council
Review C: Spelling Rules and Words Often Confused, p. 281

EXERCISE
1. led
2. armies
3. brief
4. break
5. Eleven
6. sheaves
7. really's
8. believe
9. carefulness
10. five thousand
11. Twenty thousand
12. proceeded
13. capital
14. feet
15. height
16. six hundred
17. dessert
18. Whether
19. concede
20. awful

Review D: Spelling Rules and Words Often Confused, p. 282

EXERCISE A
1. crying
2. review
3. fathers-in-law
4. saving
5. hello's
6. teeth
7. semicircle
8. $'s
9. statement
10. @'s

EXERCISE B
21. fifteen
22. third
23. 1,500
24. Twenty-four
25. four
Chapter 17: Correcting Common Errors, pp. 283–315

Sentence Fragments and Run-on Sentences A, p. 283

EXERCISE

|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|

Sentence Fragments and Run-on Sentences B, p. 284

EXERCISE

Some answers may vary slightly.

1. S
2. R—Before that date there were three separate Swiss states. They decided to form a union.
3. F—Elephants wear bright blankets in India’s independence day parades.
5. R—Imagine the celebrations in Mexico City each year. Its population is huge.

Subject-Verb Agreement A, p. 285

EXERCISE A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. is</th>
<th>2. looks</th>
<th>3. plays</th>
<th>4. has</th>
<th>5. are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6. Do</td>
<td>7. sleep</td>
<td>8. appear</td>
<td>9. were</td>
<td>10. Is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE B

11. My brother, along with his friends Neil and Mick, play clarinet in the band.
12. Not a single one of the eggs in the carton were broken.
13. If the choir practices three more times this week, the concert will go smoothly.
14. Haven’t Nathan or Christina turned in the paper yet?
15. The coaches for the team hasn’t made a decision about the starting lineup.
16. C
17. Either ice-skating or sledding are fun on a cold winter’s day.
18. C
19. A horse and wagon were the only mode of transportation at that time.
20. Either my grandmother or my mother’s sisters cooks the holiday dinner.

Subject-Verb Agreement B, p. 286

EXERCISE A

1. C
2. She occasionally eats chicken, but fish is her favorite choice.
3. Neither my science class nor my math class have difficult homework.
4. C
5. Both my brother and Frank, his best friend since the first grade, think that movie is great.
6. Does Al and his teammates expect to win the game tomorrow?
7. Justine, along with Katie and Rose, go to the same camp every summer.
8. Some pieces of the jigsaw puzzle were missing.
9. C
10. In addition to a pencil, graph paper, and a ruler, what else are needed for this problem?
EXERCISE B

11. Do everyone in the class understand the material?
12. Several of the students have asked for additional help.
13. Either Oscar’s father or one of his uncles has offered to drive us to the movies.
14. The band will play when the team runs onto the field.
15. The most interesting exhibit in that museum are the rocks and minerals.
16. Sam agreed that the rocks and minerals are really fascinating.
17. Where will you go to school when your family moves?
18. She won’t be able to join us unless someone gives her a ride.
19. I think you’ve made a mistake; fifty-seven cents is the wrong change.
20. He couldn’t wear the suit because the pants were too short.

EXERCISE B

11. C
12. Many people are familiar with E. E. Cummings’s poetry because of its unusual punctuation and capitalization.
13. Denise and Emil were not happy about his and her grades on the essay test.
14. His mother bought him some nice slacks, but he refused to wear them to the awards banquet.
15. The strength of the United States lies in their people.
16. Measure three tablespoons of milk and add them to the mixture.
17. Neither of the girls remembered to bring her notebook to class.
18. C
19. I didn’t watch the news last night because I fell asleep before they came on.
20. Thomas and Clive, you should congratulate yourselves for a job well done.

EXERCISE A

1. One of my brothers has forgotten (their, his) hat and gloves.
2. The questionnaire asked the public (their, its) opinions about the candidates.
3. My family is from Sioux Falls, South Dakota; can you find (them, it) on a map?
4. One of the birds had broken (its, his) wing.
5. If anyone is interested in chess, (they, he or she) is welcome to join our club.
6. Van, Matthew, and Erik woke up early on the morning of (his, their) big exam.
7. I’ve lost my sunglasses again; do you know where I left (them, it)?
8. He used molasses in the recipe simply because he likes (its, their) taste.
9. My sister is taking economics this semester because her degree program requires (them, it).
10. Someone on the girls’ basketball team spilled shampoo all over (themselves, herself).

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement A, p. 287

EXERCISE A

1. One of my brothers has forgotten (their, his) hat and gloves.
2. The questionnaire asked the public (their, its) opinions about the candidates.
3. My family is from Sioux Falls, South Dakota; can you find (them, it) on a map?
4. One of the birds had broken (its, his) wing.
5. If anyone is interested in chess, (they, he or she) is welcome to join our club.
6. Van, Matthew, and Erik woke up early on the morning of (his, their) big exam.
7. I’ve lost my sunglasses again; do you know where I left (them, it)?
8. He used molasses in the recipe simply because he likes (its, their) taste.
9. My sister is taking economics this semester because her degree program requires (them, it).
10. Someone on the girls’ basketball team spilled shampoo all over (themselves, herself).
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement B, p. 288

EXERCISE

1. Each of the horses is stabled in (their, its) own stall.
2. Max, who wanted to go to the mountains, will not be able to borrow (their, his) father’s car this weekend.
3. If your (binoculars) are more powerful than mine are, please let me use (it, them).
4. Everyone who plans to go to the concerts should bring five dollars for (their, his or her) ticket.
5. The (team) does warm-up exercises for fifteen minutes before each of (its, their) games.
6. I don’t believe that either (Simone or Mary) colors (their, her) hair.
7. One of the paperback books is missing some of (their, its) pages.
8. The (crowd) showed (their, its) appreciation by cheering and clapping.
9. Ask Ana or Maria what (her, their) middle name is.
10. Both Ivan and Zeke agree (his, their) biology exam was harder than they thought it would be.
11. You can locate a country or a city in the (atlas) by looking in (their, its) index.
12. Neither Carlos nor Ulises likes to buy (their, his) lunch in the cafeteria.
13. The cat picked up (its, his or her) kittens, one by one, and carried them to the basket.
14. Anyone who is interested in photography should give Mr. Knight (their, his or her) name.
15. My (mother and father) went out to dinner on (his and her, their) anniversary.
16. Some of the apples are rotten, aren’t (it, they)?
17. Everyone in this room needs to remind (themselves, himself or herself) about the need for silence during the test.
18. Do you know of anyone who lost (their, his or her) wallet on the bus?
19. Some of my friends like to do (his or her, their) science projects at the last minute, but I can’t work that way.
20. Sometimes we work together on a problem in class, but this time each of us has to get the answer by (ourselves, himself or herself).

Verb Forms A, p. 289

EXERCISE A

1. tore
2. written
3. spoken
4. flew
5. built

EXERCISE B

11. sit
12. rises
13. lying
14. raising
15. sitting

Verb Forms B, p. 290

EXERCISE A

1. went
2. shook
3. taken
4. taught
5. kept

6. brought
7. broken
8. swam
9. wanted
10. put
**EXERCISE B**

11. Reginald doesn’t remember the name of that actor.

12. That garden was planted by our class last spring.

13. On Tuesdays, the museum doesn’t open until noon.

14. Unfortunately, the roof of the barn had been torn off.

15. Several techniques were demonstrated during this afternoon’s art class.

16. Natalie began the application.

17. The dogs chased the mail truck for blocks.

18. All of the food at the birthday party was prepared by my mother and my aunt.

19. The choir had been practicing for weeks for the holiday concert.

20. Claire will have read over two hundred books by May.

**Pronoun Forms A, p. 291**

**EXERCISE A**

1. him  
2. us  
3. he  
4. she  
5. we  
6. them  
7. we  
8. her  
9. who  
10. We

**EXERCISE B**

11. Vincent’s sisters and him visited their cousins in New Mexico last summer.

12. As the plane rolled away from the gate, Raul could see his mother waving at his brother and...

13. Only one of the girls wants to play a percussion instrument.

14. Who should we call about the broken fire hydrant?

15. The student who won first place in the debate tournament is...

16. C

17. This is a reminder for whoever is the last person to leave the room.

18. Us biology students have a lot of homework.

19. Did you bring extra sandwiches for Michelle and I?

20. Peter told Dan and I about his plans for the summer vacation.

**Pronoun Forms B, p. 292**

**EXERCISE**

1. Who  
2. us  
3. she  
4. him  
5. she  
6. her  
7. him  
8. her  
9. him  
10. she  
11. I  
12. him or her  
13. they  
14. She  
15. me  
16. who  
17. he  
18. whom  
19. me  
20. him

**Comparative and Superlative Forms A, p. 293**

**EXERCISE**

1. better  
2. farther  
3. most interesting  
4. more carefully  
5. shadier  
6. most impressive  
7. better  
8. best  
9. happier  
10. more gracefully
Double Comparison and Double Negatives, p. 295

EXERCISE A
*Answers may vary slightly.*

1. Cole is much *more* taller than his brother.
2. He can’t *never* make up his mind.
3. Ten kilometers is the *most* farthest I’ve run at one time.
4. Without a doubt, that was the *worstest* movie I’ve ever seen.
5. The construction noise was so loud that she couldn't *hardly* hear the radio.
6. No, thank you, I don’t want *no* rice or potatoes with my meal.
7. We don’t *never* have enough time to finish our work in class.
8. I hope I wake up *more* earlier tomorrow than I did today.
9. Of all the birds in my yard, the cardinal is my *most* favorite.
10. She didn’t have *no* money to pay for her ticket.

EXERCISE B
*Answers may vary slightly.*

11. If you keep eating brownies, there won’t be any more to take on the trip.
12. Any band will perform better with a little practice.
13. New Hampshire is much smaller than Alaska.
14. There was hardly anybody at the bus stop this morning.
15. The new principals don’t allow anybody without a pass in the hallway.
Misplaced and Dangling Modifiers A, p. 296

**Exercise**

Answers may vary.

1. Because the girl reached the station with only a few minutes to spare, the conductor hurried her into the waiting train.

2. The boys admired the baby birds chirping and flapping their little wings.

3. When planning a hike in rugged country, you will need a compass and a map of the area.

4. The boy from Finland that stayed with my family last summer fixed the old porch rail.

5. To get the most out of school and my other activities, I discovered that learning to manage my time was important.

6. While riding the bus to school last week, we saw an accident happen right in front of us.

7. I heard on the radio today that a mastodon skeleton had been discovered.

8. The high winds that were bending the trees nearly to the ground scared us.

9. Weary but satisfied with our day’s work, we welcomed the shade of the trees.

10. Running down the hill near our house, I hurt my knee.

---

Misplaced and Dangling Modifiers B, p. 297

**Exercise**

1. Traditional Navajo houses, which are made of logs and earth, are distinctive.

2. The Switzerland poster in my room shows how spectacular the mountains are.

3. Antoine gave a pendant engraved with family names to his grandmother.

4. We will remember to return this jacket belonging to one of the Aleman twins.

5. Tired from the long bus ride home, the students cheered the city-limit sign.

6. James Watt, who invented a new kind of steam engine, created the term *horsepower.*

7. Uncle John found a raccoon that was sleeping in his garage.

8. Eager and confident, the coach was not surprised by news of the first triumph.

9. Richard the Lion-Hearted, whose brother was Prince John, left his kingdom to fight in the Crusades.

10. Tanya and Guy finished the practice quiz at almost the same time.

---

Standard Usage A, p. 298

**Exercise A**

1. One morning I noticed a kitten *sitting* high in a tree.

2. I *should have* gone on about my business.

3. Instead, I acted like the situation required emergency action.

4. Since I *am not* afraid of heights, I grabbed our ladder.

5. That kitten was clearly frightened as I approached.

6. I decided to *try to* stand on the top step of the ladder.

7. *Those* warning labels are there for a purpose.

8. Do you know how it feels to *lie* injured on the ground?

9. *C*

10. Don’t climb a ladder *without* you have someone to hold it steady.

**Exercise B**

Answers may vary slightly.

11. Why did I have to wait an hour for you?

12. When he wasn’t accepted into the summer program, he was rather embarrassed.

13. The reason I don’t have a jacket is that I looked all over the house, but it was nowhere.

14. The teacher who used to teach us math moved to Milwaukee.

15. They were supposed to read the book themselves and then tell how it affected them.
Standard Usage B, p. 299

EXERCISE A
1. I have fewer pairs of shoes than my sister has.
2. They had a private discussion among the three of themselves.
3. You hadn’t ought to of left the windows open last night.
4. Please take these books when you go to the library this afternoon.
5. C
6. These kind of sweater is too warm for our climate.
7. He was real excited about the research project.
8. C
9. Everyone except Jerome is coming on the field trip.
10. There wasn’t any spaghetti left by the time I ate lunch.

EXERCISE B
11. He dances really well, doesn’t he?
12. We should have been able to find some seats together somewhere in the theater.
13. The reason you can scarcely see through the windshield is that it’s covered with mud.
14. This book has fewer pages than the one you’re reading.
15. He told me that he taught himself to ride a bike when he was five years old.

Capitalization A, p. 300

EXERCISE A
1. Are Belgium and Luxembourg also members of NATO?
2. Merrill Longham, D.V.M., is a large-animal veterinarian; he grew up on a ranch somewhere in the west.
3. I don’t know what the statue on the top of the U.S. Capitol building represents.
4. The constellation Ursa Major, or the Big Bear, is known to many people as the Big Dipper.
5. The German airship Hindenburg exploded as it was docking in Lakehurst, New Jersey, on May 6, 1937.
6. Elizabeth II, Queen of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, succeeded her father, King George VI, in 1952.
7. The Rocky Mountains form the Continental Divide, which separates rivers that flow west to the Pacific Ocean from rivers that flow east to the Atlantic Ocean.
8. Although the capital city of South Dakota is Pierre, its largest city is Sioux Falls.
9. I think she lives at 4422 Avenue B, which is near the intersection of Wise Street and the Flint Parkway.
10. In 1830, in a famous race between Peter Cooper’s steam locomotive Tom Thumb and a horse, the horse won.

EXERCISE B
11. The official language of Iran is Persian, also called Farsi, a language written in Arabic script.
12. The Taj Mahal, at Agra in northern India, must be one of the World’s most beautiful buildings.
13. He has memorized several poems by Robert Frost, but his favorite is the Poem that begins, “Whose woods these are I think I know.”
14. The photography club will meet on the first Wednesday of every month, except for December. [or The photography club . . .]
15. This semester my electives include art history and journalism I.
Capitalization B, p. 301

EXERCISE A
1. The winner of the Newbery medal in 1999 was Louis Sachar’s novel *Holes*.
3. Our school’s team is called the Callaway Cardinals, our colors are red and white, and our mascot is a cardinal named Cal.
4. When the new Hayfield High School opened, crowding at Mt. Vernon High School was relieved.
5. She shook Dr. Michaelman’s hand and said, “It’s nice to meet you.”
6. That restaurant serves many kinds of Asian dishes, but I especially like one of their Thai noodle dishes.
7. I wonder what Earth looks like from the moon.
8. He lives on Forty-third Street, just north of the University of Texas campus.
9. My family doesn’t watch much TV, but we subscribe to several magazines, including *National Geographic* and *Time*.

EXERCISE B
11. Before 1803, the huge area called the Louisiana territory belonged to Spain and France.
12. The area stretched from the Mississippi River to the Rocky Mountains; its northern border was Canada, and it extended all the way south to Mexico.
13. American farmers who lived west of the Appalachian mountains depended on the Mississippi River to ship their produce to the Gulf of Mexico.
14. President Jefferson, who did not wish to see France increase its influence on the North American continent, authorized the purchase of Florida and New Orleans.

Commas A, p. 302

EXERCISE
1. Before you begin to write your first draft, make an outline of your paper.
2. My brother and John, one of our cousins on our mother’s side, are in the same class.
3. Send the completed application form to 442 Winston Ave., Sherwood, MI 40007.
4. In that building are the offices of Kelly Donohue, Jr., M.D., and his father, Kelly Donohue, Sr., D.D.S.
5. In the middle of the night, a loud clap of thunder rattled the windows.
6. On Monday, May 10, we have our final exam in social studies.
8. On Tuesday after school, the Drama Club will meet in the auditorium.
9. Ms. Masterton, may I please use the telephone on your desk?
10. Laughing and shouting, the children ran onto the playground.
11. Yes, I think I would enjoy watching the parade from your apartment.

12. Rob, Betty, and Suzanne have been chosen to represent the class on the student council. [or Rob, Betty and Suzanne have been chosen to represent the class on the student council.]

13. The banner across the hallway is really impressive, but the posters look great, too.

14. Although no rain had been forecast, a thunderstorm ruined our picnic.

15. My family has two dogs, three cats, a parrot, and some goldfish. [or My family has two dogs, three cats, a parrot, and some goldfish.]

16. You can wash the lettuce for the salad, and Calvin can slice the bread.

17. When the telephone rang before dawn, I sprang out of bed.

18. In the fall of 2007, we drove from Texas to Oregon, camping at national parks along the way.

19. I’ve had this old stuffed bear since I think I was three or four years old. [or I’ve had this old stuffed bear. . . .]

20. The hikers filled their water bottles, strapped on their packs, and set off into the woods. [or The hikers filled their water bottles, strapped on their packs, and set off into the woods.]

Commas B, p. 303

Exercise A

1. At high altitudes tired, sleepy people may also get soroché, which means “mountain sickness.”

2. However, the Quechua Indians of the Andes have special body characteristics.

3. A very high mountain range in South America, the Andes, has a top altitude of 22,835 ft.

4. The Quechua do not live on the highest peaks, but they do make their homes at altitudes of more than two miles above sea level.

5. C

6. C

7. Studies show the Quechua have larger chests, lung capacities, and hearts than other people. [or Studies show the Quechua have larger chests, lung capacities, and hearts than other people.]

8. Because this Indian group has a higher breathing rate, they can take in enough oxygen.

9. On the other hand, their heartbeat is slower than that of sea-level inhabitants.

10. C

Exercise B

11. “Zack,” Michael asked, “do you want to meet at my house on Saturday morning?”

12. Noel, Sandy, and Tricia have dogs, but Kim and Phil have cats. [or Noel, Sandy, and Tricia have dogs, but Kim and Phil have cats.]

13. Renata, would you please help me sort the recycling?

14. Put bottles and jars into this bin, aluminum cans into that box, and steel cans into that box. [or Put bottles and jars into this bin, aluminum cans into that box, and steel cans into that box.]

15. On September 19, 2009, at 4:00 P.M., we will play our first big game of the season.
16. If Amanda calls while I’m in the shower, please tell her I’ll be there in twenty minutes.

17. He was, after all, one of my closest friends.

18. Tired but happy after a long day in the sun, the children fell asleep in the car on the way home.

19. She was born in Evanston, Illinois, but both of her brothers were born in Des Moines, Iowa.

20. Martin, along with three other students in his class, was inducted into the honor society last year.

Semicolons and Colons, p. 304

EXERCISE

1. Many people try to follow a version of the golden rule: “Treat others the way you want to be treated.”

2. This camping equipment should be considered necessary: a tent, a sleeping bag, a flashlight, and a first-aid kit.

3. The costume requires the following materials: six yards of muslin, a large spool of thread, a 26-inch zipper, and two yards of inch-wide elastic.

4. Good sportsmanship is important to our coach, she says that poor losers and poor winners are both poor sports.

5. Their travel plans included stops in the following cities: Milan and Venice, Italy, Munich, Germany, and Strasbourg and Paris, France.

6. Subway trains depart from this station every five minutes except between midnight and 6:00 A.M.; there are only four trains every hour during that period.

7. My research paper is very ambitious; I plan to title it “The New Deal Government Programs During the Great Depression.”

8. My mother asked me to put away the clean clothes, which are lying on the bed, write a letter to my uncle, who is on a ship somewhere in the Mediterranean, and, after giving the dog a bath, clean out the garage.

9. At our school, we don’t have to eat in the cafeteria, if we prefer, we can eat outside at the picnic tables or under the trees.

10. We counted all these signs between our house and the highway: twenty-five stop signs, fifty street signs, sixteen billboards, three yield signs, two one-way street signs, and I don’t know how many speed-limit signs.

Quotation Marks and Other Punctuation A, p. 305

EXERCISE A

1. “I don’t know,” answered Doug. “I’ve never seen anything like that before.” [or . . . before!]

2. Peering into the aquarium, Doug added, “Wow! Just look at the colors on its fins!”

3. “Could you tell us what kind of fish that is?” Cal asked the store manager. “We’d also like to know how much it costs.”

4. “You’ll have to buy a pair of fish, boys,” the manager replied. “And a pair costs seventy-five dollars.”

5. “Seventy-five dollars!” exclaimed Doug and Cal together. “That’s a lot of money for two fish.” [or . . . fish!]  

EXERCISE B

6. Listen to the radio for the most up-to-date weather forecast.

7. We will read one of Shakespeare’s plays this year, either The Tempest or A Midsummer Night’s Dream.
8. I had only an hour and forty-five minutes to finish my research about the Titanic.

9. Priscilla’s father designed the set for the Puccini opera La Bohème.

10. He described the well-known book as his magnum opus, which my great-grandmother told me means “masterpiece.”

**Quotation Marks and Other Punctuation B, p. 306**

**Exercise A**

1. “He likes the lockers and the band,” Hai said, “but he misses some of his friends.”

2. “Do you think he misses me?” Naomi asked bluntly.

3. “Gee, I don’t know,” said Hai. “You can always call him and ask him yourself.”

4. “No, I’ll just ask him when I see him in the hallway one day soon,” she responded.

5. “Wow! Does that mean your family moved closer to the new school, too?” asked Hai.

**Exercise B**

6. During President Roosevelt’s third term in office (1941–1945), the U.S. entered World War II.

7. Did you say—I’m sorry to interrupt—that you were going to the post office?

8. Our town’s weekly newspaper is called the Metropolitan Mirror.

9. None of us have finished the book yet, although our papers are due in mid-October.

10. To some people, figures in the paintings of El Greco (his real name was Domenikos Theotokopoulos [1541–1614]) look elongated and distorted.

**Apostrophes, p. 307**

**Exercise**

1. That yellow umbrella left in the women’s department is hers.
19. This morning’s assembly in the gym will be short; we’ll begin by introducing the school’s interim principal.

20. She’s been appointed to take Dr. Garcia’s place until a permanent replacement can be found.

All Marks of Punctuation Review, p. 308

EXERCISE
Some answers will vary. In items 10 and 11, you may wish to omit the series comma before the conjunction; in item 12, dashes may be used instead of parentheses; in item 13, semicolons should be used after Twain and Nephew if the phrase especially The Magician’s Nephew is set off with commas.

1. During the summer I can work four hours a day, from 10:00 A.M. to 2:00 P.M.
2. Will those hours be enough for an internship? I hope you will consider me for an internship. I would really like to work at the library. My application is enclosed, and my telephone number is 555-5301 if you need additional information.
3. My house is only a ten-minute walk from the library, so I will always be on time.
4. Of course, I am also an avid reader (some weeks I read as many as ten books) and have had a library card for ten years.
5. Some of my favorite books are the following: The Adventures of Tom Sawyer and any other book by Mark Twain, C. S. Lewis’s Chronicles of Narnia (especially The Magician’s Nephew), and anything by Isaac Asimov.

Spelling A, p. 309

EXERCISE A
1. The astronaut became furious.
2. If you complete this circuit, you may receive a shock.
3. I found these supplies in an old-fashioned stationery store.
4. My father saw water stains on several of the ceiling tiles downstairs.
5. In a tree in that field, Shelly saw the tiniest bird she had ever seen.
6. Although Manny is a little forgetful sometimes, he is always a good friend.
7. The parade could not proceed until the police had cleared the intersection.
8. C transferred approval.
9. When he transferred out of our class, he needed the counselor’s approval.
10. Although we studied hard, that test was truly awful.

EXERCISE B
11. operas
12. waltzes
13. knives
14. heroes
15. mice
16. eighth-graders
17. sixes
18. matinees
19. dairies
20. kimonos

Spelling B, p. 310

EXERCISE A
1. C
2. Some industrious gymnasts maintain a daily exercise routine of eight hours.
3. Before submitting your short story, ask one of your friends to proofread it carefully.
4. I don’t know whether van Gogh painted daisies, but my neighbor has a print of the artist’s painting of sunflowers.
5. Are there fewer than forty potatoes in a score?
6. C
7. The thieves stole the radios that students were assembling in electronics class.
8. My flute teacher says that a beginner often feels dizzy.
9. Soon we’ll have to build new shelves for all the trophies we’re winning!
10. Lewis and Clark heard the echoes of the horses’ hooves.

EXERCISE B
11. My grandmother enjoys playing dominos with the neighborhood children.

12. The sheriffs from three counties held a news conference when they captured the thieves.
13. Did the people in that region use oxen or horses to pull their wagons?
15. Only twelve students showed up in response to the announcement.
16. Gomezes have a new litter of puppies.
17. On one of their journeys, they explored these valleys.
18. Last winter was so cold that we were able to build igloos in the back yard.
19. The Gomezes have a new litter of puppies.
20. The team members were a little embarrassed when they conceded defeat.

Words Often Confused, p. 311

EXERCISE A
1. principal
2. formerly
3. plain
4. stationary
5. Whose
6. shown
7. quiet
8. affect
9. advice
10. counselor

EXERCISE B
11. My parents had already gone to bed by the time we arrived.
12. I wish she would learn how to accept a compliment.
13. Would you like fruit or ice cream for dessert?
14. Oh, no, the dogs have gotten loose again!
15. C
16. When the plane passed low overhead, the windows rattled.
17. Our house is no smaller than their house is.
18. The largest city in a state is not necessarily its capital.
19. Gabriela was all together tired of listening to well-intentioned advice.
20. Please don’t brake the car quite so fast the next time!

**Spelling and Words Often Confused, p. 312**

**Exercise**

1. One of our neighbors recognized the thieves from a poster she saw in the grocery store.
2. For my birthday, my parents gave me a set of wrenches for my bicycle.
3. He had already set the table with forks, spoons, and knives.
4. I can’t tell the difference between her 2’s and her 5’s; do we need 2 or 5 tablespoons of flour?
5. The guest of honor at the banquet were introduced by our principal.
6. We could take her advise and alter our plans to include a side trip to Williamsburg.
7. C
8. If you lose your key, whose going to let you in?
9. Although the weather was altogether unpleasant that day, we enjoyed our visit to the science museum.
10. There are at least 7 misspelled words in your essay.
11. After a week’s intensive practice, the sopranos will know their part.
12. We spent only about ninety minutes at the amusement park.
13. Many public libraries have unabridged dictionaries.
14. I really don’t know whether geese like to eat potatoes.
15. First the lead in my pencil broke, and then my pen ran out of ink.
16. Her eyes shown with relief and gratitude when the jury brought in its verdict.
17. Our mileage would improve if you didn’t always have your foot on the brake.
18. A police car preceded the funeral procession.
19. Unfortunately, the movie was almost over by the time we finally found the theater.
20. C

**Review A: Usage, p. 313**

**Exercise A**

1. Born in Japan, Dr. Akira Okubo studies sea animals to learn about its movements.
2. Did Mesa Verde or Grand Teton National Park get their name from the French language?
3. Volcanoes, like Mt. Pinatubo and Mt. Etna, give scientists a chance to predict eruptions.
4. C
5. Several cultures, including the Maya, were beginning to cultivate the cacao tree.
6. A blend of cocoa and vanilla was a favorite flavor among the Aztecs.
7. China and Sweden have switched their traffic policy and ordered vehicles to drive on the right.
8. C
9. Everyone in our science class has their own opinion about how to save the Amazon Rain Forest.

10. C

EXERCISE B
Answers may vary.

11. Knowledge about local building codes, construction techniques, and materials is important in designing a house.

12. We don’t ever have any homework in this class.

13. Having tripped over a rock on the sidewalk, the woman dropped the bag of groceries.

14. His argument was the most simply stated of all.

15. On his way to the store, he saw a rainbow after the rain stopped.

Review B: Mechanics, p. 314

EXERCISE

1. To apply for my passport. I had to bring the following: a certified copy of my birth certificate, a filled-out application, and [or application and] two photographs.

2. One of my parents’ signatures was also required since I am under eighteen years old.

3. You should have seen the line at the passport office! [or . . . office.]

4. My mother wrote one check to the US State Department and a second check to the US Postal Service; the second check was for a processing fee.

5. “Are you planning to travel soon?” asked the clerk. “Your passport won’t be ready for five or six weeks.”

6. “No,” I answered. “we’re not leaving until—let me see; I have the ticket right here—May 25.”

7. A woman behind us in line recommended a book called Italy: The Deal Guide; she said it’s available in any bookstore.

8. My father is taking one flight; my mother and I will go on a different plane.

9. Our flight leaves at 7:00 A.M.—I know I won’t be able to sleep the night before—and we will arrive in Rome at about 8:30 P.M. the next night.

10. My mother’s uncle and aunt in Italy told us that they’re planning a big celebration because the family will be all together again.

Review C: Usage and Mechanics, p. 315

EXERCISE

[Optional commas are underscored.]

1. the student body’s president Theo Vavilis reviewed the agenda for the class representatives, which included the following items the school’s wide fundraiser for the library, a landscaping project and the problem of noise in the cafeteria.

2. President Vavilis announced that the fundraising committee had decided to hold a car wash at Mcintosh’s service station on the corner of thirty-fourth street and oak street [or . . . Mcintosh’s service station . . .] everyone pass by that corner said President Vavilis, “we should get a lot of customers” one of the 6th grade representatives offered to bring a vacuum cleaner and theo asked for more volunteers.

3. the car wash will be from 8:00 A.M. until noon Saturday, March 25. anyone who is interested in helping should put their name on the list.

4. Nancy Fredrickson an eighth grader than explained the landscaping plans. The area right outside the front door is a mess—she exclaimed—students leave trash everywhere.
[9] It’s all together disgusting one of the representatives agreed. [10] Some of the parents has offered to build benches for that area nancy continued and we need donations of the following items landscaping soil lumber small shrubs flower seeds and tools. [11] Whose available to help after school next week.

[12] The council spent more of the meeting discussing the noise problem in the cafeteria. [13] Every student in the school know that the acoustics in the room is bad. [14] Noise echos and bounces off the walls. [15] In addition, some students do not seem to know the meaning of the word quiet. [16] On the other hand, students look forward to seeing his or her friends during lunch period and no one want to sit threw lunch without saying a single word.

[17] The council finally decided to ask the cafeteria monitors to remove extremely loud or unruly students so that everyone else could enjoy their lunch in peace. [18] If these measures don’t effect the noise levels said theo well have to come up with some more ideas.

[19] Mr. rauh the student council’s sponsor said that he would take the council’s suggestion to the principle. [20] Having reminded the representatives to report back to their classes the meeting was adjourned.